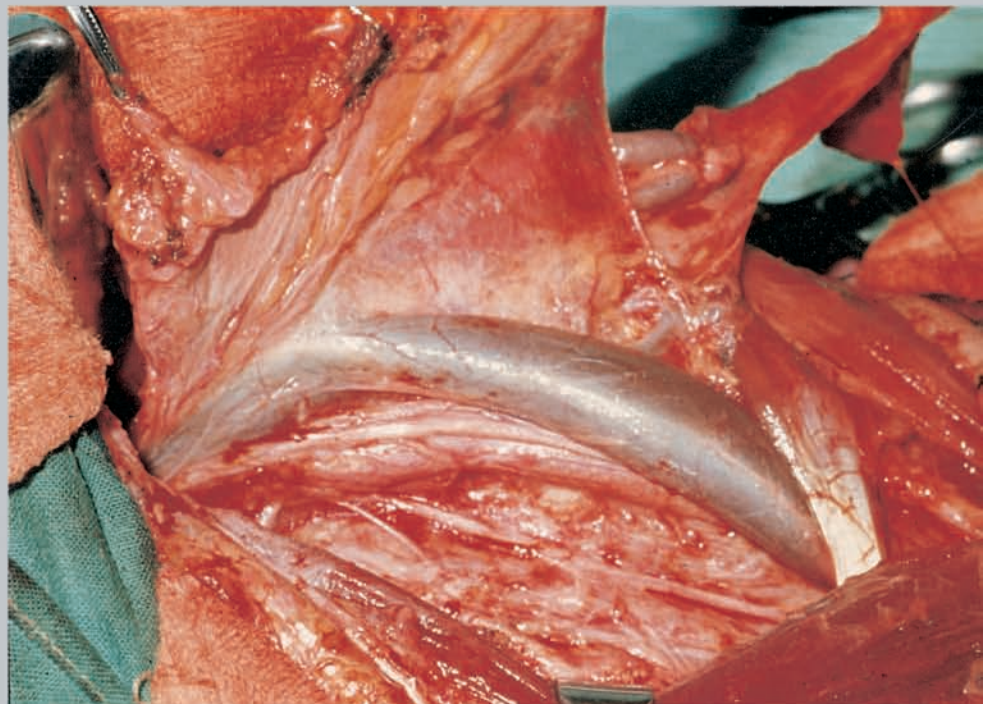


Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

Javier Gavilán
Jesús Herranz
Lawrence W. DeSanto
César Gavilán



This page intentionally left blank

*Functional and Selective
Neck Dissection*

This page intentionally left blank

Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

Edited by

Javier Gavián, MD

*Professor and Chairman
Department of Otolaryngology
La Paz University Hospital
Madrid, Spain*

Jesús Herranz, MD

*Chief Section
Department of Otolaryngology
Juan Canalejo Hospital
La Coruña, Spain*

Lawrence W. DeSanto, MD

*Professor and Chairman Emeritus
Mayo Medical School, Rochester, MN
Consultant, Mayo Clinic Scottsdale
Scottsdale, AZ*

César Gavián, MD

*Chairman
Department of Otolaryngology
La Zarzuela Hospital
Madrid, Spain*

Thieme
New York • Stuttgart

Thieme Medical Publishers, Inc.
333 Seventh Ave.
New York, NY 10001

Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

Javier Gavilán, MD
Jesús Herranz, MD
Lawrence W. DeSanto, MD
César Gavilán, MD

Editorial Assistant: Diane Sardini
Director, Production and Manufacturing: Anne Vinnicombe
Production Editor: Becky Dille
Marketing Director: Phyllis Gold
Sales Manager: Ross Lumpkin
Chief Financial Officer: Peter van Woerden
President: Brian D. Scanlan
Compositor: Techset Composition
Printer: Sfera International Srl
Illustrator: Maria Angeles Cerdeira, M.D.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Functional and selective neck dissection / Javier Gavilán ... [et al.]; foreword by Jatin P. Shah ; drawings by María Angeles Cerdeira.

p. ; cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 1-58890-016-9 (alk. paper) -- ISBN 3131246316 (alk. paper)

1. Neck- -Surgery. 2. Neck- -Cancer- -Surgery. 3. Head- -Cancer- -Surgery. 4.

Otolaryngology. I. Gavilán, Javier.

[DNLM: 1. Neck- -surgery. 2. Head and Neck Neoplasms- -surgery. 3.

Otorhinolaryngologic Surgical Procedures- -methods. WE 708 F979 2001]

RC280.N35 F86 2001

617.5'3059- -dc21

2001041518

Copyright © 2002 by Thieme Medical Publishers, Inc. This book, including all parts thereof, is legally protected by copyright. Any use, exploitation or commercialization outside the narrow limits set by copyright legislation, without the publisher's consent, is illegal and liable to prosecution. This applies in particular to Photostat reproduction, copying, mimeographing or duplication of any kind, translating, preparation of microfilms, and electronic data processing and storage.

Important note: Medical knowledge is ever-changing. As new research and clinical experience broaden our knowledge, changes in treatment and drug therapy may be required. The authors and editors of the material herein have consulted sources believed to be reliable in their efforts to provide information that is complete and in accord with the standards accepted at the time of publication. However, in the view of the possibility of human error by the authors, editors, or publisher, of the work herein, or changes in medical knowledge, neither the authors, editors, or publisher, nor any other party who has been involved in the preparation of this work, warrants that the information contained herein is in every respect accurate or complete, and they are not responsible for any errors or omissions or for the results obtained from use of such information. Readers are encouraged to confirm the information contained herein with other sources. For example, readers are advised to check the product information sheet included in the package of each drug they plan to administer to be certain that the information contained in this publication is accurate and that changes have not been made in the recommended dose or in the contraindications for administration. This recommendation is of particular importance in connection with new or infrequently used drugs.

Some of the product names, patents, and registered designs referred to in this book are in fact registered trademarks or proprietary names even though specific reference to this fact is not always made in the text. Therefore, the appearance of a name without designation as proprietary is not to be construed as a representation by the publisher that it is in the public domain.

Printed in the United States of America

5 4 3 2 1

TMP ISBN 1-58890-016-9

GTV ISBN 3 13 124631 6

Contents

Foreword	vii
Preface	ix
Introduction	xi
A Tribute to Osvaldo Suárez	xv
Chapter 1 Historical Outlook	1
Chapter 2 Rationale and Anatomical Basis for Functional and Selective Neck Dissection	23
Chapter 3 Conceptual Approach to Functional and Selective Neck Dissection	55
Chapter 4 Surgical Technique	63
Chapter 5 Hints and Pitfalls	107
Chapter 6 Complications	131
Chapter 7 Frequently Asked Questions	139
Suggested Readings	145
Index	155

This page intentionally left blank

Foreword

The most important prognostic factor in cancers of the head and neck is the status of cervical lymph nodes. The importance of cervical lymph-node metastasis in the management of cancers of the head and neck was reported as early as 1847 by Chelius. Kocher, in the same year, proposed the need to surgically excise these “glands” in the treatment of oral cancer. At the turn of the 19th century, Butlin emphasized the need to excise upper cervical lymph nodes in the surgical treatment of tongue cancer. However, the credit for systematic excision of cervical lymph nodes in the surgical treatment of cancers of the head and neck should go to George Crile, Sr., who described the operation of “radical neck dissection,” based on his personal experience, in 1906. Hayes Martin popularized the operation and established it as the standard of surgical care for cervical lymph-node metastasis. Although the operation was effective and considered the gold standard, it also caused significant esthetic and functional morbidity.

The authors of this book are to be complimented for putting together an excellent text on the evolution of the philosophy of surgical management of cervical lymph-node metastasis. The concept of cervical lymphatics contained within the fascial compartments of the neck, initially developed and applied to surgical techniques by Osvaldo Suárez, is appropriately credited. Subsequent promulgation of his technique in Europe by Bocca and Gavilán led to the accumulation of significant surgical experience, particularly in cancers of the larynx, to justify the validity of the concept and its surgical application with convincing outcomes. The authors propose “functional neck dissection” as a concept and not a modification of the standard radical neck dissection. To that end, the historical perspective detailed in this textbook is impressive.

Understanding of the patterns of cervical lymph-node metastasis has further advanced the “concept” of functional neck dissection to the development and clinical applicability of selective neck dissections. Thus, the varieties of selective neck dissections currently in vogue are called extensions of the concept of functional neck dissection, as proposed in this book.

The authors are to be commended for putting together a fine contribution to the literature in the field of head and neck oncology. This book is a classic tour through the history of surgical management of neck metastasis and is a meticulous and outstanding treatise on the technical aspects of the operation. The years of experience amassed by the authors is reflected in the chapter *Hints and Pitfalls*.

This opus from the surgical dynasty of the Gaviláns, enriched by contributions from DeSanto and Herranz, is truly a monumental work on the history, development, practice, and outcomes of functional neck dissection.

Jatin P. Shah, MD, MS (Surg.), FACS
Hon. FRCS (Edin.), Hon. FDSRCS (Lond.)
Professor of Surgery
Weill Medical College of Cornell University
Chief, Head and Neck Service
E.W. Strong Chair in Head and Neck Oncology
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
New York, New York, USA

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

The present book represents the philosophy of neck dissection used by the authors based on their experience over a period of more than 30 years. It also describes the evolution of neck dissection during the 20th century, from George Crile to the surgery of the new millennium. And last but not least, it relates the transition from radical neck dissection to other less aggressive, but equally effective, procedures, which have been designed to manage the neck in patients with head and neck cancer.

The relation between functional neck dissection and selective neck dissection is approached from a pragmatic nonconventional perspective, which does not always follow the guidelines of the classifications currently used in the literature. However, by no means should this book be regarded as a proposal for a new classification of neck dissection. In reality, there is not even a chapter dedicated to the issue of neck dissection classification. Our main purpose is to clarify the connection between functional and selective neck dissection from historical, anatomic, and surgical standpoints. However, rest assured that this book is not limited to the history and philosophy of neck dissection; surgical technique constitutes a fundamental part of this volume. Surgical details are extensively demonstrated with sequential operative photographs of actual operations performed by the authors. Where necessary, line drawings are used to complement the details of the surgical field. The number of illustrations reflects the detail of the description provided.

A separate chapter on “hints and pitfalls” has been designed to provide the reader with technical guides and warnings that reflect the personal experience of the authors acquired through decades of practice. They are shared here to avoid repetition of previous mistakes. Many years ago, when I was in training, I learned from Antonio de la Cruz, MD, that to make science move forward you must be original in your own errors — that is the reason for this chapter.

Over the last 10 years we have been lecturing on neck dissection around the world. This has provided us with rich input from a variety of audiences concerning the most frequent doubts, problems, and demands regarding the various surgical techniques that are currently available. A separate chapter has been designed to answer the most frequently asked questions and to thereby make available to the reader a somehow more direct communication with the authors.

The conceptual approach to functional and selective neck dissection, the surgical indications for these procedures, and the operative technique demonstrated in this book express the ideas and opinions of the authors — a very small group of persons. Thus, the book should be regarded as a single-author work rather than as a multiauthored volume. Whereas there are many advocates for multiauthored books — as proven by their widespread diffusion in recent years — the clarity and uniform methodology of a surgical concept does not develop in a multiauthored book. To that extent, there is an obvious advantage in following the approach developed by one individual — or a small uniform group of experts — with years of authority in the field.

This book is primarily addressed to practicing head and neck surgeons involved in the management of malignant tumors. However, surgeons training in otorhinolaryngology, general surgery, or plastic surgery will also find it an interesting and valuable source of information. The

graphic information included in the book will serve as a highly useful tool to familiarize readers with the procedure.

I would like to acknowledge the efforts and dedication of the coauthors of this book. My thanks go first to César Gavilán, MD, my father, teacher, and faithful fellow for many years. He has contributed like any other person to my knowledge and experience, both in the personal and in the professional field. I would also like to thank Lawrence W. DeSanto, MD, for helping me so much and opening so many doors to my professional expansion in the international arena. This book is one of the examples of Larry's help during the last decade. Thanks also go to my good friend Jesús Herranz, MD. Over the years we have shared many hours of courses, discussions, and thoughts, which have culminated in this book. His energetic working capacity and critical compliance have been indispensable in the completion of this work.

I would also like to express my sincere appreciation to those who have helped with this book. Julio García-Polo, MD, did a fine job with many of the photographs; Ricardo Bernáldez, MD, and Antonio del Palacio, MD, suffered long surgical sessions to obtain the adequate surgical images for the book; and María Angeles Cerdeira, MD, and Roberto Fernández worked hard on the illustrations. I also have to acknowledge the dedicated help of the fellows, residents, and nursing staff in the Department of Otolaryngology at La Paz University Hospital and La Zarzuela Hospital for their support and assistance with the clinical and surgical work associated with this book. My special thanks go to Carmen Marina, my secretary, who has been particularly helpful during the last weeks of final preparation when everything seemed to be "almost done."

My final thanks go to those who remain at home when I go to work and those who remain at the hospital when I come back home. My family and my patients are the two vital forces of my life. For many years my wife, Mercedes, and my children, Cristina and Jaime, have suffered my egoistic professional interest. I know this situation will probably continue for a long time and would like to thank them for their love and support over the years. Meanwhile, my patients will occupy most of my time. Trying to cure them and improve their quality of life will remain as the unreachable utopia that I will always seek.

Finally, I would like to emphasize that this book was written with the intention to clarify concepts and approximate postures in the controversial and sometimes contentious field of neck dissection. As often happens with conciliatory postures, the final result may be worse than the original situation. However, we assume the risk with the hope that the synthesizing approach to neck dissection that is given in this book may shed some light upon the field.

Javier Gavilán, MD

Introduction

Functional and Selective Neck Dissection. The first thing that a title like this would bring to my mind would be something like, “What is this book about?”; “What will I get from it?”; “Is this worth the try (money)?”

More than 30 years ago we started to share our experience with functional neck dissection in head and neck cancer patients. At first, we were criticized for not being radical enough. Functional neck dissection was less than the standard cancer operation described by Crile; thus, its oncological safety was disputed. The years went by and we gradually witnessed a global shift toward less aggressive operations for early N stages. It seemed that the time for functional neck dissection had come. However, there was still criticism—now we were being too aggressive. It was time for selective neck dissections.

Throughout this period—when functional neck dissection was less than needed and when it apparently became more than required—we suspected that the problem was merely due to a lack of understanding of the concept of functional neck dissection. The operation is neither less aggressive than radical neck dissection nor more aggressive than selective neck dissection. It is simply different from radical neck dissection, and the basis for all types of selective neck dissections. Proving this is one of the main goals of this book.

There has been so much written about neck dissection in recent years that one can hardly believe there is still something new and interesting to add to the field. Thus, before we proceed, let us explain what we intend to present in this book, that is, what you can expect to find and what you will not find here.

WHAT THIS BOOK IS ABOUT

Neck dissection has been evolving since 1906 when George Crile described the so-called radical neck dissection. From the very beginning it became evident to many surgeons that the procedure was adequate for advanced disease in the neck but was too aggressive for early N stages. Thus, to avoid the unnecessary removal of some neck structures, several conservation procedures were designed since the 1920s.

This book will present the evolution of these “less than radical” operations from two different perspectives: the American and the Latin. The reason for this duality must be sought in the evolution of neck dissection. Over the years, this surgery has experienced the influence of two simultaneous tendencies, separated only by a language factor. This factor has produced a misunderstanding of ideas leading to a mismatch between concepts and surgical techniques.

The concept of a functional approach to the neck, materialized in the so-called functional neck dissection, has not been fully apprehended in the English literature. As a result, a new original idea

has been identified as just another technical modification, which is included in a vast classification as just one more item.

This book tries to differentiate between conceptual approaches and surgical techniques. The former constitute keystones in the evolution of scientific knowledge. The latter are only technical variations of a standard procedure, designed to solve the problem using the most effective approach. Functional neck dissection belongs to the first group because it reflects a new original approach to the problem of lymph node metastases in head and neck cancer. On the other hand, selective neck dissections should be included within the group of surgical techniques because they share with functional neck dissection the same rationale and indications. Selective neck dissections constitute only technical variations of the functional concept, designed to fit the operation to the patient on a more individualized basis. The problem of functional and selective neck dissection will thus be addressed in this book from a different, nonconventional perspective: *functional* refers to a concept, and *selective* refers to surgical techniques included within this concept.

However, we do not intend this book to be merely a summary of the history and philosophy of neck dissection. We would like to bring this book to the medical shelves, not to the libraries of history. Therefore, we provide a detailed description of the anatomical basis and surgical technique of the functional approach to the neck. And by “functional approach to the neck” we mean any type of neck dissection that uses the basic principles of fascial dissection. Fascial spaces and barriers of the neck hold the rationale for functional neck dissection. This idea will be repeatedly emphasized throughout the text.

Finally, we include a comprehensive list of technical hints and pitfalls that the authors have learned through the years. These details, along with the answers to the most frequently asked questions regarding functional neck dissection, complete the contents of this book and contribute to the book’s general purpose.

WHAT THIS BOOK IS NOT ABOUT

Now that you know what this book is about, we would like to make a few comments on the things that you will not find in the following pages.

This book does not contain a detailed description of the surgical technique for all types of selective neck dissection. This is precisely what we try to avoid in an effort to stop further misunderstanding of the problem. Because selective neck dissections are regarded as technical modifications to the functional approach, they are all included in the general operative description. The step-by-step description of the complete surgical technique of functional neck dissection contains all the modifications that may be designed to treat the neck in patients with primary tumors from different sites, as long as these modifications follow the same rationale and basic indications of the original procedure. By describing the complete basic operation, all variations are included. Only specific surgical details of different types of selective operations will be mentioned in the text.

This book does not include an exhaustive discussion about the indications and usefulness of different types of selective neck dissection. History has proved the oncological safety of the concept of functional neck dissection for head and neck cancer. The nodal metastatic pattern for different head and neck primary tumors is well known, and some selective neck dissections have also proved to be totally safe. However, reducing the field of surgery creates a greater potential risk for leaving metastatic nodes behind. We cannot assure the oncological safety of all types of selective neck dissection on the basis of our own personal experience. Preserving some nodal groups in carefully selected patients has been demonstrated to be oncologically safe in our hands (e.g., not including area I in patients with cancer of the larynx). However, we have not sufficiently tested

other selective operations. Thus, extensive discussion about the indications for different types of selective neck dissection according to the location of the primary tumor will not be included in this book.

Finally, this book does not intend to propose a new classification of neck dissection. Our purpose is to present the rationale, surgical technique, and evolution of “less than radical” neck dissection from a historical perspective, emphasizing a conceptual approach over technical considerations. We seek to connect and unify the American and Latin points of view and thereby to clarify the confused field of nonradical neck dissection.

This page intentionally left blank

A Tribute to Osvaldo Suárez

The memory of Osvaldo Suárez, along with our gratitude, is still alive in the minds of those of us who had the privilege to meet him. We still remember his amazing surgical expertise, based on years of anatomical dissections. On the last day of his visit to Madrid he started a last case shortly before leaving for the airport. As the time of his plane's departure approached we offered to continue the case on our own. He gently declined saying that he could finish the case if he could operate without explaining the surgical details. We accepted his offer to see the scalpel in his hands literally fly over the surgical field in a way we had never seen before. The operation was completed in 20 minutes—20 minutes of the cleanest, most effective surgery that we had ever seen.

He was not only a superb surgeon but also a great person with his colleagues and, especially, with his patients. His idea of function preservation always went hand in hand with a clear demarcation of priorities. His motto, "A life without voice is much better than a voice without life," stresses the importance of defining priorities in the field of laryngeal cancer treatment. We would like this book to be a tribute to his memory, often forgotten in the world of neck dissection.

This page intentionally left blank

Historical Outlook

THE AMERICAN PERSPECTIVE

It is acknowledged that the management of neck metastases from cancers in the upper aerodigestive system is very important to achieve a patient cure. Some form of surgery for removing neck metastases has been used for a century in the United States. During this period there was debate, dogma, and dissension. The issues included the kind of dissection, the timing of dissection, whether to dissect one or both sides, and whether to dissect in the absence of evidence of neck metastases. These issues remain unsettled today. As new treatment tools became available, questions arose as to their place in neck treatment. Radiation, with or without dissection, is still a debatable issue. The place for chemotherapy is undecided.

Crile and the Radical Neck Dissection

The grandfather of neck dissection in North America is George Crile, Sr., of the Cleveland Clinic. In 1906, Crile portrayed the field of head and neck surgery as being behind the times in terms of interest and progress. Many head and neck cases were regarded as hopeless. The belief, at that time, held that cancer of the upper aerodigestive system remained localized until regional metastases developed. Regional lymph nodes were regarded as vigorous barriers to distant dissemination. Crile cited an autopsy study of 4500 patients with head and neck cancer that was initiated by himself but carried out by Dr. Hitchings. The latter claimed that less than 1% of head and neck cancers, at death, had distant metastases. Crile believed that, if the neck lymphatics could be removed in a "radical" manner and "en bloc," more cures could be accomplished. The oncological premises of Crile's time were strongly influenced by Halstead. The concept of the "bloc" that was in vogue for the treatment of breast cancer required removal of the primary site with draining lymphatics and nodes in continuity. In breast surgery the pectoralis muscle was part of the "bloc." In the radical neck dissection the sternocleidomastoid muscle was removed to provide better access to the underlying lymphatics. No oncological benefits beyond access were claimed. In the radical breast operation the axillary vein was removed to give better clearance to lymph nodes. In the radical neck dissection the entire venous system of the lateral neck was included for the same reason. Medina observed that, in the drawings used to illustrate Crile's publication, the vein was not always removed. The analogous thinking behind head and neck and

breast cancer procedures persisted for nearly a century. Following reconsideration of the basis for breast cancer surgery there was reconsideration of head and neck cancer surgery.

Crile identified several contemporary issues. He suspected a biological difference in tumor behavior and prognosis between patients who had palpable suspicious neck nodes and those who did not. He favored the radical operation for those who had palpable disease and a more limited operation for the others. The concept of a segmental or selective neck dissection is not new. Only the words used are new. Crile was not concerned about bilateral neck dissections, but he did note that staging was prudent. He believed that dissection in early cases in the absence of palpable disease was important. Increased rates of cure and decreased rates of recurrence occurred if the clinically negative neck was treated at the time of primary surgery. No statistics were cited to support his belief. Crile noted, without reference to the clinical situation (staging came much later), that among 48 patients who did not have a radical neck dissection, only nine were alive 3 years later. Of 12 other patients who underwent neck dissection 3 years after dissection, 9 were alive. From this he concluded that the radical operation was four times as effective as the less radical procedures (node picking or no neck treatment). This impression, with little supporting data, persisted for decades.

Hayes Martin and the Concept of Head and Neck Surgery

Head and neck surgery made little progress in the ensuing decades in North America. The various surgical groups interested in head and neck cancer acknowledged a need for a more focused effort. To this goal, a head and neck service was established at the Memorial Hospital in New York City in 1914. Similar services were not developed at other centers for many years.

The term *head and neck surgery* had very little meaning until Dr. Hayes Martin used it in the 1940s. Ward, Hendricks, and Martin initially defined the scope of the specialty. Training was limited to rotations on the Memorial Hospital service by general surgeons during a general cancer surgery program. Physicians who were exposed to and influenced by Martin supervised most surgical training in the following decades. General surgeons usually received the training, which meant that regional surgeons such as otolaryngologists and maxillofacial surgeons were limited in their experience with head and neck cases.

Martin had a profound influence on the direction and dogma of head and neck surgery. The radical operation was his standard. It was defined as an “operation that purports to remove, as thoroughly as possible, from the lateral and anterior aspects of the neck, the lymphatics (lymph nodes and lymphatic vessels) that are likely to be involved by metastatic cancer. The field of operation should begin above the lower edge of the mandible and extend to the clavicle below. Anteriorly the dissection should begin in the midline and be carried posteriorly to the anterior edge of the trapezius muscle. The procedure should include the removal of the sternomastoid and omohyoid muscles, the internal jugular vein, and the submaxillary salivary gland, en bloc.” The concept of partial neck dissection was acknowledged by Martin: “When the field is confined to specific limited portions of the neck, such as submaxillary area and supraomohyoid region, the term ‘partial neck dissection’ should be used.” Partial neck dissections include submaxillary dissection, dissection to the omohyoid muscle, and preservation of the sternomastoid muscle, internal jugular vein, and spinal accessory nerve. These more conservative operations were favored by some but not by Martin.

Martin’s indications for the radical operation were precise. He taught that

1. There should be definite evidence that cancer was present in the cervical lymphatics. This principle ruled out the so-called prophylactic or elective neck dissection.
2. The primary lesion giving rise to the metastases should have been controlled, or if not controlled, there should be a plan to remove the primary at the time of neck dissection.

3. There should be a reasonable chance of complete removal of the cervical metastatic cancer.
4. There should be no clinical or roentgenographic evidence of distant metastases.
5. Neck dissection should offer a more certain chance of cure than radiation therapy.

Martin detailed the relative nature of the concept of fixation: "All fixation is not the same and some fixed nodes can be removed completely." He also decried the term *inoperable*, which to him meant that the surgeon "lacks the confidence to complete a meaningful operation." Martin did not teach prophylactic neck dissection. This axiom was based on statistical analysis of data from the Memorial Hospital, concluding that too few patients benefit from an elective procedure to justify its use. The absence of any statistical guidance as to whom might benefit from a prophylactic dissection led to the universal use of the complete or radical operation in therapeutic situations only. Martin decried "individualization" or "deciding each case separately" as "arbitrary decisions that were a matter of a physician's state of mind and optimism or pessimism, which may vary from day to day and is based on the most recent experience." He doubted that surgeons were capable of making decisions by balancing and weighing a set of dissimilar factors such as age, general health, primary site and size, economic status, and reliability, in a way that would have practical impact on the probability of survival: "Even though some members of the medical profession should actually possess such occult powers to select treatment methods in individual cases without reference to, or in regard to statistical evidence, nevertheless, such skills are surely limited in their usefulness and could hardly be taught to others." This observation is still relevant today when we try to select and use the proper operation from a myriad of choices and combination therapy options and teach how to make these decisions to our students without statistical guidance. Martin was very clear on the goals of treatment. Survival without disease was the only worthy goal. This means living a long time and dying of some cause other than the treated cancer.

The inconsistencies in the dogma of therapeutic dissection were acknowledged. The choice of not doing a prophylactic neck dissection was judged a calculated risk, and the propensity of individual surgeons to have different tolerance to risk was acknowledged. Today, we have the same debate, in that individual surgeons have their own threshold for the likelihood of metastases for which they would recommend an elective neck dissection. *Elective* is the contemporary term for *prophylactic* because a neck dissection in the absence of proven disease prevents nothing. In Martin's time, there was the subtle suggestion that a prophylactic dissection actually prevented something, but what that something was is not clear.

Another inconsistency noted was that bilateral prophylactic dissections were theoretically needed to be consistent with some primary sites treated. For practical reasons, bilateral prophylactic dissection was not a policy or practice of the Memorial Hospital Head and Neck Service.

The principle of radical neck dissection was to remove, as completely as possible, the structure of the lateral neck. The compromise nature of this axiom was obvious. Some structures cannot be practically removed, and others are removed at a functional cost. Structures in the same proximity to metastatic cancer, where the price of removal is too high to be accepted as routine, are the internal carotid artery, the vagus nerve, the brachial plexus, and, to a lesser degree, the phrenic, hypoglossal, and lingual nerves, and the cervical sympathetic. The accessory nerve was always considered expendable. The radical operation's oncological premise was "the bigger the operation, the better the chance for cure." Researchers in head and neck oncology have been gathering data and refining the concept of bigger being better. We are concerned that this premise might be incorrect, in that variables other than the physician's actions can determine the probability of a cure.

Martin's influence on the treatment of head and neck cancer in the United States was considerable. Surgeons from Memorial Hospital trained most of the country's cancer surgeons for several decades, and these surgeons then trained the next generation. Memorial Hospital-trained surgeons were generalists in a broad sense and included head and neck cancers in their domain. In the 1960s, the leadership in head and neck surgery expanded. Martin, William Maccomb

at the MD Anderson Cancer Center in Texas, Oliver Beahrs at the Mayo Clinic, and others were prominent. Plastic surgeons, led by Milton Edgerton and Bakamjian, became involved in head and neck cancer surgery.

I (LWD) trained at the Mayo Clinic and worked with Beahrs. Head and neck surgery was exclusively the domain of the general surgeons. As a young man, Beahrs had been a visiting clinician at Memorial Hospital and had observed Hayes Martin and his Head and Neck Service, although he did not train with Martin. Beahrs was a founding member of the Society of Head and Neck Surgeons and had organizational connections with Martin and his followers. Charles Mayo was referred to as the “head doctor” as the fledgling Mayo Clinic gradually subspecialized. Goiter was endemic in the Midwest, and Mayo treated thousands of patients with goiter over the years. Charles Mayo, Pemberton, and Beahrs were active thyroid surgeons. When surgery of the lateral neck was needed, Beahrs and others were called on to do neck dissections. Laryngology was practiced through a service called “Oral, Plastic Surgery, and Laryngology.” This unusual combination of interests evolved when colleagues Peter Lillie and Gordon New decided that Lillie should focus on mastoid surgery and New on laryngeal diseases. This was before there were specialty boards or recognized medical and surgical specialties. Mayo grew and space requirements separated Lillie and New. New moved to a different section and Lillie stayed. Each pioneer developed a department, the department staff developed training programs, and the training programs produced specialists. Laryngology became part of the Plastic Surgery Service. Oral surgery became an independent specialty at a different location. Individuals trained under the domain of plastic surgery were laryngologists at Mayo. This was the situation when I (LWD) started otolaryngology training. Otolaryngologists did operations through body apertures, like the ear canal and nostril, but only general or plastic surgeons could use a knife to cut through the skin to reach underlying structures. Total and partial laryngectomy were common procedures performed by the laryngologist–plastic surgeon. Interested otolaryngology residents were allowed to work with the laryngologist–plastic surgeons at a junior level and, later, at a more senior level. When required, the otolaryngology staff and residents would request the laryngologist–plastic surgeon to perform a tracheostomy on ear, nose, and throat patients.

Only a few of the plastic surgeons were interested in laryngology. Kenneth Devine and John Lillie (Peter’s son) were both trained in general surgery. They became the primary laryngologists through the 1950s and 1960s and into the 1970s. Lillie had otolaryngology training, and Devine had additional plastic surgery training. No Mayo staff otolaryngologist had an interest or training in laryngology. The volume of otology and rhinology that passed through the Otolaryngology Service was such that there was no incentive to seek additional work. Head and neck surgery was an orphan interest with responsibility divided between the plastic surgeon–laryngologists and the thyroid surgeons. The thyroid surgeons did the neck dissections, and the plastic surgeon–laryngologists surgically excised the primary tumors. In practice, this meant that the thyroid surgeon saw the patient briefly in the office of the primary surgeon and would examine the patient’s neck, but not the primary tumor unless it could be seen with a tongue blade. The thyroid surgeon would agree that the neck should be dissected, with little concern about the primary or its metastatic probabilities. In the hospital, the thyroid surgeon would come to the operating room of the laryngologist, do the neck dissection, and leave, never to see the patient again. This arrangement continued for decades. Otolaryngologists at Mayo did not perform regional cancer surgery. Patients who arrived at the Otolaryngology Department with a head and neck cancer were transferred to the plastic surgeons.

Nationally, change was stirring. In 1954, the Memorial Hospital surgeons formed the Society of Head and Neck Surgeons to promote advances in the field. Otolaryngologists with an interest in this area were excluded. There were leaders in otolaryngology committed to developing head and neck surgery as a regional specialty at a time when regional surgery was recognized as a valuable concept. Urologists, gynecologists, and others were developing ideas, techniques, and diagnostic procedures that were not within the domain of the general or oncological surgeon. Regional

surgeons developed techniques and tools that were unique to regional problems and not generic to a general surgeon. Under the leadership of John Conley, George Sisson, George Reed, John Lore, Ed Cocke, and others, there was a push to develop head and neck surgery within the specialty of otolaryngology. A section of head and neck surgery was created within the American Academy of Ophthalmology and Otolaryngology. Pressure was exerted within the American Board of Otolaryngology to mandate training in head and neck surgery by otolaryngology training programs. The leadership organized the American Society for Head and Neck Surgery, with membership open to all specialists who had an interest in that discipline. Over several decades, otolaryngologists gained experience and respect for their management of head and neck cancers. Strong leaders and experienced teachers grew within the specialty. The specialty promoted conservation surgery for cancer of the larynx, modified neck dissection, reconstruction techniques, and diagnostic tools. There were advances in endoscopy, imaging, laser technology, airway management, and vocal rehabilitation. Otolaryngology residents were better trained in head and neck surgery. In the 1960s, both of the head and neck societies sponsored continuing education programs. In 1968, President McComb of the Society of Head and Neck Surgeons appointed a committee concerned with the training of future head and neck surgeons. In the same year, a committee with the same goal was created within the American Society for Head and Neck Surgery. The committees eventually combined and a joint training committee led to a curriculum for fellowship training programs open to all specialties interested in the surgery of the head and neck. Eighteen fellowship programs have been approved. John Lore, who had credentials in both general surgery and otolaryngology, was a committed leader in the growth of the fellowship programs. In the years that followed, the two head and neck societies began to hold combined meetings and courses. Through these collaborations, the lines between the generalists with a special interest in head and neck surgery and the regional specialists blurred, and mutual respect grew. Eventually members from the otolaryngology group were invited to join the Society of Head and Neck Surgeons. In the 1990s the two societies merged.

These national trends were recognized at the Mayo Clinic. As otolaryngologists throughout the country gained respectability and the public recognized their role in managing regional cancers, the tertiary referral for patients with head and neck patterns gradually shifted at Mayo to the Otolaryngology Department. To accommodate the referral pattern, the laryngologists moved from the Plastic Surgery Section to Otolaryngology. The relationship with general surgeons in regard to neck dissection remained for a time. The laryngologists saw the patients, and a treatment plan developed. The general surgeons did the neck dissections. Follow-up and rehabilitation were managed by the laryngologist. New otolaryngologists with training in head and neck surgery did their own neck dissections. Gradually the general surgeons who did the neck dissections retired, and the cancer surgery for metastases to the lateral neck became the responsibility of otolaryngologists with an interest in cancer. This trend also occurred throughout the United States at other medical centers.

In 1979, the American Academy of Otolaryngology was renamed the American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery (the separation from ophthalmology had happened earlier). Formal training in head and neck surgery became an integral part of the basic otolaryngology program. Fellowship training became more available. Future specialists in head and neck surgery and oncology will come from these fellowship-trained specialists. Core otolaryngology training in head and neck surgery reached its apogee in the late 1980s. The advent of so-called organ preservation programs, which depend on the combination of chemotherapy and radiation with surgery for salvage, has hampered and even crippled the basic otolaryngology head and neck training. In many established head and neck cancer training programs the surgery of head and neck cancer reverted to a salvage role. With fewer patients treated primarily with surgery, experience of modified and selective neck dissection is infrequent, as is laryngeal conservation surgery. These trends diminish the training opportunities for head and neck surgeons.

Economic Factors

Understanding the vicissitudes of head and neck cancer management in the United States following World War II requires insight into the economics of medicine. Fees for services prior to World War II financed health care. Doctors and hospitals billed patients, and patients paid their bills. The union movement was strong in the United States after the war. Unions, through collective bargaining, negotiated health care benefits for their members. Employers paid for the workers' health insurance. This introduced a third party into the fee for service system, but bills were paid without negotiation. The popularity of insurance programs gradually expanded to the nonunion sectors of the economy. The availability of financing and the American belief that "more is better" allowed the growth of therapy programs combining surgery with radiation. These programs aim at increasing rates of cure and decreasing the number of local and neck cancer recurrences. Such combined therapy programs are an important part of the neck dissection story. In recent decades, payers, usually businesses, demanded some control on the growth of health care costs that were rising as much as 20% per year. Medical costs included excesses fostered by the "more is better" attitude. The insurance companies, under pressure from the business payer, questioned the cost of medical care. Insurance companies began to negotiate with doctors and hospitals. An incentive was provided to doctors and hospitals whereby insurance companies directed large blocks of patients to the care providers who accepted their payment schedules. Doctors accepted these incentives to keep a patient base as did hospitals. Insurance companies gained an influential position in health care decisions. Managed care was an outgrowth of the insurance companies' pressure. In managed care programs, fee for service (or "more is better") is being replaced by the concept of capitated reimbursement. The doctors and hospitals are given a negotiated amount to care for patients who are members of a larger group. More was no longer better; more was expensive and a threat to the financial viability of the hospitals and doctors. Many economic innovations in health care delivery followed. Ambulatory surgery and home health care became necessities. Whereas a patient with a laryngectomy and neck dissection would stay in the hospital for up to 2 weeks during the fee for service era, now the patients are sent home with feeding tubes and drains in place in less than 1 week.

Modifications to Neck Dissection

From Martin's time, surgeons recognized that the Crile operation was not always necessary and was unwarranted in some cases of head and neck cancer. For surgeons who favored elective or prophylactic and bilateral dissections, it was evident that the radical operation was excessive when no metastases were found in the neck. Many terms (e.g., *modified*, *supraomohyoid*, *upper*, *midline*) were used to describe these lesser operations. The nomenclature became confusing to teach and lacked standardization for reporting. The American Academy of Otolaryngology — Head and Neck Surgery convened a special task force to address the terminology problems. The group was tasked to (1) recommend terminology that adhered to the more traditional words as radical and modified radical, (2) define which lymphatic structures and other nonlymphatic structures would be removed relative to the radical dissection, (3) provide a standard nomenclature for lymph node groups and nonlymphatic structures, (4) define the boundaries for resection of lymph node groups, (5) use terms for neck dissection procedures that are basic and easy to understand, and (6) develop a classification based on the biology of cervical metastases and the principles of oncological surgery.

Some of these goals were accomplished. Terminology was fashioned, and lymph node groups were defined, as were the boundaries of the groups. Whether these accomplishments created a system, basic and easy to use, is in doubt. The Academy classification was based on the rationale that (1) radical neck dissection is the standard reference procedure; (2) when one or more nonlymphoid structures are preserved, the term *modified neck dissection* is preferred; (3) when

TABLE 1-1. The American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery Classification of Neck Dissection

Radical Neck Dissection
Modified Radical Neck Dissection
Selective Neck Dissection
Supraomohyoid Neck Dissection
Lateral Neck Dissection
Posterolateral Neck Dissection
Anterior Neck Dissection
Extended Neck Dissection

TABLE 1-2. Memorial Hospital Classification of Neck Dissection Proposed by Spiro

Radical (4 or 5 node levels)
Conventional Radical
Modified Radical
Extended Radical
Modified and Extended Radical
Selective (3 node levels)
Supraomohyoid
Jugular Neck Dissection
Any other 3 node level dissection
Limited Neck Dissection
Posterolateral
Paratracheal
Mediastinal
Any other 1 or 2 node levels

one or more lymphoid groups are preserved, the term *selective dissection* is recommended; and (4) when a procedure removes other lymph node groups or nonlymphoid structures different from those removed in the radical neck dissection, the recommended term is *extended neck dissection*.

The Academy classification defined seven different neck dissections (Table 1-1). Other classifications are cited in the literature and preferred by their authors' institutions, so the classification issue is not unanimously agreed upon. For example, Spiro from Memorial Hospital offers a list of 11 neck dissections (Table 1-2). Medina modified the Academy classification with eight different types of comprehensive neck dissection, seven selective operations, and one extended neck dissection (Table 1-3).

What is not clear, on a statistically supported basis, is what dissection is appropriate for what clinical scenario. The question of whether many of the modifications make any clinical difference, in terms of survival, morbidity, or any other measure of value recognized today, has not been answered. Only empirical assumption is offered as a basis for these recommendations. It is unlikely that statistical data will be forthcoming in the immediate future because the whole issue of the type of neck dissection is being overshadowed by the questions raised about neck treatment when concomitant chemoradiotherapy programs are used as initial treatment for both the primary site and neck metastases.

Indications for Modified Neck Dissections

The classical radical neck dissection is too much for the patient with no clinical evidence of neck metastases. Moreover, it is not always successful with advanced metastatic disease (N2 and N3). Modifications recognize that what we do to patients may be less important than what patients bring to treatment with their immune systems. The human immune system plays a role in who gets well, the likelihood of recurrences in the neck, and the probability of a cure. Neck recurrences happen regardless of how radical or conservative the operation.

Radical neck dissection removes all the lymph node groups from the mandible to the clavicle, and from the midline of the neck to the anterior border of the trapezius muscle. Also removed are the nodes in the tail of the parotid, the internal jugular vein, the spinal accessory nerve, and the sternomastoid muscle. The postauricular, suboccipital, buccinator, perifacial, and retropharyngeal nodes are not removed. The radical operation is recommended for extensive lymph node metastases, gross extranodal spread from nodal metastases, and lymph node metastases around the accessory nerve and internal jugular vein. It is the operation often used for surgical salvage

TABLE 1-3. Medina's Modification of the American Academy Classification of Neck Dissection

Comprehensive	Selective
Radical	Lateral
Subtype A	Anterolateral
Subtype B	Supraomohyoid
Modified Radical	Posterolateral
Type IA	Radical
Type IB	Type I
Type IIA	Type II
Type IIB	Type III
Type IIIA	Extended
Type IIIB	

after chemotherapy or radiation failure, for the short fat neck and for the previously violated neck and other difficult or indeterminate situations.

According to the classification of the American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery, modified radical neck dissection is the “en bloc” removal of the same lymph nodes and lymphatics as the radical operation (levels I to V) but with the preservation of one or more nonlymphatic structures routinely taken with the radical operation. The goal of modification is to lessen the morbidity resulting from the sacrifice of the accessory nerve. The morbidity of the removal of the internal jugular vein becomes an issue only when bilateral operations are performed. Preservation of the sternomastoid muscle is said to provide a cosmetic benefit.

The modified radical operation is indicated when an operation is needed to remove all gross nodal metastases while preserving the accessory nerve. This is possible when the metastatic disease is in no greater proximity to that nerve than it is to the vagus or hypoglossal nerves. These nerves were ritualistically preserved with the radical operation, whereas the accessory nerve was sacrificed.

The Clinically Negative Neck

Martin's bias against elective or prophylactic neck dissection has been reexamined. Retrospective studies, reviews, and analyses suggest that watchful waiting after primary tumor treatment adds to the risk of failure because of undetected disease in the neck. Risk varies with the site of the primary tumor. The probability of nonclinical or so-called occult metastases varies by the site and size of the primary tumor, as well as other variables such as depth of mucosal invasion of the primary tumor. Clinicians estimate these risks by palpation, imaging studies, and needle biopsies. The probability estimates are then used to attempt rational decisions on whether, when, and how to treat the clinically negative neck.

A growth in popularity of electively treating the neck has been the major stimulus to more conservative neck dissections. There is acknowledgment that many elective dissections do not remove any metastases because the neck nodes are truly negative. There is historical evidence that an operation less extensive than the radical neck dissection is just as effective in controlling occult metastases. A new philosophy is evolving. That philosophy asks, What unnecessary treatment is least harmful? not, What necessary treatment is most effective? *Necessary* refers to when disease is present and *unnecessary* to when it is not. Shah, for example, found that two thirds of patients undergoing elective neck dissection did not have metastatic cancer. Less radical surgery nurtures a selective approach to surgical neck treatment.

Evaluation of the clinically negative neck is now more dependent on technology than it was in the past. Clinical evaluation by palpation is essential but unreliable in detecting so-called occult,

microscopic, or subclinical lymph node metastases. Word confusion also influences treatment planning. *Occult* or *subclinical* means not palpable and uncertain with imaging studies. *Microscopic* means disease that can only be detected with the microscopic examination of a removed specimen. These distinctions are important to the issue of radiation treatment to the neck of the patient without evidence of metastases. Palpation is said to be in error 20 to 50% of the time. Accuracy depends on the examiner's experience, the patient's physical habitus (e.g., short fat necks vs. thin long necks), prior neck treatment (including open neck biopsy), and prior radiotherapy to the neck.

Recent advances in imaging techniques with computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance (MR), and ultrasound have decreased the error rate in staging the necks when small cancer-containing nodes cannot be palpated. Criteria for malignancy on CT and MR include (1) nodal size of 15 mm or more in level II and 10 mm in other levels, (2) groups of three or more questionable nodes 1 to 2 mm smaller, (3) nodes of any size with central necrosis, and (4) loss of tissue (i.e., fat) planes within imaged nodes. These criteria are fallible and continue to be refined. Size is the least reliable criteria. Using the >10 mm threshold, Friedman et al found a sensitivity of 95% but a specificity of only 77%. Using >15 mm as the threshold Feinmesser et al found a sensitivity of only 60% and a specificity of 85%. Central lucency can be misleading. It can be caused by fat in the node or an artery with plaque formation. Fine needle aspiration, guided by ultrasound, improves accuracy in diagnosis that approaches 90% when carried out by experts in both ultrasound and fine needle biopsy.

In practice, the decision to electively treat the neck of a patient with a clinically negative neck is made on the clinical assessment of the primary site, an estimate of probability of metastases, and the uncertain support from imaging studies. The use of ultrasound-guided needle aspiration is yet to be widely accepted in the United States because of jurisdictional issues. The use of ultrasound by the clinician is not common because the technology is considered to be in the domain of radiologists. This may change given that other specialties, such as obstetrics, are now performing ultrasound examinations in their own departments rather than in the radiology departments.

Selective Neck Dissection

The MD Anderson University of Texas Cancer Center and the Memorial Sloan-Kettering group popularized the concept of selective neck dissection. It evolved from the modified dissection, which preserved the spinal accessory nerve. Of lesser influence in North America was the concept of the functional neck dissection of Suárez, popularized in the English-speaking world by Bocca. Data assured surgeons that neck recurrence rates with pathologically negative necks and low-staged clinically positive necks were similar regardless if the accessory nerve was sacrificed or not. The long-term functional consequences of accessory nerve sacrifice were described in the 1960s as the shoulder syndrome. Shoulder droop, diminished range of motion, shoulder abduction, and external rotation and pain led to reconsideration of routine nerve sacrifice. Modified neck dissection that preserved the accessory nerve was a logical first modification. It later became obvious that preserving the nerve, by dissecting it free, was not always followed by normal nerve function. Surgical trauma during dissection left some with variations of the shoulder syndrome. Questionnaires about shoulder function were reassuring but electromyography and careful clinical evaluation by experts documented that preserving the accessory nerve is not always enough. However, careful nerve preservation is more rational than routine sacrifice of the nerve.

The loss of contour after removal of the sternomastoid muscle led to reconsideration of that practice. The muscle does not contain lymphatics or lymph nodes, but its removal does make neck dissection easier. Routine sacrifice of the jugular vein adds no oncological safety in the clinically negative and low-stage clinically positive neck situations. These observations, among others, led to selective neck dissection being accepted as a staging operation.

Lymph Node Groups

The concept of radical and modified neck dissection considers the cervical lymph nodes as a unified system divided into anatomical areas such as upper, lower, posterior, and submandibular. The selective dissection movement in the United States focuses more on the subgroups than the system as a whole. The selective dissection model uses retrospective studies that support the idea that metastases from the various sites in the head and neck have predictable patterns in early stages. The movement is a logical outgrowth of the concept of conservation surgery and a movement away from the “more is better” philosophy.

The most popular terminology for subdividing the lymph node groups is that used by the head and neck service at the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Hospital. This classification divides the neck into five levels in each side of the neck. A sixth zone describes the anterior compartments of the neck. A complete description of level and boundaries of lymph node groups is provided in the next chapter.

Using the Selective Neck Dissections

The idea of selective neck dissection appears to have started for neck management of lip cancer at the MD Anderson Hospital. Jesse and Fletcher raised the question of radical versus modified neck dissection in 1978. At the Mayo Clinic surgeons were performing a modified neck dissection with preservation of the accessory nerve from the early 1960s when Ward et al reported on this modification.

Selective neck dissections are used on patients with known limited disease or a probability of limited disease. The operations are based on the predictability of metastatic patterns depending on the primary site. Level or levels of nodes removed depend on the location of the primary tumor. Selectivity in neck dissection depends on the principle that, in the early stages, metastatic patterns are predictable in previously untreated cancers.

Information concerning the metastatic pattern from different head and neck primary sites has allowed a more selective type of neck dissection. The issue is why? The removal of nonlymphatic structures causes the morbidity of neck dissection. One can question the rationale for saving proximate nodal groups that merge into one another. In the United States, the concept of selective neck dissection is popular, but difficult to use. Selective dissections are recommended only for early and previously untreated cancer. With the popularity of so-called organ preservation programs in clinical studies and the community, the treatment of previously untreated cancers by the surgeon is not as common as when the concept of selective neck dissection was evolving.

Selective Neck Dissection: Final Issues

A surgeon from somewhere other than the United States might wonder what purpose is served by trying to classify what surgeons have always done. The importance may be more nononcological than oncological. We perceive the selective classification's role as part of the medical reimbursement system of the United States. Insurance companies and government health care funding systems prefer categorical descriptions of what they are paying for by codifying selective procedures as much as is possible. This motive is seldom stated. There are unanticipated consequences of this manipulation of the nomenclature. Major cancer center guidelines separate the head and neck oncological specialists in the community from those in the cancer centers. This may have been an unstated goal rather than an unintended consequence. With seven or more primary sites, four primary stages, three or more neck disease stages, seven or more kinds of neck dissections, and two sides of the neck, the practitioner has to choose among so many permutations and combinations that the neck may be undertreated, overtreated, or not treated at all. Out of frustration, the patient may be referred to the medical center. The experienced surgeon may well be comfortable with intuitively picking and choosing among options. The community surgeon, who is

less comfortable with so many options, may give up, and refer away, radiate the neck, or not treat the neck nodes in the elective situation. As educators who listened to more than one hundred resident physicians discuss their ideas about proper neck treatment strategies, we have perceived their confusion. An experienced surgeon can use selective neck dissections in selective situations. The decision is usually intuitive and based on the conviction that bilateral neck dissections are at times important. Martin's caution remains about the absence of infallibility and the certainty that there are no reliable statistical data to support many of these decisions. The whole concept of selective neck dissection may well be rendered moot in the United States because so much more surgery for neck metastases is being done after chemoradiotherapy either in a planned sequence in advanced (N2 and N3) neck metastatic disease or in the salvage at recurrence after chemoradiotherapy failure.

Radiation, Chemotherapy, and Neck Dissection

A criticism of modified and selective dissections is specifically directed to the operations. In the United States, the modifications were linked with postoperative radiation therapy. There was fear of more neck recurrences with the lesser operations. Radiation was added to accommodate that fear. Patients were told that postoperative radiation was given "to be sure." Thoughtful clinicians observed that, even with the addition of radiation to neck dissection, there were recurrences in the operated and postoperatively radiated neck. The message persists that combining radiation and neck dissection is proven standard therapy with a measured value.

Earlier, radiation before surgery was thought the logical sequence. The arguments for preoperative radiation were that the blood supply of the structures to be radiated was not compromised, and tumor cells are theoretically more susceptible to the radiation effect if well oxygenated. Tumor cells that would theoretically be spread around in a surgical field, on the other hand, are hypoxic and thus less susceptible to the lethal effects of radiation.

There were practical problems with preoperative radiation. Operations were delayed with concern that this delay would permit more distant metastases. Wound healing was slower, and complications seemed worse. Death after combined therapy seemed more frequent. Surgeons were reluctant to be involved with preoperative radiation programs. Some radiation therapists categorically stated that, if postoperative radiation was indicated, preoperative radiation therapy should have been given. Such certainty, without supporting data, burdened decision making.

The evolution of the theoretical basis for postoperative radiation provides insight into how we can actually convince ourselves when we want to believe something to be true. The theoretical basis came from a mathematical dose-response curve cited by Cohen. In 1968, Cohen demonstrated that, at about 5000 rads (50 Gy), 90% of subclinical (i.e., microscopic) cancer cells appeared to be destroyed or rendered unable to reproduce. Cohen experimented with a rat adenocarcinoma model. He did not address human cancer, squamous cell cancer, or neck metastases. His experimental cancers were microscopic, not subclinical or nonpalpable. This distinction is important. On the basis of Cohen's rats, Fletcher, a radiation therapist from the MD Anderson Hospital, conjectured in 1973 that it was "theoretically possible to sterilize 90% of cancers cells using postoperative radiation." A few years later, he made the same statement but dropped the word *theoretically*. Today, based on no data beyond Cohen's rats, we hear such statements as "90% of metastases in clinically negative necks will be controlled with radiation," "90% of recurrences in the neck radiated postoperatively will be prevented," and even "90% of patients with subclinical disease will be cured after neck dissection and postoperative radiation." There is no substantial evidence that any of these statements are true for humans with squamous cell carcinoma.

In the hope of increasing survival by decreasing neck recurrence it is standard practice to use postoperative radiation for patients with a high risk for neck recurrence and death after dissection.

What constitutes a patient at high risk for recurrence is not settled. Some feel that any patient with proven neck metastases should have postoperative radiation. Other retrospective studies suggest limiting the use of radiation to patients with more specific findings, such as four or more nodes metastatically involved; extracapsular extension of tumor, without a definition of extracapsular spread; invasion of vascular and/or lymphatic spaces, soft tissue, or the jugular vein; adherence to nerves; or a desmoplastic lymph node pattern.

Each of these risk factors was defined after the theoretical basis for postoperative radiation was expounded. No phase 3 randomized prospective clinical trial has been completed to prove a benefit from postoperative radiation. Several completed phase 3 studies compared preoperative radiation with surgery alone or postoperative radiation in patients with advanced head and neck cancer. They found little difference in neck recurrence rates between the pre- and postoperative radiation patients. Postoperative radiation became the preferred approach to combined therapy. One prospective study compared operation alone to dissection and postoperative radiation. Fifty-one patients were randomized before the study was abandoned. An analysis of these patients found fewer contralateral neck recurrences, fewer distant metastases, and a "trend," but no statistical significance, to improved survival. There was no significant difference in local versus regional control, disease-free, or overall survival. The study was abandoned because it did not show what was desired. The failure to find a benefit with radiation after dissection was attributed to an inadequate dose of radiation.

Proper technique, the right amount of radiation, and the timing of radiation have plagued the quest to find value in combined therapy from the beginning. Failure to find benefit from combined therapy programs is rationalized by such statements as, "What was done was the old way and what we are doing now is better." DeSanto reviewed data on 1385 neck dissections in 1985. There were 837 patients who did not receive any radiation before or after neck dissection compared with 87 who received preoperative radiation and 155 who received postoperative radiation in the sequence, timing, and dosage that, at that time, were considered appropriate. We could find no subgroup of patients that seemed to benefit from radiation either pre- or postoperatively. This was not to say that there was no value to the radiation, but we could not find a place where it was valuable. A review of the study reveals that what was done and considered proper at that time should be criticized today. The radiation dosage was low, and there were breaks in therapy that are unacceptable now. Patients were included who received radiation up to 3 months before or after surgery with dosages as low as 40 Gy. The pathological neck stage was used rather than the number of positive nodes, and the study was not censured for patients who had local recurrences. Colleagues from Mayo took the same database of nonradiated patients and compared outcomes with patients treated later who received postoperative radiation in dosage now considered correct. Comparing 56 pairs of patients, in a matched pair analysis, there were different conclusions. The matched pair variables included extracapsular spread, number of nodes, age, sex, neck stage, and desmoplasia—all risk factors better appreciated today. The radiation was delivered in a timely manner (mean interval from operation to onset to therapy of 41 days with a range of 7 to 94 days) and was given in higher dosage (>50 Gy). Forty-one of the 95 patients in the pool for the matched pair analysis had continuous radiation, but 54 patients had a break of 3 to 4 weeks in the middle of the radiation. Breaks in therapy are now considered deleterious, but only recently were they considered permissible. The analysis found significant improvement in regional control rates, disease-specific survival, and overall survival in patients who received postoperative radiation after neck dissection. This is one of a very small number of credible studies that show some benefit to the combined radiation and neck dissection. The results in this small study, it is conjectured, could have been even better if what is currently believed to be the most modern radiation had been used. Peters, in an editorial comment on this Mayo report, noted that too many patients were given a break in therapy, there were too many days between surgery and radiation, the dose to the upper neck (mean 56 Gy) was too low, and 28 patients received no treatment to the lower neck. This kind of criticism dominates the literature on combined therapy: "Judge us not on our dismal past but on

our radiant future." It has always been that way. The techniques change, the timing and dosage change, but the premise that somehow there must be a value for some patients is never questioned.

The quest continues for a program that can be proven effective. In 1978, Memorial Hospital performed a randomized trial of preoperative radiation using 2000 rads (20 Gy), an amount that would be considered unthinkable low today. They reported a decrease in neck recurrences in patients with multiple nodes suspicious for metastases from 71.0 to 37.5% with no improvement in survival. Vikram, from the same center, later observed a decrease from a historical reference of a 70% neck recurrence rate to 13% in patients with pathologically confirmed metastases using postoperative radiation. Using the 70% recurrence rate as a reference, a rate which seems unusually high from an expert's perspective, led to a careful reading of these reports. It seems that the patient cohorts with the higher recurrence rates differed from those who fared better in that the 70% recurrences were in patients operated on by surgeons in training. The group with the lower recurrence rate was not only radiated but was also operated on by the experienced faculty surgeons. An alternative explanation of the vast differences in recurrence rates might be that there are quality differences in neck dissection, just as there are with radiation therapy.

While the colleagues at Mayo were struggling to try to find the specific place for radiation in our large surgical practice, the radiation specialists were the opinion makers and aggressive advocates of postoperative radiation. Fletcher and Lindberg followed McComb as the radiation specialists at MD Anderson Hospital. These experts concluded a positive benefit from radiation after neck dissection in 1975. This study excluded 243 of 440 patients. The reasons for exclusion included patients who were lost to follow-up, had a primary recurrence, or received what was later decided to be inadequate, undetermined doses or uncertain radiation fields. Also excluded were what was retrospectively determined to be "improper" radiation because of what was called a "geographic miss." Little evidence exists that exclusion of patients with unfavorable or unknown outcomes, if applied to a prospective study, would permit the conclusion that there was a survival advantage or a decrease in neck recurrence with combined therapy.

A recommendation that came from the MD Anderson Hospital in 1985 changed their earlier proposal to irradiate all patients after modified dissection. They allowed that patients whose neck contained only one metastatic node and patients with a pathologically proven negative neck did not need or would not benefit from postoperative radiation. Reviews of other studies that addressed modified neck dissection and postoperative radiation illustrate that the smaller the sample size and the greater the number of exclusions, the more likely the series will find some effectiveness to a combined program. An example of data manipulation and sample size is contained in a report by Pearlman in 1985 in which 41 patients with modified neck dissection and postoperative radiation were examined. For those patients with neck specimens positive for metastases and in whom no node was greater than 4 cm in diameter, an impressive failure rate of only 8% was cited among those who had combined therapy. This compared to a 50% neck recurrence rate in those who did not. The control group was four patients who refused postoperative radiation. There were 13 exclusions: among the exclusions were five who died in less than 3 years free of disease and three described as not responding to radiation. Exclusions and the use of patients who refused treatment as controls illustrate how important it is to read details to understand statistical manipulations of studies that claim positive results.

An assumption strongly held in the United States is that postoperative radiation has an important role to play after neck dissection in some patients and will assuredly reduce the risk of neck recurrence. No prospective randomized study has ever been completed to conclusively establish this fact or identify what subgroup of patients might benefit. In most other areas of evidence-based medicine in the United States, major changes in medical practice depend on a consensus established by more than one prospective randomized study. With combined therapy, lower standards are accepted because of the strongly held empirical opinions that it would be unethical to randomize patients when radiation would be withheld from some who might benefit. It is accepted that a randomized study would be impossible to perform using postoperative

sequential therapy because timing is important, patients have complications that delay treatment, treatment would be refused or prematurely terminated, or some would be too sick to begin radiation. Surgeons are reluctant to randomize because of their preconceived notions about risk factors of uncertain validity such as nodal size, number of positive nodes, extranodal spread, and so forth. When asked for consent, patients might refuse to be assigned to randomized treatment. No study has been completed that has overcome these difficulties. That such an important issue cannot be resolved scientifically is hard to accept. The same issue has been addressed with other forms of cancer such as breast cancer and resulted in more logical treatment programs. Our investigators have no difficulty getting patients into chemoradiotherapy programs, but the unresolved combined radiation–dissection question remains. The opinion that there is a value in some subgroup of patients is forcefully communicated to noncritical practitioners who accept the bias that allows them to believe to be true what they want to believe. Still cancer recurs in dissected and postoperatively radiated patients. There has been very little progress made to increase survival when there are regional metastases. There is some progress, in that we are beginning to look at other variables besides the tumor, the neck metastases, and we are focusing on the host and his or her immunity. It may be that there is more to curing cancer than what we do to the disease. Perhaps what the patient does or does not bring to treatment plays a role in whether recurrences appear in the neck, and whether the person lives or dies after treatment. The ultimate irony is that the combination of two immunosuppressive treatments may be harmful because of negative alterations to the immune system.

A conundrum evolves as chemoradiotherapy programs gain popularity in the United States. An important observation from the now famous Veterans Administration (VA) study is that optimal management of regional metastases is essential. Clinical responses after chemotherapy for the primary tumor and suspected regional metastases were assessed separately in that study. The primary could vanish and the nodes remain palpable, the metastases could vanish and the primary remain, or neither or both could respond completely. A mixed response of some sort was found 50% of the time. The neck node response was less than the primary tumor response 28% of the time and more than the primary response in 24% of patients. When success of treatment or the need for salvage surgery was considered, it was found that large nodes (N2, N3) that disappeared completely after chemotherapy were usually controlled after radiation. Other observers have supported this conclusion.

If palpable neck disease persisted after induction chemotherapy, radiation frequently failed. In the VA study there were 42 patients with N2 or N3 disease randomized to chemotherapy. Only 30% were successfully treated if less than a complete response occurred in the neck compared with 67% success if there was a complete neck response. Among those with less than a complete response, 68% had a salvage neck dissection. Too many patients who might have benefited from salvage surgery were found to be inoperable in the neck. Today's policy in the study is to do a neck dissection on all patients who had persistent neck disease after induction chemotherapy. This means that the neck dissection is done between the chemotherapy and the planned radiation without resecting the primary cancer. This is feasible, but it leads to the dreaded scenario of later primary failure in a previously operated and radiated patient. This is a complex situation, and salvage surgery to the primary site is unlikely to succeed. Thomas reported neck dissection on 20 patients between chemotherapy and radiation. Control rates and survival were claimed to be better than those of the original protocol. Survival and control were similar to a group of 19 patients who achieved a complete response in the neck after chemotherapy and did not have a neck dissection. Complications were minimal.

Unfortunately, the complexity of neck management is not fully appreciated because recommendations keep changing. There are no data that this increases likelihood of survival. The timing and sequence of neck dissection in the chemoradiotherapy programs are not settled. Other investigators recommend planned neck dissection after radiation in all patients with advanced stage (N2, N3) neck disease. The rationale for this approach is that there is poor survival and a high

incidence of residual disease found in the neck after radiotherapy. Radical or modified radical operations are usual and are planned between 4 and 10 weeks after radiation. Higher complication rates can be expected, and the risk of a late failure at the primary site makes this kind of sequential therapy very insecure for the patient, the patient's family, and the responsible physician. Long-term results are lacking. The best the investigators can conclude today is that neck nodes do sometimes respond dramatically and completely to the new programs that include chemotherapy in situations where such responses were not seen before with radiation alone. What remains to be decided is whether there is any increased survival from this long, expensive, emotionally draining, complex approach to cancer treatment.

Clinical oncologists lead the combined chemoradiotherapy programs. There is less surgical influence in the opinion trends and a general desire by surgeons to "get along" in the oncology study groups. The majority of patients treated in the chemoradiotherapy schemes in the United States are not in study groups but are treated in the community. Harari surveyed the reasoning that motivates these programs in the community and claimed that 96% of patients are treated outside any study. The primary objective cited by the oncologists is a desire to improve local and regional control and to improve survival. Other reasons cited are the desire to maintain a "spirit of multidisciplinary care," to improve quality of life, and to decrease distant metastases.

Patient management, today most often controlled by tumor boards, committees, and protocols, diffuses responsibility. Surgeons are tending toward a role as salvage workers after initial treatment failure.

Summary

The neck dissection story in the United States is that of incremental changes based on observations, forcefully stated opinions, and little science. Crile started the "bloc" concept based on Halstead's ideas about the prevailing surgery for breast cancer. It took nearly 100 years for this concept to be tested with breast cancer and then rejected. Martin used his personal experience and position of influence to train large numbers of surgeons in the Crile operation. Bocca and others intuitively believed that bilateral operations were needed at times, and the radical neck dissection was too much when both sides of the neck were operated. Data accumulated to support the intuitive belief, and the trend toward elective and modified operations expanded. A "conservation" attitude allows the concept of selective operations and individualization of treatment, a concept decried by Martin. Neck surgeons now are conflicted between "lumpers" and "splitters": those who choose between many operations and those who are satisfied with just a few.

Every possible combination of surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy is used, but none are consensus choices as standard therapy. The successful option will likely come from the laboratory rather than the surgeon, clinician, or radiation oncologist.

THE LATIN PERSPECTIVE

A Personal Contribution to the History of Neck Dissection

The evolution of neck dissection in Latin countries followed a similar course to that of the United States during the first half of the 20th century. During those early years, neck dissection was not widely used in spite of the well-known work of Crile. The name of the masters of Spanish laryngology—García Tapia, Ager, Sánchez Rodríguez, M. Gavilán, and others—was recognized among the world experts in the emerging field of what eventually would be called head and neck surgery. However, the surgeons of these early times still used terms such as *visiting the lymphatic chains* and *nodal toilette* when referring to lymph node surgery associated with the removal of the

primary tumor. The term *visiting the lymphatic chains* was used to describe a shy palpation along the carotid sheath in an attempt to identify enlarged nodes suspicious of harboring metastatic cells. When the nodes were identified as potentially metastatic, a nodal toilette was performed. In reality this was no more than an elegant name for a vulgar node picking.

The work of Hayes Martin completely changed the world of neck dissection by popularizing the operation described by Crile in 1906. Radical neck dissection soon became the standard procedure for patients requiring surgical treatment of the lymphatics of the neck in combination with removal of the primary tumor. As often happens in life, the law of the pendulum proved again to be a loyal fellow of human progress. In a very short period of time neck surgery moved from a “slight caress” to the lymphatic tissue of the neck to an aggressive management of all neck structures. The lymphatic tissue had to be removed from the neck and the best way to do this was by removing almost every single structure within the cervical area. Only the carotid artery and some “lucky” nerves survived the Halsteadian concept of oncological surgery.

It soon became evident to all those involved in the management of patients with head and neck cancer that the radical operation was adequate for the treatment of large palpable masses, but excessive for patients without palpable nodes under high risk of cervical metastasis, as well as for some patients with small palpable nodes. It was also noteworthy that radical neck dissection was not practical as a simultaneous bilateral procedure. And bilateral issues were extremely important in countries with a high incidence of midline lesions (e.g., tumors of the supraglottic larynx, base of the tongue, etc.).

In 1967 I (CG) was appointed as chairman of the Department of Otolaryngology at La Paz Hospital. This was the first large hospital of a newly developed national health system in Spain and soon became the flagship of the Spanish public health system. During the first year, more than 125 new cases of cancer of the larynx were surgically treated. Radical neck dissection was used for patients with palpable nodes, but all other patients were left untreated. One year later, the new 125 laryngeal cancer patients had to share treatment with a large number of recurrent patients from the previous year. Most recurrences developed in the neck, and a significant percentage of them were inoperable at the time of diagnosis. We quickly realized that something was failing, and coined a sentence that became popular in our environment: “Patients operated for cancer of the larynx die from nodal cancer.” Radical neck dissection was not a solution to our problem because most patients were clinically N0 at presentation, and more than 60% of them had supraglottic tumors.

At that time there were rumors about an operation called functional neck dissection that was performed by an Argentinean named Osvaldo Suárez. The operation was designed to remove the lymphatic tissue of the neck, preserving the remaining neck structures. However, the operation was not appealing for two reasons: (1) It was less than the accepted dogma of the moment—radical neck dissection, and (2) the name suggested a dangerous approach to cancer. How can a terrible disease like cancer be treated with a mild “functional” operation? (Remember that Halsteadian principles were still leading the world of oncology at that time.) We had the opportunity to see a film on functional neck dissection performed in Spain. The film was of poor quality: the surgery was not systematic or didactic, the surgeon was messy, and the quality of the image was deplorable. After this experience our disapproval of the new technique was even more evident. We did not want this for our patients.

In the context of the previous paragraph it could be interesting to emphasize that a scientist’s mind must have firm rules and guidelines, but should always be prepared to accept changes and innovations. In medicine there are no immutable rules—or at least there are very few of them—and one should always remain open to new concepts, techniques, or facts that can render true what initially seemed false. Scientists must be prepared to identify and respond appropriately to such information when it appears, sometimes by sheer good fortune, which is what happened in our case.

In 1968 I (CG) was invited to lecture on vestibular disorders at the Medical School of the University of Córdoba (Argentina). Osvaldo Suárez was among the attendants (Fig. 1-1). Although

he was employed in the Department of Otolaryngology, he also worked at the Department of Anatomy under the direction of Pedro Ara. Professor Ara was known as the “Spanish anatomist,” and he was very popular in Argentina for having embalmed the corpse of Eva Perón. His dual projection as an anatomist and otolaryngologist conferred on Suárez a privileged position. On the one hand, as an otolaryngologist, he had a thorough knowledge of head and neck cancer—especially cancer of the larynx. On the other, as an anatomist, he was very familiar with all anatomical details concerning neck dissection.

After the course I was invited by Suárez to watch a couple of surgical cases of cancer of the larynx with their respective functional neck dissections. The experience was striking—truly an instance of fortune knocking at our door.

The operation, as performed by Suárez, was nothing like we had seen before. It was clean, systematic, comprehensive, and easy to understand and teach. Moreover, it looked extremely useful from an oncological standpoint. Thus, we immediately arranged for Suárez to visit Madrid in the coming year. I asked him to remain with us at La Paz Hospital for 2 weeks. During the first week he would perform as many operations with us as possible. The second week would be devoted to a course on cancer of the larynx. He accepted our invitation.

In spite of his subsequently being diagnosed with a serious disease—which eventually killed him—he attended to his date in Madrid. In June 1969 he spent a week operating daily on head and neck cancer patients in our department, and a second week teaching a course in which he alternated lectures (Fig. 1-2) with live surgery demonstrations.

In 1970 we tried to contact him again to repeat the exciting experience of the previous year, but, unfortunately, he had died a few months earlier from the previously diagnosed illness. He left a well-trained disciple, who was also his relative, Dr. Filiberti, but he also died shortly thereafter, taking with him the knowledge and the tradition of Suárez’s experience. We were among the last people directly trained by him, during the 2 weeks that he had spent in Madrid.

The Origins of Functional Neck Dissection

“If you think you have discovered something new, it is because you do not read enough.” This popular statement summarizes the philosophy of most innovations in the field of science. The great contributions to human knowledge are always the result of a combination of previous research and personal experience. However, almost every important scientific discovery is linked to a person’s name. Functional neck dissection must be associated with the name and the person of Osvaldo Suárez.

It is true that from the very beginning it became evident to many that radical neck dissection was too aggressive in a large number of situations. Some surgeons like Truffert, Silvester Begnis, and others tried to modify what was considered to be the standard approach at that time, but their attempts were not fully successful. However, they laid the foundations on which future developments could be built. Osvaldo Suárez must be credited as the person responsible for gathering the previous knowledge with his own experience—oncological and anatomical—into a new approach for the management of neck metastasis in patients with head and neck cancer. The result of this combination of background, experience, and surgical ability was called functional neck dissection.

Two different factors should be considered on functional neck dissection: (1) the spirit of the procedure and (2) its surgical technique.

The Spirit of Functional Neck Dissection

The main goal of the “functional” approach to neck dissection proposed by Suárez is the removal of all lymphatic tissue in the neck, preserving the remaining neck structures. This is achieved by



Figure 1-1 Osvaldo Suárez signed this certificate, along with the remaining attendants, in recognition of the course on vestibular disorders given by C. Gavilán, MD, in Córdoba, Argentina (November 1968).



Figure 1-2 Osvaldo Suárez during one of his lectures at La Paz Hospital in Madrid (June 1969).

using the fascial planes of the neck that surround most cervical structures and separating them from the adjacent lymphatic tissue (see Chapter 2).

As long as the tumor cells remain confined within the lymphatic system of the neck, they can be safely removed by carefully stripping the neck structures from their fascial covering. There is no oncological benefit from removing the sternocleidomastoid muscle, internal jugular vein, or any other important neck structure, when cancer is locked up inside a partially isolated lymphatic space. The situation changes when the lesion invades the walls of this anatomical container, fixing the nodes to surrounding structures. Then, the tumor is no longer a “nodal cancer” but becomes a “neck cancer.” This situation invalidates the “functional” spirit and justifies the use of a classic approach with removal of the involved neck structures.

Therefore, the spirit of functional neck dissection is to take advantage of the particular anatomy of the neck to remove all or part of the lymphatic system, with preservation of the remaining neck structures. The key words in this definition are *all* and *part of*. The spirit of functional neck dissection does not take into consideration the extension of the removal. Functional neck dissection only intends to use the fascial planes of the neck to carry the desired removal without disturbing the surrounding structures. It may include all the lymphatic tissue of the neck—all nodal regions—or only some selected groups, according to the expected incidence of cervical metastasis, the location and extent of the primary tumor, and the preferences of the surgeon. When the operation was adopted by American surgeons, these important words vanished, and the concept of functional neck dissection—the spirit of the procedure—was seriously affected.

For supraglottic cancer, Osvaldo Suárez never included in the resection the submental and submandibular lymph nodes (area I). Obviously, he also did not include the central compartment of the neck (area VI) for these lesions. However, he still considered this to be a functional neck dissection, as long as the main principle of dissecting through fascial planes was guiding the surgeon’s hands.

It may be argued that preservation of some nodal groups requires cutting through the fibrofatty tissue that contains the lymphatic system of the neck, something that seems to be in contradiction with the basic principle of fascial dissection. This is only a theoretical concern with no practical implications, as has been proved by the results of the functional approach over the years. In fact, it must be remembered that nodal groups are only a schematic representation of the lymphatic system of the neck, which is really configured in different chains that follow the course of the major cervical vessels and nerves (see Chapter 2). Modified radical neck dissection with spinal accessory nerve preservation also requires sectioning the lymphatic container in the upper part of the neck to preserve the anatomical integrity of the nerve between the jugular foramen and the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The theoretical drawbacks of this maneuver—cutting through lymphatic tissue and violating fascial barriers—have never been a problem with respect to oncological results, as long as its indications are carefully observed.

To summarize, the spirit of functional neck dissection may be compared with the philosophy of partial laryngectomy. Total laryngectomy goes against the organ and removes the whole larynx with the tumor that it contains, whereas partial laryngectomy is directed against the tumor and preserves the functioning part of the larynx that is not involved by the tumor. Both approaches have their own rationale, role, and indications, and neither can be considered to be a modification of the other. The same can be said of functional and radical neck dissection.

Surgical Technique of Functional Neck Dissection

We give special emphasis to the difference between the spirit (i.e., functional neck dissection as a concept), and the surgical technique (i.e., just one more operation). As a surgeon one can apply the spirit without the surgical technique and vice versa.

The technical details of the functional approach play a secondary role for the understanding of the procedure, although they have been given a major interest. Factors such as the extension of the operation, its technical difficulty, the time required to perform the procedure, and others have been

the center of debate for many years. It is true that most of them deserve some attention, but, obviously, they are not the main issue.

Concerns about the extension of the operation have been discussed previously and will be emphasized in other chapters of this book. Technical difficulty is a relative problem. For those, like us, who have been trained in this operation since the very beginning of our professional careers, functional neck dissection is much easier than the classic radical operation. Why? Simply because we have performed many more functional operations than radical procedures. This demonstrates the relativity of the issue of difficulty. The same can be said about the idea of functional neck dissection as a time-consuming operation. Obviously, for the N0 neck it will take more time to perform a complete functional neck dissection than a radical operation. However, the time difference will also depend on the experience of the surgeon, and, again, those familiar with the functional operation will find the difference to be less important. This is not to mention the cosmetic, anatomical, and functional disadvantages of performing radical neck dissections in N0 necks—something that very few appropriately trained surgeons will still support today.

Another technical factor that Osvaldo Suárez usually emphasized was the type of dissection performed (e.g., knife vs. blunt dissection). As an anatomist, he stressed the advantage of knife dissection over blunt dissection to follow the fascial planes of the neck. Some of us learned his lesson and still use the scalpel for most of the surgical steps in functional neck dissection. The technical details for a successful knife dissection along with some practical tips are given in the text.

The Functional Approach: Combination of Spirit and Technique

Applying the technical details of functional neck dissection without understanding the spirit of the procedure results in a large number of different operations, be they selective operations, modified procedures, limited neck dissections, or any other name that we would like to use. This is in part what happens with most neck dissection classifications currently used in the literature. On the other hand, understanding the spirit of the procedure but using wrong technical abilities produces a messy operation that is difficult to understand and teach. The operation will not look appealing and the observer will have the same feeling that we had back in 1968 when we saw the first film on functional neck dissection.

As for any other human activity, approaching perfection requires a balanced combination of ideas and skills. This is achieved only by putting together the technical details with the spirit of the procedure. This is what we call functional neck dissection.

Evolution of Functional Neck Dissection

Osvaldo Suárez did a fine job with functional neck dissection. He had a thorough knowledge of neck anatomy, was a great surgeon, and designed a new approach to the lymphatic system of the neck for patients with head and neck cancer. He was also able to teach the operation to those avid surgeons desiring to assist or observe him at surgery. However, he had an important weak point—he did not dedicate enough time to promoting the diffusion of his technique within the scientific community. In fact, he published only a couple of papers that were indirectly related to functional neck dissection. In his most frequently cited paper, “El problema de las metástasis linfáticas y alejadas del cáncer de laringe e hipofaringe,” he describes the anatomical basis for functional neck dissection, without an in-depth description of the surgical technique.

In his last years he taught the procedure to two prominent disciples. Both were especially interested in the operation for patients with cancer of the larynx because both were otolaryngologists in Latin countries where there is an extremely high incidence of cancer of the larynx—especially supraglottic lesions. The incidence of bilateral neck metastasis in these lesions, along

with the need to treat N0 patients, made functional neck dissection the ideal tool for this group of patients. The names of these enthusiastic pupils were Ettore Bocca, from Italy, and César Gavilán, from Spain. They both learned the operation directly from Suárez. They both understood that this could be the solution to their problems with N0 patients and bilateral neck dissections, and they both adopted functional neck dissection as a new revolutionary approach to the neck.

César Gavilán introduced functional neck dissection in Spain in the late 1960s and early 1970s. Ettore Bocca did the same in Italy. However, Bocca also published his results with functional neck dissection in the English literature. This explains the common association of functional neck dissection with Bocca's name so often found in the Anglo-Saxon countries. However, if one reads carefully Bocca's papers on functional neck dissection, the name of Suárez is always mentioned.

Functional neck dissection arrived in the United States more than a decade after it had been introduced in Europe, but, more important, it did so through the experience and words of third parties. Thus, part of the message vanished in the process of adaptation to the new environment. Unfortunately, the part missing was the philosophical element of the message, supposedly the less important piece of information; in reality, the core of the new procedure.

The operation soon became accepted as an oncologically safe procedure for the management of the neck in head and neck cancer patients. However, it was considered just a simple modification of the classic procedure described by Crile and was included as one more item in a vast classification of different types of neck dissection. The surgical technique was there, but the concept—the spirit of the procedure—did not reach the head and neck surgeons in the United States. At the time the American surgeons accepted the functional operation they were involved in the development of less aggressive procedures by modifying the radical neck dissection. The work on the “selective field” had already started, but this belongs to the American side of the history and has been thoroughly described in the previous section.

Rationale and Anatomical Basis for Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

Functional neck dissection, as described by Osvaldo Suárez, is based on the existence of a fascial barrier between the lymphatic tissue and the muscular, glandular, neural, and vascular structures of the neck. This anatomical separation allows the creation of a surgical plane of dissection. The fascial layer invests muscles and organs in the neck, forming planes and spaces where many important structures are crowded together. This fact, known as fascial compartmentalization, holds the rationale for functional neck dissection.

This chapter describes the anatomical bases of functional neck dissection from a practical and surgical standpoint.

RATIONALE FOR FUNCTIONAL AND SELECTIVE NECK DISSECTION

Fascial Anatomy of the Neck

The anatomical description of the fascial layers of the neck has suffered a number of different descriptions. For practical reasons we will consider two distinct fascial layers in the neck, the superficial cervical fascia and the deep cervical fascia. The superficial cervical fascia corresponds to the subcutaneous tissue. The deep cervical fascia is the key element for functional and selective neck dissection.

The *superficial cervical fascia* extends from the zygoma down to the clavicle, enveloping the platysma muscle and the muscles of facial expression. There is a potential space between the superficial fascia and the deep fascia that allows free movement of the skin and superficial fascia on deeper structures. This plane, located underneath the platysma muscle, is the cleavage plane that should be followed to properly elevate the cutaneous flaps in functional and selective neck dissection as well as other surgical procedures in the neck.

The *deep cervical fascia* surrounds the neck, enveloping its different structures. For teaching purposes, two different layers are considered within the deep cervical fascia: a *superficial* and a *deep* or *prevertebral* layer. The carotid sheath, which is an important structure from the surgical standpoint, is located between the two layers of the deep cervical fascia.

The *superficial layer* of the deep cervical fascia, also known as investing or anterior fascia, completely envelops the neck with the exception of the skin, platysma muscle, and superficial fascia (Fig. 2-1). It is attached to the occipital protuberance, mastoid process, capsule of the parotid gland, angle of the jaw, and body of the mandible to the symphysis, where it proceeds around the opposite side in a similar manner. It then goes posteriorly across the spinal process of the cervical vertebrae and the ligamentum nuchae. Anteriorly, it passes from the mandible to the hyoid bone and from here down to the sternum. Inferiorly, it attaches to the sternum, upper edge of the clavicle, acromion, and spine of the scapula. At the inferior border, in the midline, the superficial layer splits in two different layers just superior to the manubrium of the sternum. The space between these two layers is known as the *suprasternal space of Burns*. From posterior to anterior, the superficial layer splits to enclose the trapezius, the portion of the omohyoid muscle that crosses the posterior triangle of the neck, and the sternocleidomastoid muscle. In a similar way it envelops the strap muscles, before ending in the midline. The superficial veins of the neck lie on or within this superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia.

The *deep* or *prevertebral layer*, like the superficial layer, attaches posteriorly at the spinous process of the cervical vertebrae and ligamentum nuchae (Fig. 2-2). At its upper limit, it goes to the skull base at the jugular foramen and carotid canal, then passes across the basilar process to the opposite side. This fascial layer covers the muscles of the back that enter into the neck immediately deep to the trapezius muscle (splenius and levator scapula). At this level there is a potential space between both layers. At the upper limit of the posterior triangle, this space is almost virtual. The spinal accessory nerve crosses the posterior triangle at this level, along with some lymph nodes. At the lower end, both fascial layers further separate, the deep layer covering the scalene muscles, whereas the superficial layer remains attached to the trapezius muscle and the clavicle. The phrenic nerve runs inferiorly on the anterior aspect of the scalene group, covered by this fascial layer. As it proceeds medially, the deep layer attaches to the anterior tubercles of the transverse process of the cervical vertebrae. From here it crosses the midline where it attaches to the transverse process of the cervical vertebrae of the opposite side, passing posterior to the esophagus and anterior to the spine. It is this prevertebral part that gives its name to this fascial layer.

The *carotid sheath* or *vascular sheath* lies between the superficial and the prevertebral layers of the deep cervical fascia (Fig. 2-3). It may be regarded as a cylinder-like structure made of fascial laminae connecting the superficial and deep layers. This vascular sheath runs from the base of the skull to the root of the neck. It has independent compartments for the internal jugular vein, the carotid artery, the vagus nerve, and the ansa cervicalis. It attaches to the prevertebral layer at the level of the anterior scalene muscle. The cervical portion of the sympathetic trunk runs posterior to the carotid sheath.

Fascial compartmentalization allows the removal of cervical lymphatic tissue by separating and removing the fascial walls of these “containers” along with their contents from the underlying vascular, glandular, neural, and muscular structures.



Figure 2-1 Horizontal cross section of the neck at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra showing the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia.

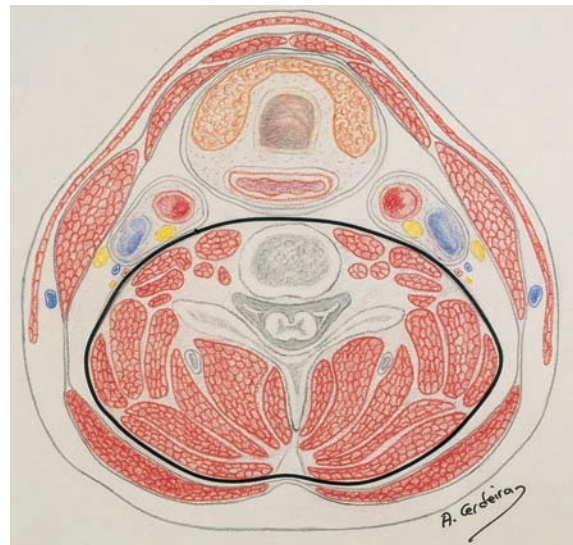


Figure 2-2 Horizontal cross section of the neck at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra showing the prevertebral layer of the deep cervical fascia.

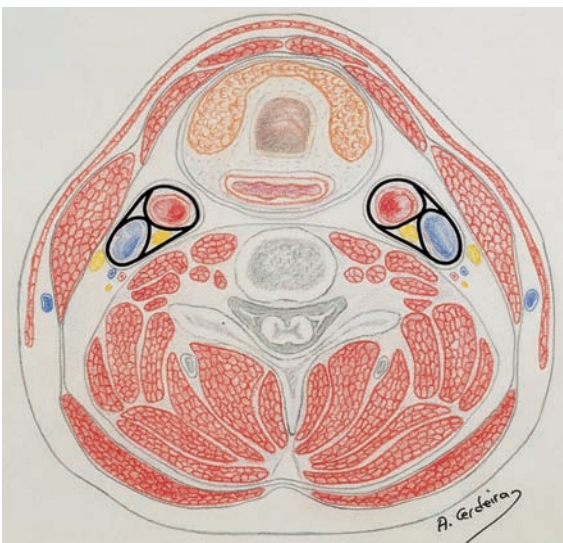


Figure 2-3 Horizontal cross section of the neck at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra showing the carotid sheath.

Lymph Node Distribution: Lymphatic Chains

The lymphatic system of the neck consists of a network of lymph nodes intimately connected by lymphatic channels. For teaching purposes, two major lymphatic networks may be considered in the neck, a superficial and a deep web.

Superficial Lymphatics

The superficial lymphatics of the head and neck drain the skin into the superficial lymph nodes located around the neck and along the external and anterior jugular veins. Superficial lymphatics include the submental, submandibular and facial, external jugular, anterior jugular, occipital, mastoid, and parotid groups (Fig. 2-4).

The *submental nodes*, usually two or three in number, lie in a midline triangular space bounded by the anterior bellies of the digastric muscles and the hyoid bone. They drain the skin of the chin, the skin and mucous membrane of the central portion of the lower lip and jaw, the floor of the mouth, and the tip of the tongue. These nodes drain into the submandibular chain or directly into the deep cervical chains.

The *submandibular nodes* are located along the inferior border of the horizontal ramus of the mandible. They usually lie over the submandibular gland although intracapsular nodes are also possible. The submandibular chain, along with some inconstant small facial nodes, drain the skin and mucous membrane of the nose, medial portion of the eyelid, cheek, upper lip, lateral part of the lower lip, gums, and anterior third of the lateral border of the tongue. These nodes drain into the transverse cervical and deep cervical chains.

The *external jugular nodes* are located between the lower parotid nodes and the midportion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, along the external jugular vein. They drain the lower part of the ear and the parotid gland into the superior deep cervical chain.

The *anterior jugular nodes* are located on the anteroinferior portion of the neck, parallel to the anterior jugular vein. They drain the infrahyoid area toward the inferior deep jugular chain.

The *occipital nodes* drain the skin of the occipital region and part of the superficial and deep lymphatics of the nape.

The *mastoid nodes* are located over the mastoid process and drain the ear, external auditory canal, and skin of the temporal region.

The *parotid group* includes both superficial and deep nodes. The superficial nodes are located over the external surface of the parotid gland, whereas the deep nodes are intraglandular and accompany the intraparotid course of the retromandibular and external jugular. The parotid nodes drain the skin of the temporal and frontal area, eyelid, auricle, middle ear, parotid, and the mucous surface of the nasal cavity.

Deep Lymphatics

The deep lymphatics drain the mucous membranes of the upper aerodigestive tract, along with organs such as the thyroid and larynx, into the deep cervical lymph node chains. These include the internal jugular, spinal accessory, transverse cervical, retropharyngeal, and deep anterior lymphatic chains (Fig. 2-5).

The *internal jugular chain* is formed by a variable number of lymph nodes—between 30 and 60—located along the internal jugular vein. The most posterior and smaller nodes are located over the splenius, levator scapulae, and scalene muscles, whereas the anterior nodes are in close relation with the anterior wall of the internal jugular vein. The posterior nodes drain the skin of the back of the head and receive efferent vessels from the occipital and mastoid nodes, as well as cutaneous and muscular tributaries from the neck. The anterior nodes drain the superficial and deep structures of the anterior part of the head and neck, both directly and indirectly.

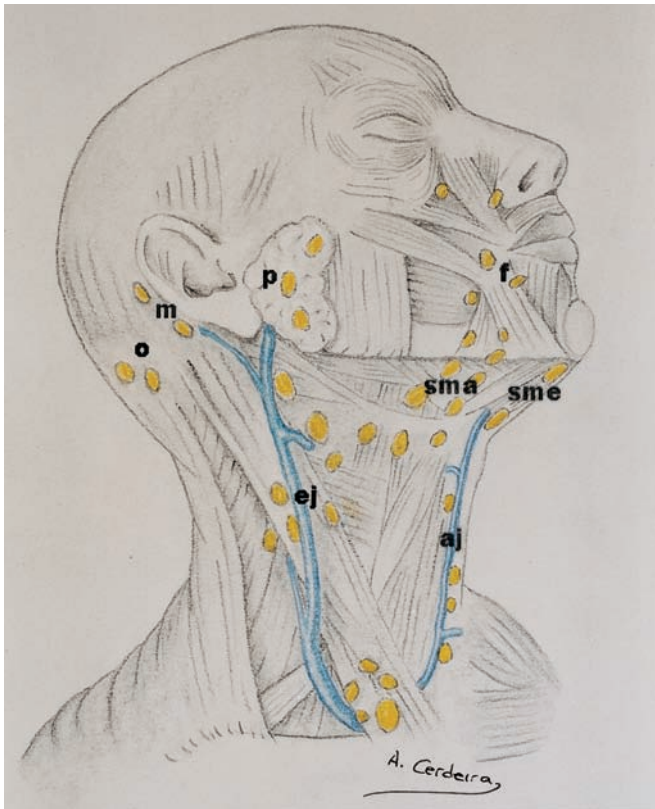


Figure 2-4 Superficial lymphatics of the neck. sme, submental; sma, submandibular; f, facial; ej, external jugular; aj, anterior jugular; o, occipital; m, mastoid; p, parotid.

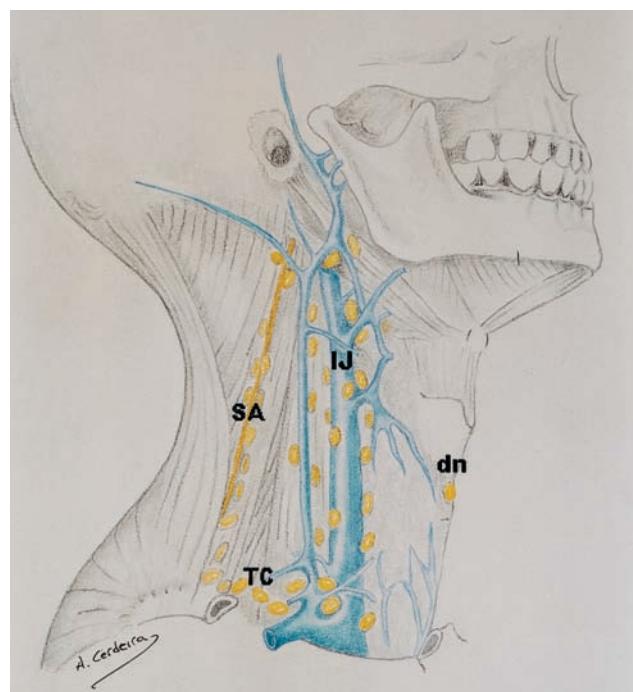


Figure 2-5 Deep lymphatics of the neck. IJ, internal jugular chain; SA, spinal accessory chain; TC, transverse cervical chain; dn, Delphian node.

At the intersection between the digastric muscle and the internal jugular vein there is a constant prominent node, known as the jugulodigastric or Küttner's node. It drains the base of the tongue and the palatine tonsil. Another prominent node, the juguloomohyoid or Poirier's node, is located farther down at the crossing of the omohyoid muscle with the internal jugular vein. It receives lymph flow coming from the tongue and submental region. The nodes of the lower part of the internal jugular chain are less constant and participate also in the drainage of noncervical adjacent structures.

For practical purposes, the internal jugular chain may be divided into an upper and a lower part, with the dividing line located at the crossing of the omohyoid muscle with the carotid sheath.

The *spinal accessory chain* follows the spinal accessory nerve in the upper part of the posterior triangle and merges with the transverse cervical chain beneath the trapezius muscle. It receives lymph from the occipital and mastoid areas.

The *transverse cervical chain* runs along the transverse cervical vessels. It receives efferent vessels from the spinal accessory chain and from the lateral part of the neck.

The *retropharyngeal nodes* are located at the lateral portion of the parapharyngeal space. They drain the nasal cavity, soft palate, paranasal sinuses, middle ear, nasopharynx, and oropharynx.

The *deep anterior chain* includes the prelaryngeal (Delphian) node, the pretracheal, and the paratracheal nodes. They drain the subglottis, the trachea, and the thyroid gland. This chain is connected with the internal jugular chain.

Major Lymph Ducts

Both, the superficial and the deep lymphatic system initially drain in the nearest lymph nodes and then proceed to more central nodes. At the base of the right side of the neck, the jugular trunk (which collects all the lymph from one side of the head and neck), the transverse cervical trunk, and the subclavian trunk frequently join to form the *right lymphatic duct*. This large collector courses along the medial border of the scalene muscle and empties into the venous system at the junction of the right internal jugular vein and the right subclavian vein.

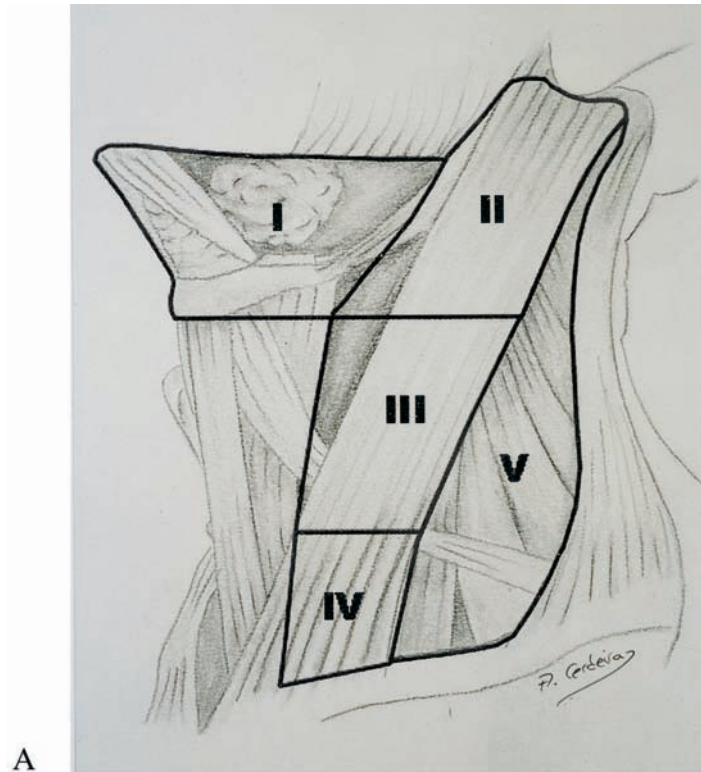
The *left thoracic duct* begins in the abdomen, passes through the thoracic region, and emerges in the root of the left side of the neck between the common carotid and subclavian arteries. It then arches above the subclavian artery and in front of the vertebral artery and thyrocervical trunk, to pass behind the carotid sheath between the internal jugular vein and the anterior scalene muscle. The thoracic duct empties laterally into the venous system at the junction of the left subclavian and internal jugular veins.

Lymph Node Distribution: Nodal Groups

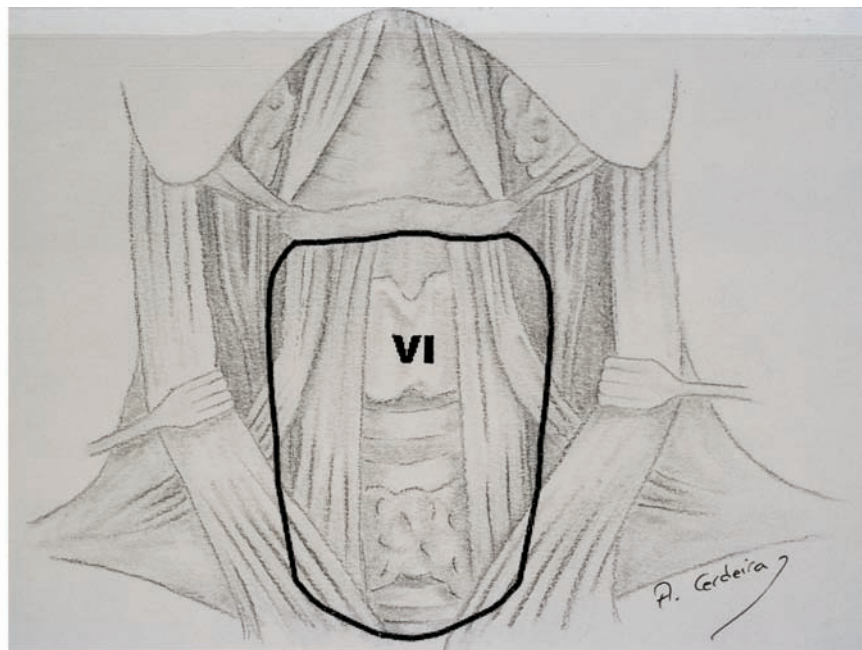
For practical reasons, the neck may be artificially divided into different lymph node regions. This does not mean that there is a true anatomical or physiological separation within the lymphatic system of the neck. Not only is there no physical separation within the lymphatic system of the neck, but a widespread interconnection exists between the different nodal chains, as already described. Thus, the regional lymph node classification should be regarded only as a schematic representation of the lymphatic system of the neck, and not as an anatomical transcription of the reality. As often happens in medicine, nature is much more complex than we would like it to be.

The most popular terminology for subdividing the lymph node groups was proposed in 1991 by the Committee for Head and Neck Surgery and Oncology of the American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery. This committee worked to define the anatomical boundaries of lymph node groups to offer fundamental principles for a classification of neck dissection procedures. The neck is divided into six different levels (Figs. 2-6A, 2-6B).

- *Level I: Submental and submandibular nodes.* This group includes the lymph nodes located within the submental triangle, bounded by the anterior belly of the digastric muscle and the hyoid bone. The submandibular group includes the lymph nodes located within the boundaries of



A



B

Figure 2-6 Regional division of the lymphatic system of the neck according to the classification of the American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery. (A) Lateral view. (B) Anterior view. Level I, submental and submandibular region; Level II, upper jugular region; Level III, middle jugular region; Level IV, lower jugular region; Level V, posterior triangle; Level VI, anterior compartment.

the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle, the stylohyoid muscle, and the body of the mandible. The submandibular gland, which is located within this cervical space, should be removed when this nodal group is included in the resection.

- *Level II: Upper jugular nodes.* This group contains the lymph nodes located around the upper third of the internal jugular vein and the spinal accessory nerve. It goes from the level of the skull base superiorly to the level of the inferior border of the hyoid bone and carotid bifurcation inferiorly. The posterior boundary is the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the anterior boundary is the lateral border of the sternohyoid and stylohyoid muscles.
- *Level III: Middle jugular nodes.* This group includes the lymph nodes located around the middle third of the internal jugular vein. The boundaries of this space are the inferior border of the hyoid bone and the carotid bifurcation superiorly, the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage and the junction of the omohyoid muscle with the internal jugular vein inferiorly, the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle posteriorly, and the lateral border of the sternohyoid muscle anteriorly.
- *Level IV: Lower jugular nodes.* This nodal group contains the lymphatic structures located around the lower third of the internal jugular vein. Its boundaries are the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage and the omohyoid muscle superiorly, the clavicle inferiorly, the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle posteriorly, and the lateral border of the sternohyoid muscle anteriorly.
- *Level V: Posterior triangle.* This group includes the lymph nodes located along the transverse cervical artery and lower half of the spinal accessory nerve as well as the supraclavicular lymph nodes. The boundaries are the anterior border of the trapezius muscle posteriorly, the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle anteriorly, the clavicle inferiorly, and the convergence of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles superiorly.
- *Level VI: Anterior compartment.* This level contains the pre- and paratracheal nodes, precricoid (Delphian) node, perithyroidal nodes, and the lymph nodes along the recurrent laryngeal nerves. The boundaries are the hyoid bone superiorly, the suprasternal notch inferiorly, and the carotid arteries laterally.
- *Level VII.* Some authors consider this an additional area. It includes the upper mediastinal lymph nodes located below the suprasternal notch.

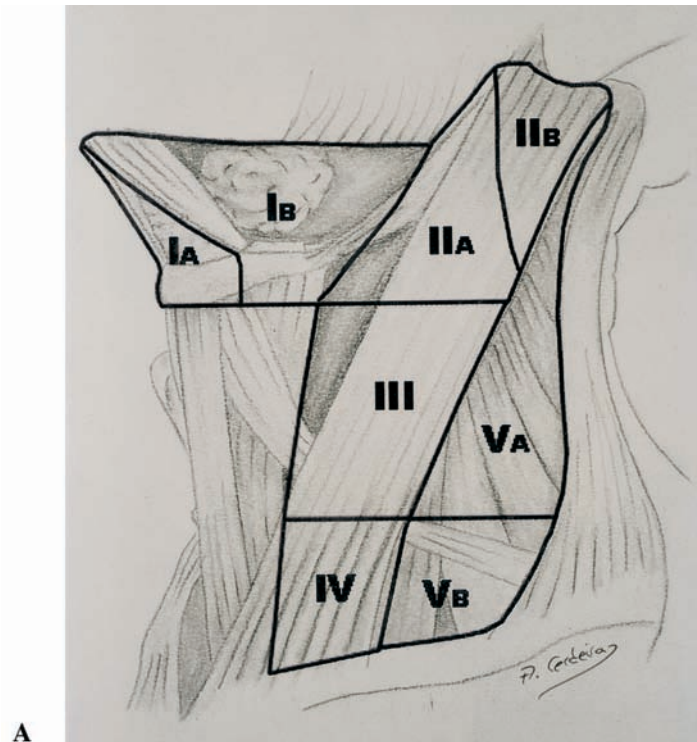
One of the main theoretical advantages of the nodal group classification is that every group of nodes may be related to different head and neck structures in order to assess the potential risk for metastasis for every primary location. However, the predictable lymph flow pattern that occurs under normal conditions may be modified by factors related to the tumor itself, the anatomical characteristics of the patient, and the influence of external factors such as previous treatment. Thus, reducing the field of dissection should be carefully planned according to the personal experience of the surgeon and the clinical features of the patient. Table 2-1 shows the relationship between the location of the primary tumor and the nodal groups at greatest risk for harboring metastases.

Division of Nodal Groups by Subzones

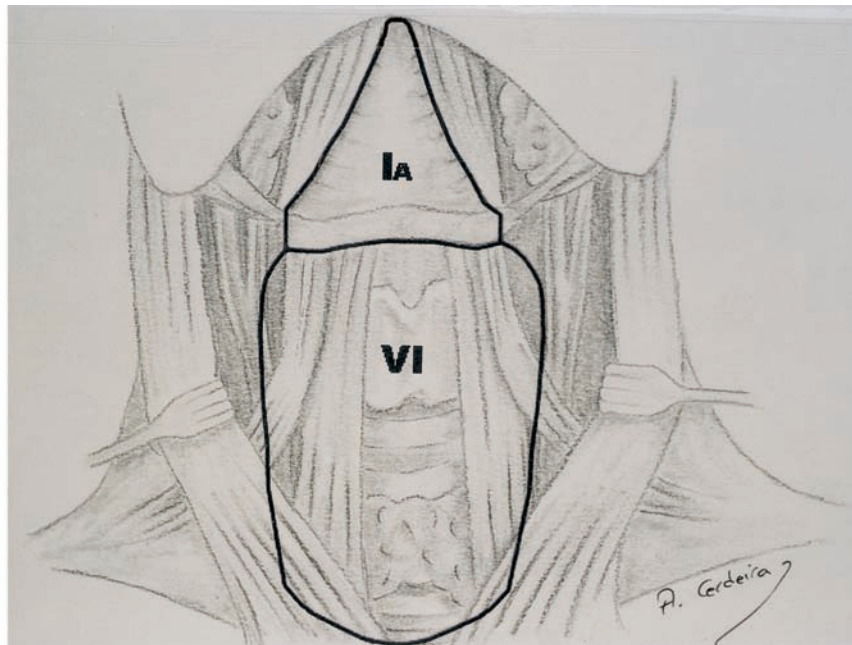
A new modification of the nodal group classification has been recently proposed. This update of the original classification includes a subzone separation for some of the original levels and uses anatomical structures depicted radiologically to define boundaries between various neck levels to accurately designate image-depicted nodes (Figs. 2-7A, 2-7B).

Level I is subdivided into

- IA: submental lymph nodes
- IB: submandibular lymph nodes



A



B

Figure 2-7 Division of nodal groups by subzones. (A) Lateral view. (B) Anterior view. IA, submental nodes; IB, submandibular nodes; IIA, upper jugular nodes anterior to the eleventh nerve; IIB, upper jugular nodes posterior to the eleventh nerve; VA, lymph nodes in the posterior triangle located above the level of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage; VB, lymph nodes in the posterior triangle located below the level of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage.

TABLE 2-1. Nodal Groups at Greatest Risk of Developing Metastases According to the Location of the Primary Tumor

Nodal Region	Location of the Primary Tumor
Area I: Submental nodes Submandibular nodes	Floor of mouth, anterior oral tongue, anterior mandibular alveolar ridge, lower lip Oral cavity, anterior nasal cavity, soft tissue structures of the midface, submandibular gland
Area II: Upper jugular nodes	Oral cavity, nasal cavity, nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, larynx, parotid gland
Area III: Middle jugular nodes	Oral cavity, nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, larynx
Area IV: Lower jugular nodes	Hypopharynx, larynx, cervical esophagus
Area V: Posterior triangle	Nasopharynx, oropharynx
Area VI: Anterior compartment	Thyroid gland, larynx (glottic and subglottic), apex of the piriform sinus, cervical esophagus
Area VII: Upper mediastinal group	Thyroid, larynx (glottic and subglottic), lung

Level II is subdivided into

- Level IIA: lymph nodes located anterior to the vertical plane defined by the spinal accessory nerve
- Level IIB: lymph nodes located posterior to the vertical plane defined by the spinal accessory nerve

Level V is subdivided into

- Level VA: lymph nodes located above the horizontal plane defined by the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. This subzone includes part of the lymph nodes of the spinal accessory chain.
- Level VB: lymph nodes located below the horizontal plane defined by the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage. This subzone includes the lymph nodes of the transverse cervical chain.

With this modification, each side of the neck actually has nine different lymphatic regions. Their combination with the various T and N stages results in a huge number of different possibilities, which seem impractical, at least, for teaching purposes.

A Final Comment on the Nodal Group Classification

The main use of the nodal group classification is to support the worthiness of selective neck dissections. However, the artificial nature of the division creates some inconsistencies that must be kept in mind to avoid falling into a “nodal group fundamentalism,” which often happens nowadays. In our opinion, the following are the main weak points of the artificial division of the neck into nodal regions.

1. There is a notorious lack of anatomical landmarks to identify most boundaries of the proposed regions. This makes it very difficult to compare results, even if we all use the same classification. This situation has been aggravated by the recent introduction of subzones whose boundaries are especially difficult to delineate at surgery and for pathological analysis. The well-defined theoretical, anatomical, and radiological boundaries of some of the various levels and subzones are distorted at surgery by the operative maneuvers. It is not unusual to decide to stop the dissection at a given point to find later that more tissue than desired has been removed because too much traction has been used during the dissection. On the other hand, even in the ideal situation, one person’s upper level IV lymph node may easily be

another's lower level III node. This is even more probable with the subzone division of the new classification.

2. Under normal conditions the lymph flow follows a rather predictable course that is used as an argument to support the oncological safety of selective dissections. However, head and neck cancer patients do not fully satisfy the criteria of "normal conditions," thus making selective neck dissections a controversial issue. Some operations have stood the test of time and can be considered positively safe from an oncological standpoint. Others still need documented proof of efficacy. Meanwhile, the use of selective operations should be cautiously recommended. Experience is the key factor to successful selective neck dissection.
3. Finally, the ultimate rationale for selective operations should not be sought on the nodal region subdivision, but on the functional concept. If selective neck dissections are useful—and for some of them this is a fact—it is because the functional concept is a reality. We can remove the lymphatic tissue from the neck without the need to remove adjacent cervical structures. The exact limits of this removal for every single head and neck tumor have not been determined with certainty and require further studies and well-designed investigations.

ANATOMICAL BASIS FOR FUNCTIONAL AND SELECTIVE NECK DISSECTION

Topographic Anatomy

The topographic description of the neck intends to serve as a guide in which the external and readily accessible superficial features of the neck provide essential landmarks for deep structures. This is a critical element in the examination and description of clinical findings.

From a topographic standpoint, the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the carotid sheath divide each side of the neck into two different spaces. Although pyramidal in shape, these spaces are known as the anterior and posterior triangles of the neck (Fig. 2-8). The posterolateral space has a cranial apex at the level of the mastoid and a base at the level of the clavicle. It does not have a definite anatomical boundary, because it merges into the axilla through the cervicoaxillary canal. The apex of the medial space is located at the bottom of the neck and its base lies at the level of the submandibular gland and tail of the parotid gland. These spaces contain the lymph nodes that drain most cervical structures.

Anterior Triangle

The anterior triangle is bounded by the anterior midline of the neck, the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the inferior border of the mandible. The jugular notch constitutes the apex, and the base is formed by the inferior border of the mandible. The posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the superior belly of the omohyoid further divide this space into several smaller triangles (i.e., submental, submandibular, carotid, and muscular) (Fig. 2-9).

The *submental triangle* is an unpaired space bounded on each side by the anterior belly of the digastric muscle, posteriorly by the body of the hyoid bone, and anteriorly by the inferior border of the mandible. The floor of the submental triangle is formed by the mylohyoid muscles, which meet in a median fibrous raphe. This space is occupied by fat and lymph nodes.

The *submandibular triangle* is limited on each side by the inferior border of the mandible and the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle. The muscular floor of the submandibular triangle is formed, from anterior to posterior, by the mylohyoid, hyoglossus, and middle constrictor of the pharynx. The mylohyoid muscle further divides it into supramylohyoid and

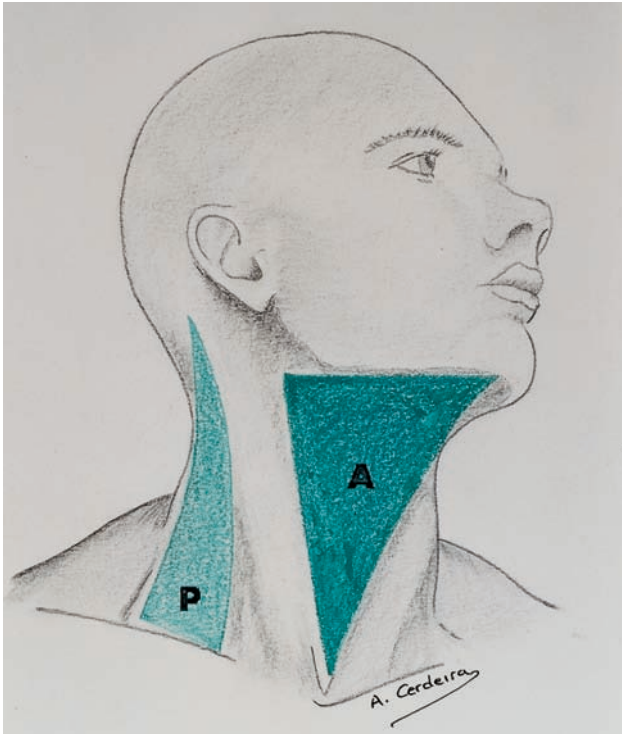


Figure 2-8 Main topographic division of the neck. A, anterior triangle; P, posterior triangle.

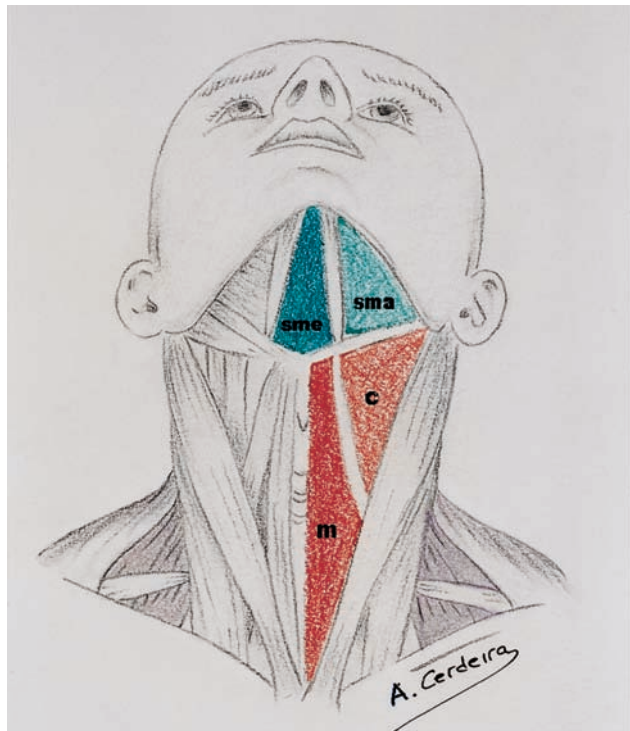


Figure 2-9 Topographic distribution of the anterior triangle of the neck. sme, submental triangle; sma, submandibular triangle; c, carotid triangle; m, muscular triangle.

inframylohyoid spaces. The supramylohyoid space contains the sublingual gland. The submandibular gland and a variable number of lymph nodes are contained within the inframylohyoid space. The lingual nerve, the hypoglossal nerve, part of the facial artery and vein, and the submental artery pass through this triangle.

The *carotid triangle* (also known as the superior carotid triangle) is bounded superiorly by the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, inferiorly by the superior belly of the omohyoid muscle, and posteriorly by the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The carotid triangle provides an important surgical approach to the carotid system. The common carotid artery divides into the internal and external branches at the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage. Many important structures, such as the common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, vagus nerve, and sympathetic trunk, lie within the limits of this space. The inferior part of the carotid triangle contains the common carotid artery medially, the internal jugular vein laterally, the vagus nerve posteriorly, and the ansa cervicalis. Many deep cervical lymph nodes lie along the internal jugular vein, and between the vein and the common carotid artery, within the carotid sheath.

The *muscular triangle* (or inferior carotid triangle) is bounded by the superior belly of the omohyoid muscle, the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the midline of the neck. It contains the strap muscles, the thyroid and parathyroid glands, the trachea, and the esophagus.

Posterior Triangle

The *posterior cervical triangle* is bounded anteriorly by the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, posteriorly by the anterior border of the trapezius, and inferiorly by the middle third of the clavicle. Its floor is formed, from superior to inferior, by the splenius capitis, levator scapulae, and medial and posterior scalene muscles. The inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle crosses the space dividing it into two smaller triangles (Fig. 2-10), the occipital triangle above and the omoclavicular or subclavian triangle below. The *occipital triangle* contains the spinal accessory nerve and part of the cervical and brachial plexuses. The occipital artery crosses the upper part of this triangle. The *omoclavicular triangle* corresponds to the supraclavicular fossa.

Surgical Anatomy

This section describes, in an orderly fashion, the anatomical structures found by the surgeon in the course of functional and selective neck dissection.

The Skin

The vascular supply of the skin of the neck is provided by descending branches of the facial, submental, and occipital arteries and by ascending branches of the transverse cervical and suprascapular arteries.

The surgeon must take into consideration the blood supply of the skin when planning the incision. Access to the primary tumor and incisions for lymph node dissection should be designed to avoid skin complications. Every effort should be made to design a skin incision that crosses the carotid artery only once on each side, with the crossing point located as far as possible from the carotid artery bifurcation. Whenever possible, incision trifurcations should be avoided.

Platysma Muscle

The *platysma* is a wide, thin sheet of muscle located in the anterolateral aspect of the neck, immediately below the skin and over the superficial layer of the deep fascia (Fig. 2-11). It runs obliquely from the skin and fascia of the pectoralis and deltoid muscle to the lower border of the mandible and skin of the lower face. The platysma muscle is innervated by the cervical branch of

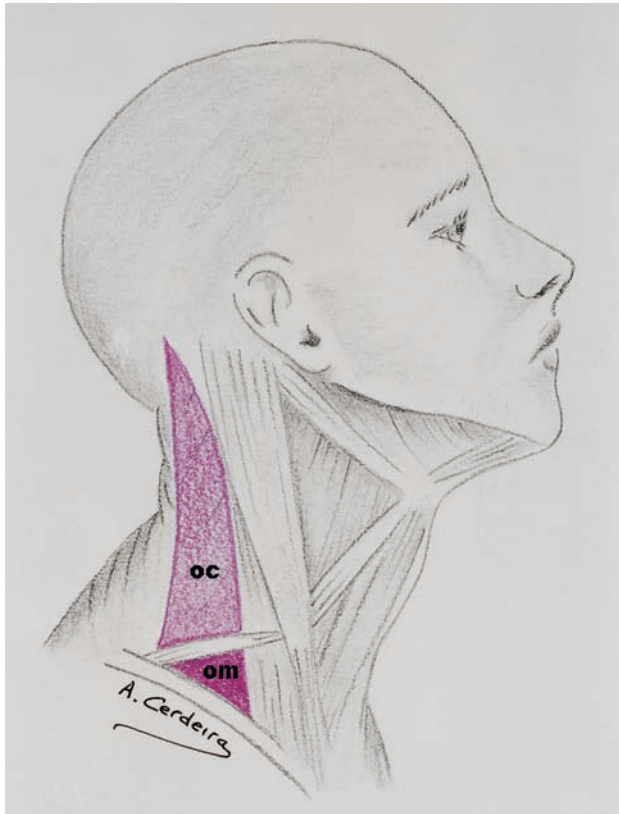


Figure 2-10 Topographic distribution of the posterior triangle of the neck. oc, occipital triangle; om, omoclavicular triangle.

the facial nerve; thus, preservation of this nerve should be attempted to prevent the skin from falling away in slack folds.

Raising the skin flap between the platysma muscle and the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia, on which it rests, allows the identification of the following anatomical structures: external and anterior jugular vein, great auricular nerve, and marginal branch of the facial nerve.

External Jugular Vein

The external jugular vein begins near the angle of the mandible, within the parotid gland, by the union of the posterior division of the retromandibular vein (posterior facial vein) with the posterior auricular vein (Fig. 2-12). It then runs obliquely across the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in the superficial layer of the cervical fascia, accompanied by the great auricular nerve in its upper half. The vein pierces the deep fascial layer at the posterior border of the muscle, about 5 cm above the clavicle. It usually terminates in the subclavian vein, but it may also end in the internal jugular vein. It may be double or have a bifid termination. Sometimes the external jugular vein is very small and may even be absent. In these cases the anterior jugular vein, the internal jugular vein, or both, are usually enlarged. Tributaries and communicating branches to the external jugular vein include the posterior auricular, occipital, posterior external jugular, transverse cervical, suprascapular, and anterior jugular veins.

Anterior Jugular Vein

The anterior jugular vein begins below the chin and communicates with the submental, mental, inferior labial, and hyoid veins (Fig. 2-13). It descends near the midline, within the superficial fascia. Just above the clavicle it turns laterally, piercing the superficial layer, where it passes deep to

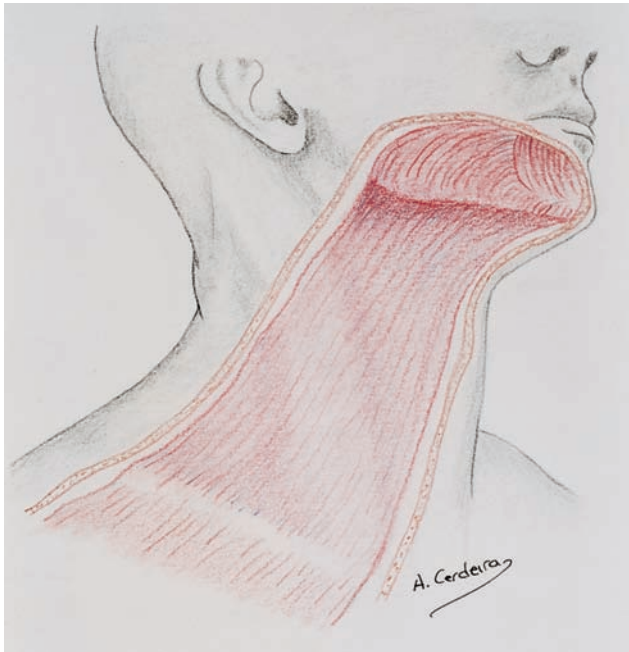


Figure 2-11 Platysma muscle.

the sternocleidomastoid muscle and opens into the external jugular vein just before its junction with the subclavian vein. As it turns laterally, the anterior jugular vein sends a branch across the midline to join the anterior jugular vein of the opposite side, forming the jugular venous arch.

Strap Muscles

The strap muscles, also known as infrahyoid muscles, lie beneath the superficial layer of the cervical fascia (Fig. 2-14). Their function is primarily related to the stability of the hyoid bone and

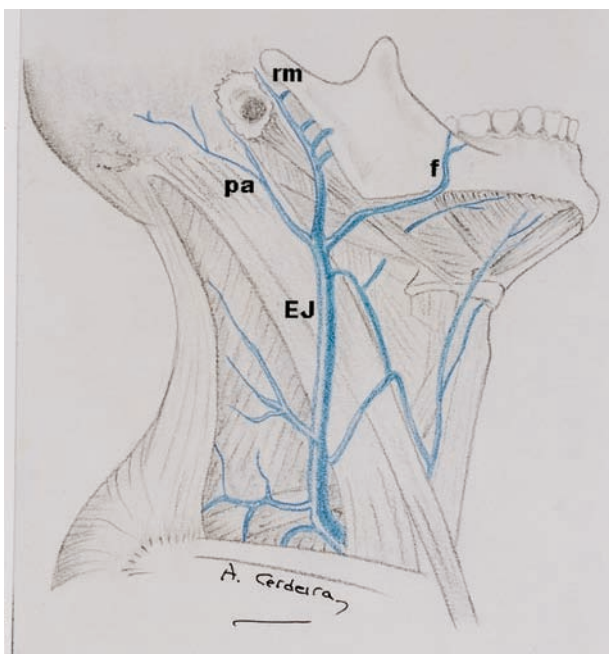


Figure 2-12 External jugular vein. rm, retromandibular or posterior facial vein; pa, posterior auricular vein; f, facial vein; EJ, external jugular vein.

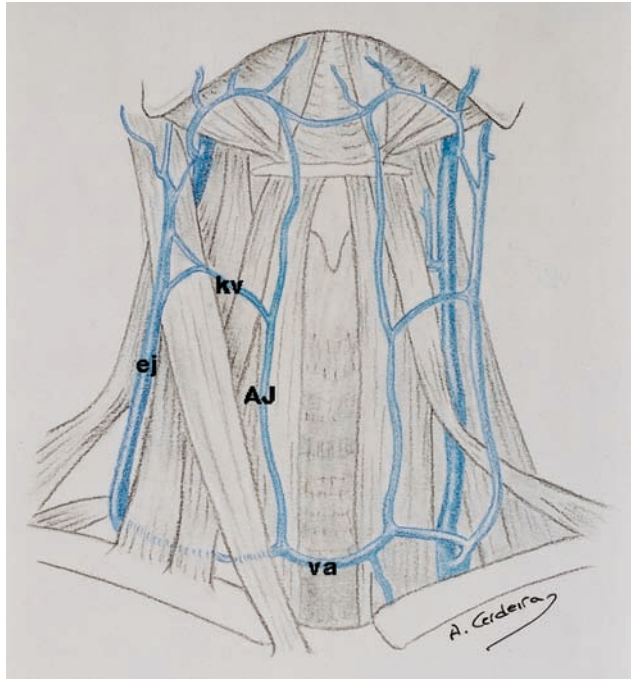


Figure 2-13 Superficial venous system of the neck. AJ, anterior jugular vein; ej, external jugular vein; va, jugular venous arch; kv, communicating vein (Kocher's vein).

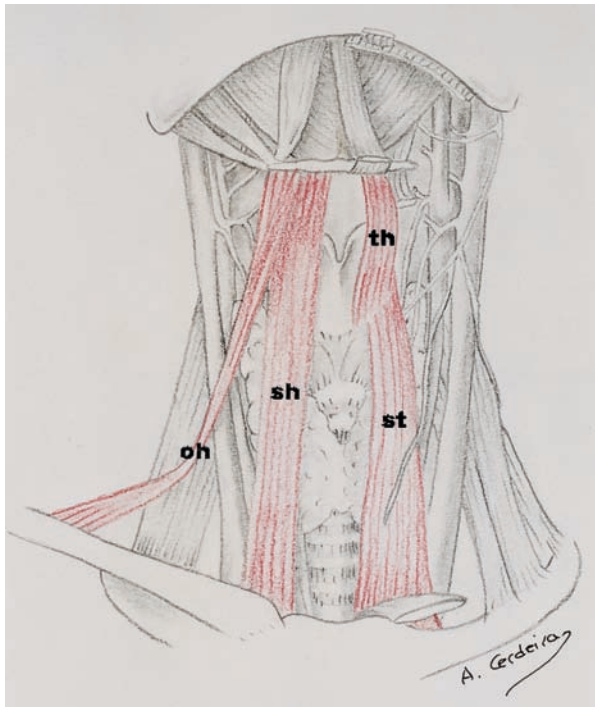


Figure 2-14 Strap muscles. sh, sternohyoid muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle; st, sternothyroid muscle; th, thyrohyoid muscle.

larynx during swallowing and speaking. They are innervated by cervical nerve fibers that join the hypoglossal nerve to reach the muscles by means of the *ansa cervicalis*.

The *sternohyoid muscle* is the most superficial and medial of the strap muscles. It originates in the body of the hyoid bone and attaches inferiorly to the manubrium of the sternum and medial end of the clavicle.

The *omohyoid muscle* extends between the hyoid bone and the superior margin of the scapula, near the transverse ligament of the scapula. It has two bellies united by an intermediate tendon located beneath the sternocleidomastoid muscle. This tendon is held in place by a strong portion of the pretracheal layer of the cervical fascia, which binds it to the posterior surface of the clavicle. The inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle is partly covered by the trapezius and crosses the scalene muscles, brachial plexus, internal jugular vein, carotid artery, sternothyroid, and thyrohyoid muscles. The superior belly of the omohyoid ascends posterolateral to the sternohyoid muscle, running parallel to it in the last part.

The *sternothyroid muscle* takes its origin from the dorsal surface of the manubrium and inserts by short tendinous fibers into the oblique line on the lamina of the thyroid cartilage. It lies superficial to the brachiocephalic vein, the trachea, and the thyroid gland.

The *thyrohyoid muscle* continues the sternothyroid muscle superiorly. It is largely covered by the omohyoid and sternohyoid muscles. It takes its origin from the oblique line on the lamina of the thyroid cartilage and inserts into the inferior margin of the lateral third of the body of the hyoid bone.

Cervical Plexus: Superficial Branches

The cervical plexus is a neural network formed by the communications between the ventral rami of the superior four cervical nerves, which form loops with one another. It has both deep and superficial branches.

The superficial cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus emerge around the midportion of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Erb's point) to supply the skin of the neck and scalp between the auricle and the external occipital protuberance (Fig. 2-15). These superficial branches diverge into ascending, descending, and transverse ramifications.

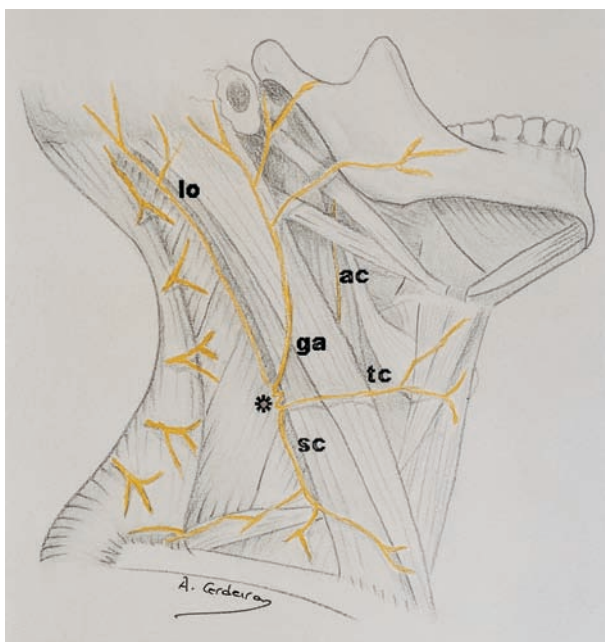


Figure 2-15 Superficial branches of the cervical plexus. lo, lesser occipital nerve; ga, great auricular nerve; tc, transverse cervical nerve; sc, supraclavicular nerve; ac, Superior root of the ansa cervicalis (descendens hypoglossi); *, Erb's point.

The ascending branches include the lesser occipital nerve (C1, C3) and the great auricular nerve (C2, C3). The *lesser occipital nerve* ascends along the posterior margin of the sternocleidomastoid muscle to the mastoid process. It divides into auricular, mastoid, and occipital terminal branches, to provide sensory innervation to these areas. The *great auricular nerve* crosses at a point superficial to the sternocleidomastoid muscle and passes toward the angle of the mandible, dividing into mastoid, auricular, and facial terminal branches.

The *transverse cervical nerve* (C2, C3) passes transversely across the sternocleidomastoid muscle and divides into superior and inferior terminal twigs for the skin of the neck.

The *supraclavicular nerve* (C3, C4) constitutes the main descending branch of the cervical plexus. It arises as a single trunk and divides into medial, intermediate, and lateral branches, supplying the skin over the anterior aspect of the chest and shoulder. The medial and lateral supraclavicular nerves also supply the sternoclavicular and acromioclavicular joints, respectively.

The *ansa cervicalis* is part of the cervical plexus. It is formed by the union of the descendens hypoglossi, also known as superior ramus of the cervical loop, and the inferior ramus of the cervical loop. The superior ramus of the cervical loop is formed by the union of the ventral rami of the first and second cervical nerves. This nerve travels for some time in the sheath of the hypoglossal nerve. This is the reason why it was called the descendens hypoglossi, but none of the fibers are derived from the hypoglossal nucleus. It arises as the hypoglossal nerve crosses the internal carotid artery and runs inferiorly to join the inferior ramus of the cervical loop. The inferior ramus comes from the loop of the ventral rami of the second and third cranial nerves. The superior and inferior rami interlace to form the *ansa cervicalis*. The *ansa cervicalis* may be found between the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the common carotid artery, superficial to the internal jugular vein.

Marginal Mandibular Branch of the Facial Nerve

This thin branch of the facial nerve provides motion to the lower lip and chin. A precise knowledge of its location is fundamental during functional and selective neck dissection because it runs parallel to the superior border of the surgical field. The nerve courses deep to the superficial layer of the cervical fascia, but superficial to the adventitia of the anterior facial vein (Fig. 2-16). This is an important key to help preservation of the nerve at surgery.

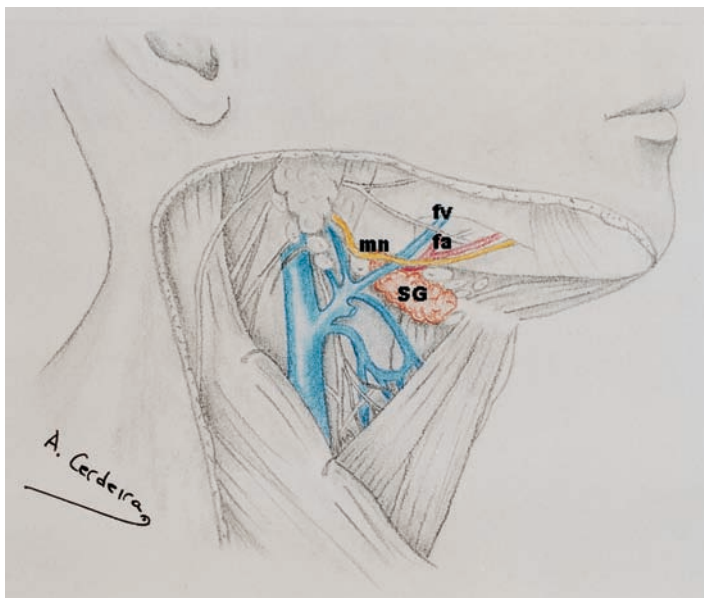


Figure 2-16 Anatomic relations of the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve. mn, marginal nerve; fv, anterior facial vein; fa, facial artery; SG, submandibular gland.

Sternocleidomastoid Muscle

The sternocleidomastoid muscle is a broad straplike muscle that remains covered by the superficial layer of the deep fascia. The sternocleidomastoid muscle is a key reference in neck surgery. It runs superolaterally from the sternum and clavicle to the lateral surface of the mastoid process (Fig. 2-17), covering the great vessels of the neck and the deep branches of the cervical plexus. The superior end attaches to the lateral surface of the mastoid process, the temporal bone, and the lateral half of the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone. The inferior end has two different heads. The sternal head attaches to the anterior surface of the manubrium of the sternum, lateral to the jugular notch. The clavicular head attaches to the superior surface of the medial third of the clavicle. The sternocleidomastoid muscle is innervated by the spinal accessory nerve and branches of the second and third cervical nerves.

The posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the anterior border of the trapezius muscle, and the clavicle define a triangular area known as the posterior triangle of the neck. The need to include this area in the resection is one of the main subjects of controversy in functional and selective neck dissection.

Posterior Triangle of the Neck

The posterior triangle of the neck is bounded by the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the anterior border of the trapezius, and the middle third of the clavicle (Fig. 2-18).

The deep muscular floor of the posterior triangle is formed (superior to inferior) by the splenius capitis, the levator scapulae muscle, and the scalene muscles, covered by the prevertebral part of the deep cervical fascia.

The *splenius capitis* muscle forms the upper portion of the floor of the posterior triangle. It has its origin in the inferior half of the ligamentum nuchae and spinous processes of the upper six thoracic vertebrae and goes to the lateral aspect of the mastoid and lateral third of the superior nuchal line. It is innervated by dorsal rami of the inferior cervical nerves.

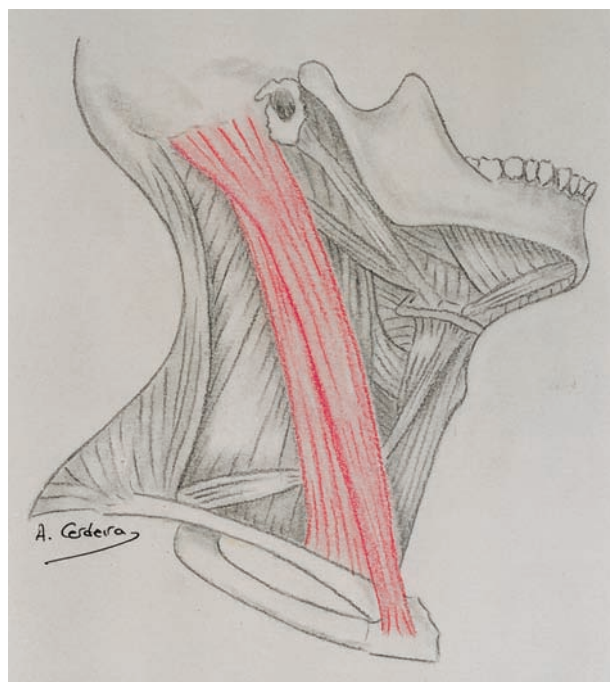


Figure 2-17 Sternocleidomastoid muscle.

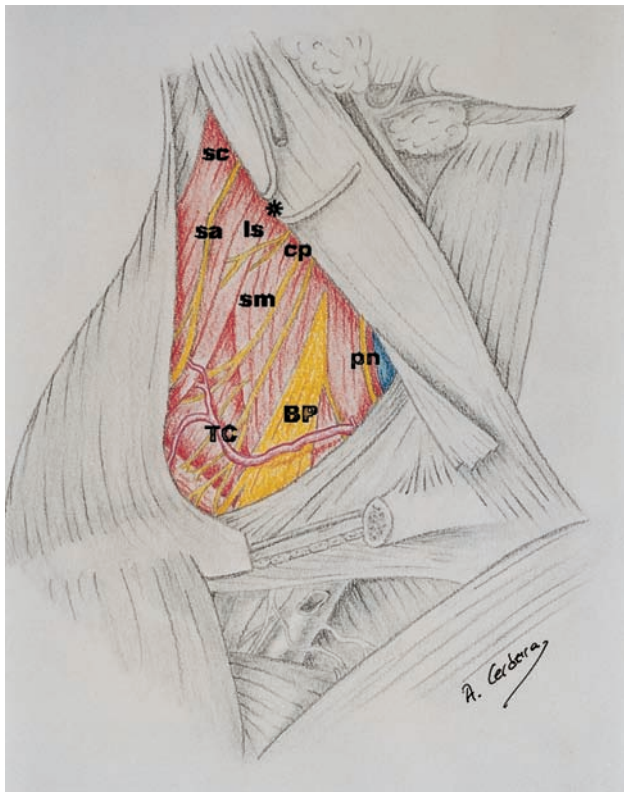


Figure 2-18 Contents and boundaries of the posterior triangle of the neck. sc, splenius capitis muscle; ls, levator scapulae muscle; sm, scalene muscles; sa, spinal accessory nerve; cp, deep branches of the cervical plexus; BP, brachial plexus; pn, phrenic nerve; TC, transverse cervical artery; *, Erb's point.

The *levator scapulae* muscle arises from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of C1 and C4, and goes to the superior part of the medial border of the scapula. It runs medial and inferior to the splenius capitis. Between both muscles there is a “step” that may be identified during the dissection of the posterior triangle of the neck. The levator scapulae muscle is innervated by the dorsal scapular (C5) and cervical spinal (C3 and C4) nerves.

The *scalene muscles* constitute a triangular block that extends between the first two ribs and the transverse processes of the cervical vertebrae (Fig. 2-19). The scalene group is formed by three different muscles: the anterior, medial, and posterior scalene muscles.

The *anterior scalene* muscle arises from the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae and inserts into the scalene tubercle on the upper surface of the body of the first rib.

The *medial scalene* muscle arises from the lateral edge of the costotransverse lamellae of the lower five cervical vertebrae and, like the anterior scalene, goes to the upper surface of the first rib behind the subclavian groove. The lower insertion usually extends to the second rib. It is innervated by the ventral rami of the fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth cervical nerves and lies posterior to the ventral roots of the brachial plexus and the third part of the subclavian artery.

The *posterior scalene* muscle is the smallest and most deeply situated of the three scalene muscles. It arises by short tendons from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae but may have its origin as high as the fourth vertebra or as low as the seventh. It is inserted by a short tendon into the lateral surface of the second rib or, occasionally, into the third rib.

The spinal accessory nerve, the internal jugular vein, and the occipital artery are the most important anatomical landmarks in the upper part of the posterior triangle. The deep branches of the cervical plexus run over the muscular floor of the posterior triangle, deep to the internal jugular vein and sternocleidomastoid muscle.

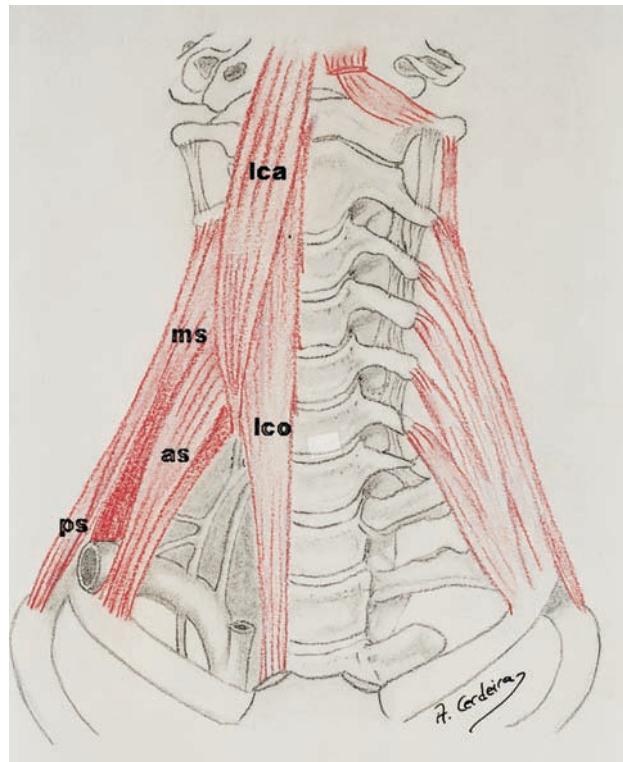


Figure 2-19 Anterior view of the deep muscles of the neck. as, anterior scalene muscle; ms, middle scalene muscle; ps, posterior scalene muscle; lca, longus capitis muscle; lco, longus colli muscle.

Spinal Accessory Nerve

The eleventh cranial nerve is called the spinal accessory nerve because of its dual origin, for it has a cranial root and a spinal root. It is exclusively motor.

The spinal or inferior root emerges from the lateral aspect of the spinal cord dorsal to the denticulate ligament. As the fibers emerge, they unite to form an ascending strand, which enters the posterior cranial fossa through the foramen magnum. The strand turns laterally and unites with the cranial part to exit the cranial cavity through the jugular foramen. The fibers in the cranial or superior root unite, and pass laterally in the posterior cranial fossa to form a part of the nerve that pierces the dura mater and enters the jugular foramen.

The *superior branch*, which contains the fibers of the cranial root, joins the vagus nerve, and the fibers are distributed with the branches of that nerve. The *inferior branch*, which contains the fibers of the spinal root, runs dorsally and distally covered by the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the sternocleidomastoid muscle. It crosses to the lateral side of the internal jugular vein and then anterior or posterior to the occipital artery. The nerve has been found to cross anterior to the jugular vein in approximately two thirds of the cases. The point where the nerve crosses the jugular vein can be identified by locating the transverse process of the atlas. After crossing the internal jugular vein, the accessory nerve descends obliquely downward and backward to the upper part of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. It gives off a branch into the deep surface of this muscle and passes downward and backward, either deep to the sternocleidomastoid or through it, to course across the posterior triangle. The nerve leaves the sternocleidomastoid muscle above Erb's point, where the superficial branches of the cervical plexus turn around the posterior border of the muscle (Fig. 2-18). In the posterior triangle the nerve runs a superficial course reaching the anterior border of the trapezius 2 cm above the clavicle.

Phrenic Nerve

The phrenic nerve is an important muscular—deep—branch of the cervical plexus (Fig. 2-20) and constitutes the sole motor nerve supply to the diaphragm. It arises mainly from the ventral primary rami of C4, but it has some fibers from C3 and C5. The nerve curves around the lateral border of the anterior scalene muscle and descends obliquely across the anterior surface of the muscle (Fig. 2-18), deep to the transverse cervical and supraclavicular arteries. At the root of the neck the phrenic nerve passes off the anterior border of the anterior scalene muscle and descends anterior to the first part of the subclavian artery and the pleura immediately below that artery.

Brachial Plexus

The brachial plexus is formed by the ventral primary rami of C5 to T1 and provides neural supply to the upper limb.

In the posterior triangle of the neck, the *brachial plexus* runs anterior to the medial scalene and first digitation of the anterior serratus muscles (Fig. 2-18). It is covered by the skin and superficial fascia, the platysma, the supraclavicular nerves, the fibrofatty tissue of the supraclavicular fossa, and the deep cervical fascia. The nerve branches of the brachial plexus are crossed by the lower part of the external jugular vein, the nerve to the subclavius muscle, the transverse cervical vein, the suprascapular vein, the posterior belly of the omohyoid muscle, and the transverse cervical artery. At the root of the neck, the brachial plexus lies posterior to the clavicle, whereas the subclavius muscle and the suprascapular artery cross anterior to the plexus.

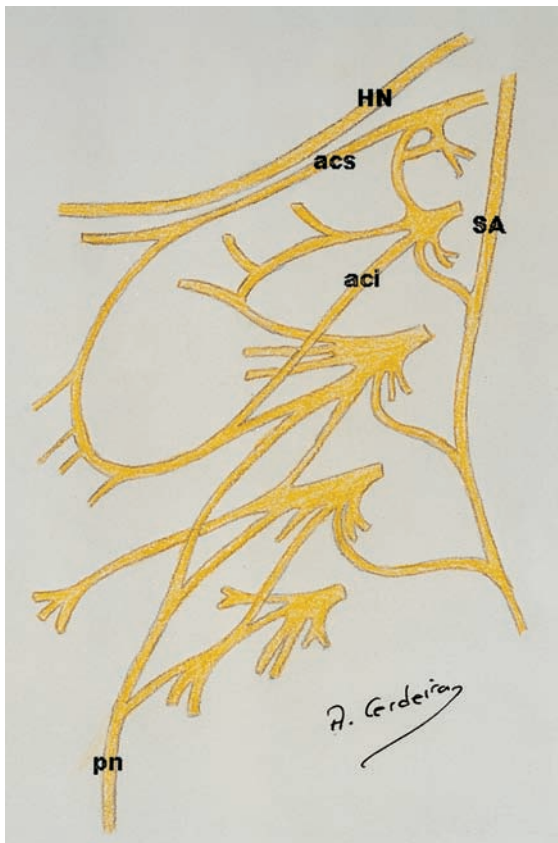


Figure 2-20 Schematic representation of the deep branches of the left cervical plexus. HN, hypoglossal nerve; acs, superior root of the ansa cervicalis; aci, inferior root of the ansa cervicalis; pn, phrenic nerve; SA, spinal accessory nerve.

Submandibular Triangle

The submandibular triangle is located at the upper boundary of the surgical field, with the submandibular gland almost entirely filling its space. The floor of this triangle is formed by the suprahyoid muscles. The hypoglossal and lingual nerves, as well as the lingual vessels, traverse the submandibular triangle and must be identified at surgery.

Muscles *Mylohyoid muscle* (Fig. 2-21): This thin triangular muscle originates from the mylohyoid ridge of the mandible and inserts into a median raphe extending from the middle of the anterior surface of the hyoid bone to the posterior aspect of the inferior margin of the mandible. It is covered partially by the submandibular gland, anterior belly of the digastric muscle, and superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia. The submental artery crosses the muscle. It is innervated by the mylohyoid nerve, a branch of the inferior alveolar nerve. The mylohyoid muscle elevates the hyoid bone, the floor of the mouth, and the tongue during swallowing and speaking.

Geniohyoid muscle: This short and narrow muscle is located superior to the mylohyoid. It has its origin at the mental spine of the mandible and inserts into the anterior surface of the body of the hyoid bone, where it contacts with the contralateral muscle. It is innervated by the first cervical nerve and pulls the hyoid anterosuperiorly, shortening the floor of the mouth and widening the pharynx.

Stylohyoid muscle (Fig. 2-21): This muscle takes its origin from the styloid process of the temporal bone and divides into two slips, which pass on either side of the digastric tendon to attach to the body of the hyoid. It is innervated by a branch of the facial nerve leaving the main trunk as it emerges from the stylomastoid foramen. The stylohyoid muscle elevates and retracts the hyoid bone, elongating the floor of the mouth.

Digastric muscle (Fig. 2-21): This muscle has two bellies united by an intermediate tendon, which is connected to the body and greater horn of the hyoid bone by a strong loop of fibrous connective tissue. The posterior belly arises by a tendinous process from the mastoid notch of the temporal bone. The fiber bundles form a ribbonlike belly that converges on the intermediate tendon a short distance above the hyoid bone. The posterior belly lies medial to the mastoid and sternocleidomastoid muscle, and lateral to the internal jugular vein, internal carotid artery, and the last three

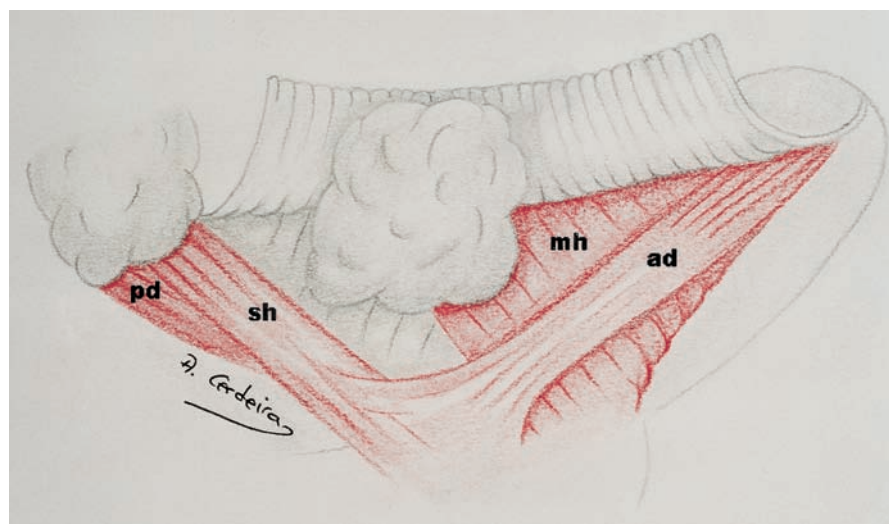


Figure 2-21 Muscles of the submandibular triangle. mh, mylohyoid muscle; sh, stylohyoid muscle; ad, anterior belly of the digastric muscle; pd, posterior belly of the digastric muscle.

cranial nerves. It is innervated by a branch of the facial nerve given off at the stylomastoid foramen. The intermediate tendon lies deep to the inferior lobe of the submandibular gland and superficial to the hyoglossus and mylohyoid muscles. The anterior belly arises by a short tendinous process from the digastric fossa at the mandible. The fibers converge on both surfaces of the flattened anterior end of the intermediate tendon. The anterior belly lies on the mylohyoid muscles and is covered by the superficial fascia and the platysma muscle. It is innervated by a branch of the mandibular nerve.

Nerves The *hypoglossal nerve* crosses the submandibular triangle to provide motor innervation for all the muscles of the tongue except the palatoglossus. After leaving the cranial cavity through the hypoglossal canal, the trunk of the nerve emerges between the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein, medial to the vagus nerve (Fig. 2-22). Before reaching the muscles of the tongue, the nerve is usually crossed by one or more lingual veins that may be a source of troublesome bleeding at surgery. On its way to the tongue, the hypoglossal nerve disappears between the genioglossus and mylohyoid muscles.

The *lingual nerve* is the smallest terminal branch of the posterior division of the V3. It provides general sensory fibers to the anterior two thirds of the tongue, the floor of the mouth, and the gingiva of the mandibular teeth. At first it descends on the medial side of the lateral pterygoid muscle, to pass between the medial pterygoid muscle and the ramus of the mandible toward the posterior part of the mylohyoid line. At this point it is situated a short distance posterior to the last molar tooth and is covered by the mucous membrane of the oral cavity. After leaving the medial pterygoid muscle, it crosses the lateral superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx and turns toward the tip of the tongue, crossing the lateral surface of the styloglossus, hyoglossus, and genioglossus muscles. As it crosses the hyoglossus muscle, it first lies superior to, then to the lateral side of, and finally inferior to the duct of the submandibular gland (Fig. 2-23). As it ascends on the genioglossus muscle it lies on the medial side of the duct.

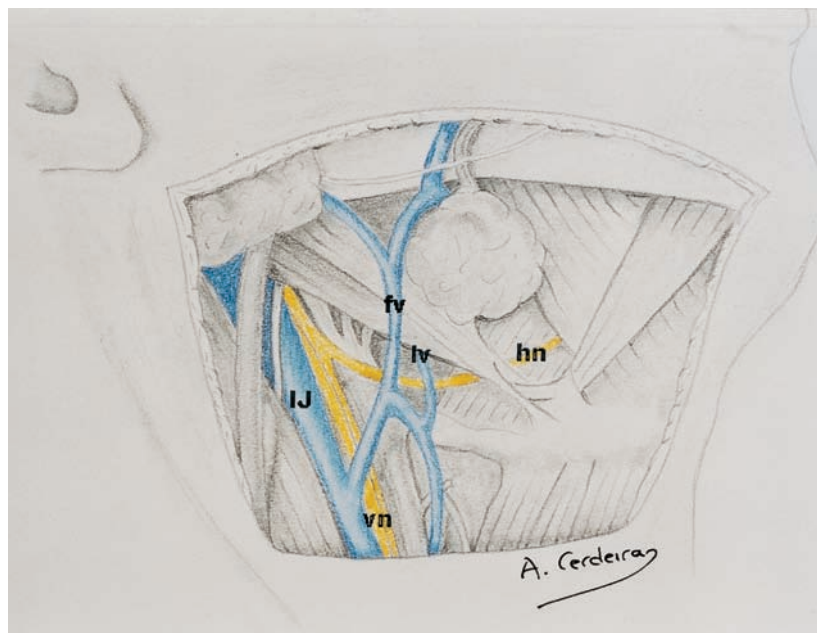


Figure 2-22 Anatomic relations of the hypoglossal nerve in the submandibular triangle. hn, hypoglossal nerve; vn, vagus nerve; IJ, internal jugular vein; fv, facial vein; lv, lingual vein.

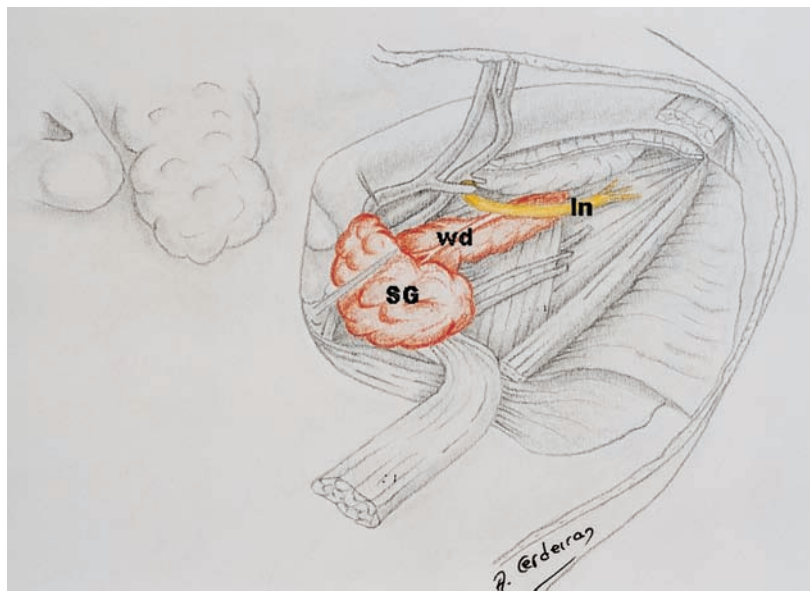


Figure 2-23 Anatomic relations of the lingual nerve in the submandibular triangle. In, lingual nerve; SG, submandibular gland; wd, Wharton's duct.

As the nerve lies on the medial side of the lateral pterygoid muscle, it is joined at an acute angle by the chorda tympani nerve. Between the ramus of the mandible and the medial pterygoid muscle, the lingual nerve gives off two small branches to the palatine tonsil and to the adjacent mucous membrane of the mouth. Superior to the submandibular duct the nerve gives off branches to the submandibular ganglion and a branch to the sublingual gland.

Vessels The *lingual artery* is the second branch of the external carotid artery, arising at the level of the greater horn of the hyoid bone, below or covered by the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the angle of the mandible. From here it runs forward or curves upward, giving off branches to the base of the tongue. It enters the tongue above the hyoid bone, deep to the hyoglossus muscle and hypoglossal nerve. At the tip of the tongue the terminal part of the lingual artery, called the deep lingual artery, forms an anastomotic loop with the contralateral artery. The sublingual artery arises from the lingual artery at the anterior border of the hyoglossus muscle. It runs anterosuperiorly to supply the sublingual gland and the adjacent muscles.

The *lingual vein* begins near the tip of the tongue, where it accompanies the deep lingual artery. It first lies beneath the mucous membrane covering the lower surface of the tongue. Then, it courses with the lingual artery deep to the hyoglossus muscle. In the vicinity of the posterior border of this muscle it receives the dorsal lingual veins coming from the dorsum of the tongue, pharyngeal wall, and palatine tonsils. At the posterior border of the hyoglossus muscle the lingual vein is joined by the accompanying veins of the hypoglossal nerve.

Submandibular Gland

The submandibular gland has a superficial part and a small deep lobe. The superficial portion is variable in size and may be palpated at the floor of the mouth by applying pressure from the outside. The deep lobe is located internal to the mylohyoid muscle.

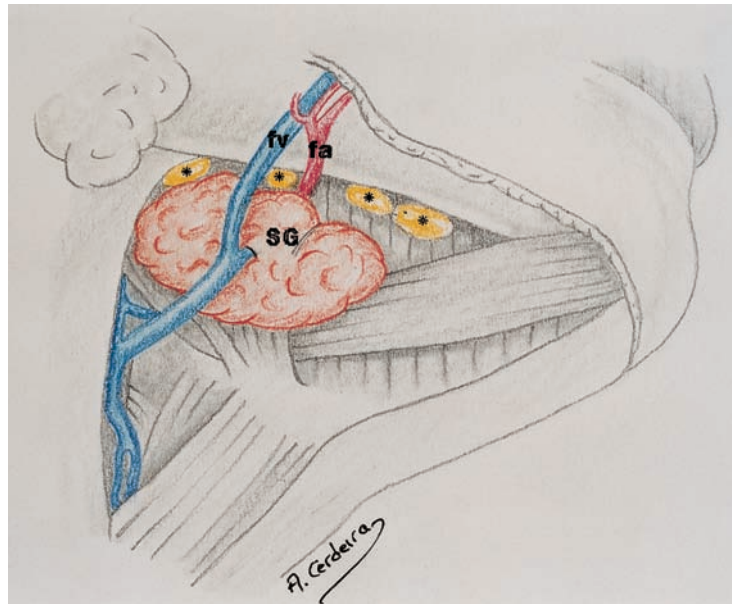


Figure 2-24 Lymph nodes in the submandibular triangle. fv, facial vein; fa, facial artery; SG, submandibular gland; *, lymph nodes.

The superficial layer of the cervical fascia surrounds the gland, serving as a capsule. This capsule is crossed by the facial vein and the mandibular branch of the facial nerve (Fig. 2-16). Several lymph nodes draining the anterior facial region lie upon or are embedded in this capsule (Fig. 2-24). The lateral surface of the gland is in contact with the submandibular fovea of the medial surface of the mandible and with the caudal part of the medial pterygoid muscle. The dorsal part of the gland is deeply grooved by the facial artery, and it is separated from the parotid gland by the stylomandibular ligament. The deep lobe is in contact anteriorly with the superficial surface of the mylohyoid muscle and, posterior to this, with the hyoglossus, stylohyoid, and posterior belly of the digastric muscle. The mylohyoid nerve and artery as well as the submental artery lie between the gland and the mylohyoid muscle. The hypoglossal nerve, the lingual vein, and the first part of the lingual artery are closely related to the submandibular gland.

The deep portion of the gland is a tongue-like extension that passes around the posterior border of the mylohyoid muscle and extends anteriorly along with the submandibular duct. This glandular prolongation is located internal to the mylohyoid muscle and related medially with the hyoglossus and genioglossus muscles. At first, the deep process lies just caudal to the lingual nerve and submandibular ganglion, and it often extends as far as the sublingual gland.

Inferior and posterior to the submandibular region, the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia fuses with the fascia of the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid muscles and attaches to the hyoid bone. As it bridges the submandibular triangle and passes to the mandible, it splits into two laminae to enclose the submandibular gland, forming its sheath. These laminae attach to the mandible at the margins of the submandibular fovea. Posteriorly, the submandibular space is adjacent to that of the parotid gland, the fascial thickening between them being the stylomandibular ligament. Lymph nodes can be found on and around the gland. Their involvement by metastatic cancer depends on the location of the primary tumor. As a general rule, the submandibular triangle should be included in the dissection when the primary lesion is located on the anterior portion of the tongue, the floor of the mouth, the lower lip, the tonsil, and the lower anterior portion of the gingiva.

Carotid Sheath

The structures surrounded by the carotid sheath constitute important anatomical landmarks for functional and selective neck dissection. Precise knowledge of the anatomy of the internal jugular vein, carotid artery and its branches, and vagus nerve is crucial for a successful surgery. The sympathetic trunk, which is closely related to the carotid sheath, may also appear in the surgical field.

Internal Jugular Vein The internal jugular vein is usually the largest vein in the neck and drains the brain and the superficial parts of the face and neck (Fig. 2-25). It begins at the jugular fossa as the continuation of the sigmoid sinus. The internal jugular vein on the right side of the neck is usually larger because of the greater volume of blood entering from the superior sagittal sinus through the sigmoid sinus.

At first, the internal jugular vein lies in front of the rectus capitis muscle and posterolateral to the internal carotid artery, from which it is separated by the carotid plexus of the sympathetic trunk as well as by the hypoglossal, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves. As it descends, it passes gradually to the lateral side of the internal carotid artery and retains this relation as far as the superior border of the thyroid cartilage. Then, it runs to its termination along the lateral side of the common carotid artery, in the same sheath as the artery and vagus nerve, but separated from these structures by a distinct septum. On its way to the base of the neck, the vein gradually overlaps the artery anteriorly.

At the upper part, the internal jugular vein receives the inferior petrosal sinus and a meningeal vein. At the level of the angle of the mandible it receives some veins from the pharyngeal plexus as well as a communicating branch from the external jugular vein. The facial vein enters the internal jugular vein at the level of the carotid bifurcation. Further inferiorly, the lingual, sternocleidomastoid, and superior thyroid veins join the main trunk of the internal jugular vein. Sometimes these veins enter the internal jugular vein through a common trunk, the thyrolinguofacial trunk, that crosses over the hypoglossal nerve. Along the lateral surface of the thyroid gland the internal jugular vein is joined by the middle thyroid vein.

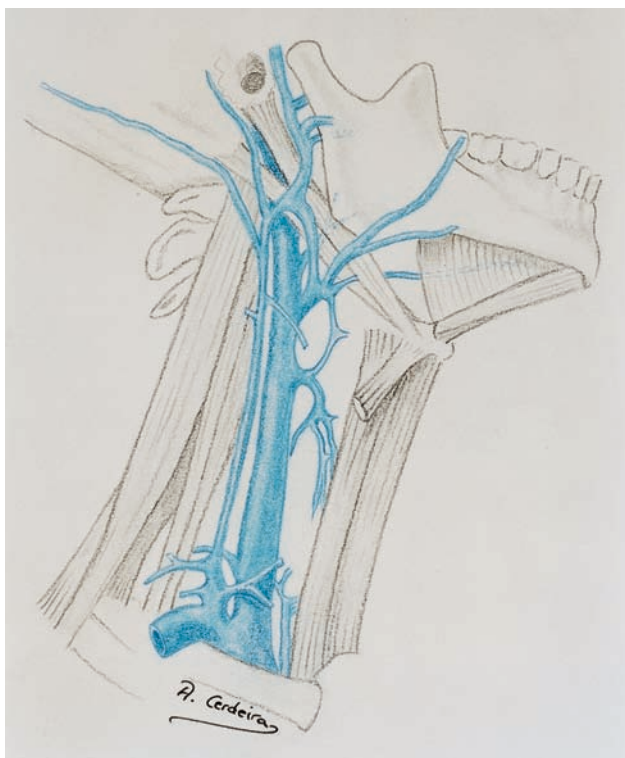


Figure 2-25 Internal jugular vein.

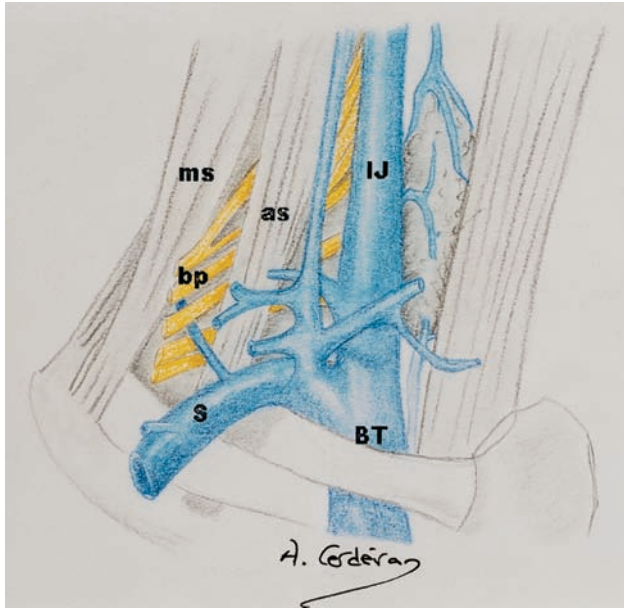


Figure 2-26 Detail of the lower portion of the internal jugular vein on the right side of the neck. IJ, internal jugular vein; S, subclavian vein; BT, brachiocephalic trunk; as, anterior scalene muscle; ms, middle scalene muscle; bp, brachial plexus.

The upper portion of the internal jugular vein is covered by the digastric muscle. At the lower part of the neck, the vein is crossed by the omohyoid muscle. The internal jugular vein courses inferiorly through the neck along with the carotid artery, toward the inferior border of the sternoclavicular articulation, where it joins the subclavian vein to form the brachiocephalic trunk (Fig. 2-26).

A large number of lymph nodes lie along the internal jugular vein, in the interstices of the fascial laminae of the carotid sheath (Fig. 2-5). Thus, careful dissection of this structure is one of the characteristic surgical steps of functional and selective neck dissection. Longitudinal incision of the carotid sheath allows the removal of the lymph nodes located along the vascular axis of the neck as well as preservation of the important neurovascular structures surrounded by this fascial sheath.

Carotid Artery The right common carotid artery arises at the bifurcation of the brachiocephalic trunk, whereas the left common carotid artery comes from the aortic arch. The common carotid artery has no branches until its termination, keeping the same diameter throughout its full course (Fig. 2-27). The cranial portion of the common carotid artery has a dilatation, known as the carotid sinus, which is characterized by more elastic walls and a special innervation through the carotid sinus branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve. The carotid sinus collaborates in the regulation of blood pressure. The common carotid artery lies medial and posterior to the internal jugular vein at the level of the sternoclavicular joint, running more anterior and lateral as it ascends. The vagus nerve is located between the internal jugular vein and the common carotid artery. The common carotid artery ascends in the vascular sheath up to the level of the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage, where it divides into internal and external branches. After its division, the internal and external carotid arteries ascend in the neck, diverging from each other in the form of a V and running in an anterior posterior direction.

The *internal carotid artery* is the continuation of the common carotid artery. It has no branches in the neck, and ascends medial and posterior to the internal jugular vein toward the skull base (Fig. 2-27). At its origin it runs lateral and posterior to the external carotid artery, lying on the longus capitis muscle. As it ascends, it passes internal and posterior to the external branch. The internal carotid artery enters the middle cranial fossa through the carotid canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone.

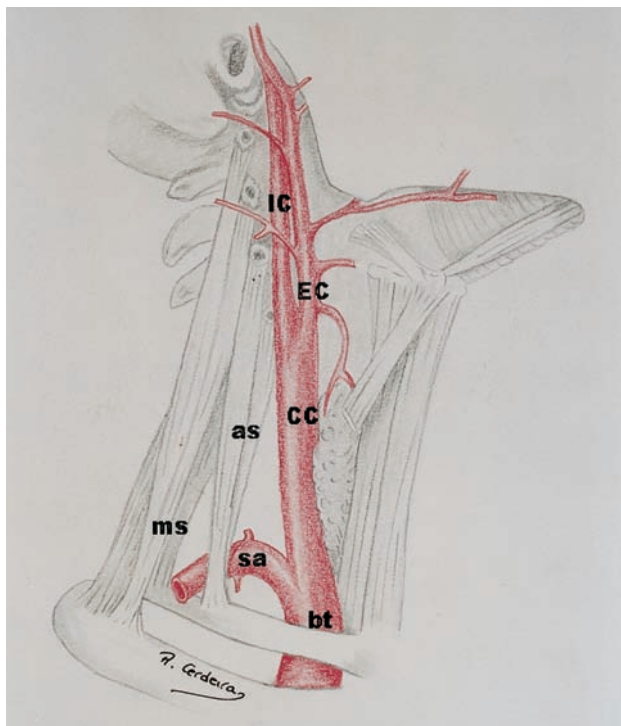


Figure 2-27 Right carotid artery. CC, common carotid artery; IC, internal carotid artery; EC, external carotid artery; bt, brachiocephalic trunk; sa, subclavian artery; as, anterior scalene muscle; ms, middle scalene muscle.

The *external carotid artery* arises from the carotid sinus at the level of the fourth cervical vertebra. It runs vertical from the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage to the anterior border of the tragus, anterior and medial to the internal carotid artery. It is crossed by the hypoglossal nerve and passes deep to the posterior border of the digastric and stylohyoid muscles. It is separated from the internal carotid artery by the stylopharyngeus and styloglossus muscles, styloid process, glossopharyngeal nerve, and pharyngeal branches of the vagus nerve. The superior laryngeal nerve lies

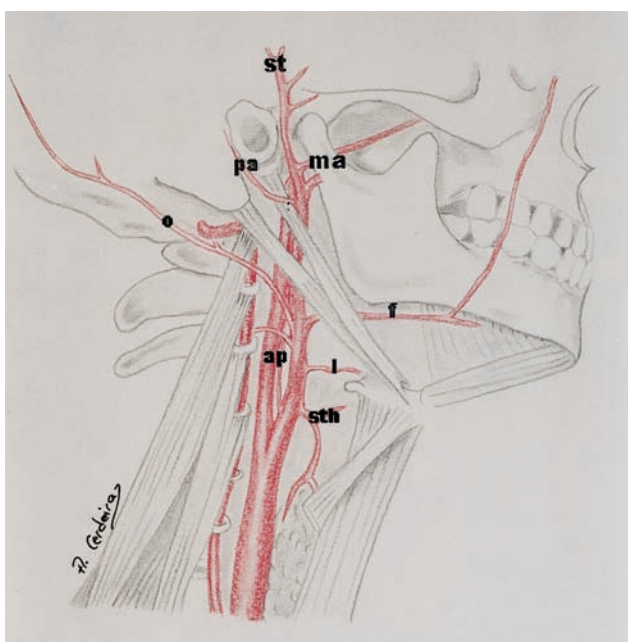


Figure 2-28 Branches of the right external carotid artery. st, superficial temporal artery; ma, maxillary artery; sth, superior thyroid artery; ap, ascending pharyngeal artery; l, lingual artery; o, occipital artery; f, facial artery; pa, posterior auricular artery.

medial to the artery in the carotid triangle. On its final portion the external carotid artery ascends posterior to the angle of the mandible and deep to the parotid gland, diverging laterally to become more superficial. It then perforates the parotid gland and accompanies the retromandibular vein through the gland toward the neck of the mandible, where it terminates by dividing into the superficial temporal and maxillary arteries (Fig. 2-28). Most of the branches of the external carotid artery arise in the carotid triangle. The branches of the external carotid artery are the superior thyroid, ascending pharyngeal, lingual, occipital, facial, and posterior auricular arteries.

The *superior thyroid artery* arises from the anterior border of the external carotid artery, just inferior to the great cornu of the hyoid bone. The artery arches anteriorly and then descends obliquely toward the superior pole of the thyroid gland, deep to the strap muscles. The main branches of the superior thyroid artery are the infrahyoid, sternocleidomastoid, superior laryngeal, cricothyroid, and glandular arteries. The *infrahyoid artery* runs inferior to the hyoid bone lying on the thyrohyoid membrane. The *sternocleidomastoid artery* runs posteriorly to enter the deep surface of the muscle. The *superior laryngeal artery* arises from the arching part of the superior thyroid artery. It passes forward toward the posterior border of the thyrohyoid muscle, along with the superior laryngeal vein and the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve. The neurovascular bundle pierces the thyrohyoid membrane and supplies the laryngeal muscles, the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle, and the endolaryngeal mucosa. The *cricothyroid artery* runs medially, supplying the cricothyroid muscle and membrane. It crosses the midline creating an intralaryngeal anastomotic arch with the branches from the opposite side. The *glandular arteries* are the direct continuation of the superior thyroid artery and constitute the final and largest branches of the superior thyroid artery. They divide at the superior pole of the thyroid gland into anterior and posterior branches.

The *ascending pharyngeal artery* is usually the second branch of the external carotid artery. It is a long, small vessel that arises from the posterior wall of the artery and runs on the pharynx, deep to the internal carotid artery, sending branches to the pharynx, prevertebral muscles, middle ear, and meninges.

The *lingual artery* arises from the anterior wall of the external carotid artery at the level of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, between the superior thyroid and facial arteries. In its first portion it lies on the middle constrictor muscle, covered only by the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia and the platysma muscle. It then arches upward, passing deep to the hypoglossal nerve, stylohyoid muscle, and posterior belly of the digastric muscle, to disappear into the depth of the hyoglossus muscle.

The *facial artery* arises from the anterior border of the external carotid artery, just above the lingual artery and sometimes from a common trunk. In the neck, the facial artery lies on the middle and superior constrictor muscles, deep to the stylohyoid and posterior belly of the digastric muscles. It enters the submandibular triangle and, close to the angle of the mandible, it arches laterally across the stylohyoid and posterior belly of the digastric muscles. It then descends toward the inferior border of the mandible, lying in a groove between the submandibular gland medially and the medial pterygoid muscle laterally. Turning around the inferior border of the mandible, the artery grooves the bone, pierces the superficial cervical fascia, and enters the face at the anterior edge of the masseter muscle.

The *occipital artery* arises from the posterior surface of the external carotid artery, near the level of the facial artery. It passes posteriorly along the inferior border of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, ending in the posterior part of the scalp.

The *posterior auricular artery* is the third branch arising from the posterior wall of the external carotid artery, usually at the superior margin of the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid muscles. It may arise as a common trunk with the occipital artery or as an independent branch. It arches laterally across the stylohyoid muscle, turns posterior, and enters the interval between the posterior margin of the external auditory canal and the mastoid process, where it divides into two terminal branches.

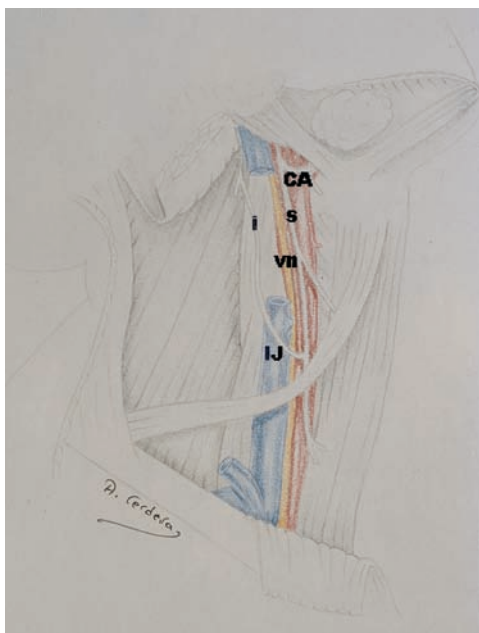


Figure 2-29 Anatomic relations of the vagus nerve. vn, vagus nerve; CA, carotid artery; IJ, internal jugular vein; s, superior root of the ansa cervicalis; i, inferior root of the ansa cervicalis.

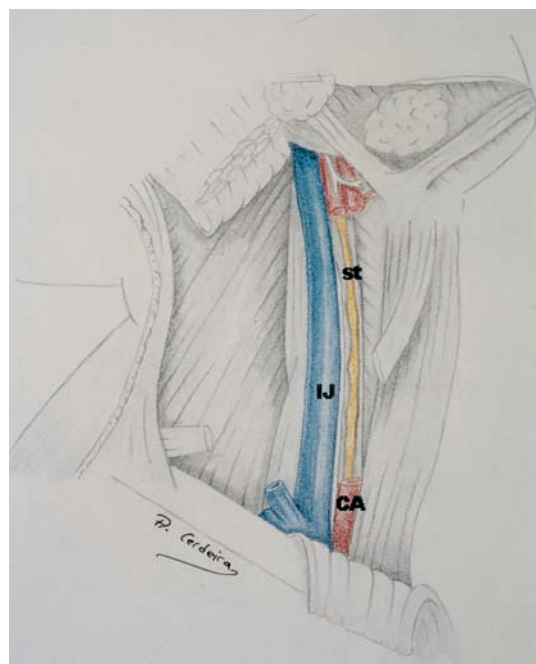


Figure 2-30 Anatomic relations of the cervical sympathetic trunk. st, sympathetic trunk; CA, carotid artery; IJ, internal jugular vein.

Vagus Nerve The tenth cranial nerve receives its name from the Latin word *vagus*, which means “wandering.” This nerve has the most extensive distribution of all cranial nerves. The vagus nerve leaves the skull through the jugular foramen along with the internal jugular vein and cranial nerves IX and XI. It enters the neck anterior and lateral to the superior cervical ganglion and runs posterior within the carotid sheath, between the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein (Fig. 2-29). On the lower part of the right side of the neck, the vagus nerve enters the

mediastinum after crossing the origin of the subclavian artery, posterior to the brachiocephalic trunk and the sternoclavicular joint. The right recurrent laryngeal nerve leaves the main trunk of the vagus nerve to loop around the subclavian artery. On the left side of the neck, the vagus nerve descends between the common carotid and subclavian arteries, anterior to the thoracic duct. In the upper part of the superior mediastinum the vagus nerve is crossed by the phrenic nerve. In the lower part of the same region it crosses anterior to the root of the subclavian artery and the arch of the aorta. Below the arch of the aorta it passes dorsal to the left main bronchus and divides into branches. The left recurrent nerve loops around the arch of the aorta. Both right and left recurrent nerves pass superiorly to ascend in the tracheoesophageal groove toward the posteromedial aspect of the thyroid gland before entering the larynx.

Sympathetic Trunk The sympathetic trunk runs from the skull base to the subclavian artery lying anterolateral to the vertebral column, posterior to the great vessels, and anterior to the longus colli and longus capitis muscles (Fig. 2-30). It does not receive white rami communicans in the neck, but contains three cervical sympathetic ganglia (superior, medial, and inferior). These ganglia receive their preganglionic fibers from the superior thoracic spinal nerves through white rami communicans, whose fibers leave the spinal cord in the ventral roots of the thoracic spinal nerves. From the sympathetic trunk the fibers pass to cervical structures as postganglionic fibers in cervical spinal nerves, or leave as direct visceral branches.

The *superior cervical ganglion* is the largest of the three cervical sympathetic ganglia. It is located at the level of the atlas and axis, between the internal jugular vein and the internal carotid artery. It constitutes a good anatomical landmark to identify the sympathetic trunk in the neck. The carotid sheath lies anterior to the ganglion, and the longus colli muscle is located posterior to it. Postganglionic fibers pass along with the internal carotid artery and enter the cranial cavity. It also sends branches to the external carotid artery and into the four superior cranial nerves.

The *middle cervical ganglion* lies at the level of the cricoid cartilage and the transverse process of C6, anterior to the bend of the inferior thyroid artery. This ganglion may be double or missing entirely. Its postganglionic fibers pass to the thyroid gland and heart.

The *inferior cervical ganglion* lies at the level of the first rib, posterior to the vertebral artery or to the first part of the subclavian artery. It usually fuses with the first thoracic ganglion to form the stellate ganglion or cervicothoracic ganglion. Fibers from this ganglion pass into the vertebral plexus and to the heart.

Interruption of the sympathetic trunk in the neck causes Horner's syndrome (miosis, ptosis, enophthalmos, and anhidrosis of the ipsilateral eye).

Conceptual Approach to Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

To sum up the essentials of the previous chapters, we may look at the issue of “less than radical” neck dissection under two different standpoints. The American evolution, which is based on the idea of preserving important neck structures that may not be involved by the tumor (e.g., internal jugular vein, spinal accessory nerve, and sternocleidomastoid muscle); and the Latin approach to the problem, which is based on the fascial concept developed by Osvaldo Suárez.

PRESERVING STRUCTURES

The American approach gave rise to the so-called modified radical neck dissections. After some years of debate, the oncological safety of these “less than radical” operations has been widely accepted. A step forward in this evolution resulted in the appearance of “selective” neck dissections in which some nodal regions are preserved according to the location of the primary tumor. This new approach to neck dissection carried a need for a comprehensive classification inclusive of all types of modifications to the radical operation. Because the potential number of modifications is rather large, the resulting classification is complex and difficult to handle on a daily basis.

Selective Neck Dissections: Types and Indications

The anatomical studies of Rouviere demonstrated that the lymphatic drainage from normal head and neck mucosal sites is relatively predictable. Later clinical studies concluded that oral cavity cancers mostly metastasized to the jugular digastric and midjugular nodes. Cancers of the anterior

tongue, floor of the mouth, and buccal mucosa metastasize first to the nodes in the submandibular triangle. Some metastases may skip the submandibular and upper deep jugular nodes and go directly to the midjugular nodes on either side of the neck. The Lindberg study, and a subsequent study by Skolnik, observed that oral cavity and oropharynx tumors rarely metastasize to posterior or lower deep jugular nodes in the absence of metastases in the upper jugular and submaxillary nodal groups. Shah's 1990 retrospective review of radical neck dissection specimens from patients with oral, laryngeal, and pharyngeal cancers concluded that oral cavity cancers metastasize most often to levels I, II, and III, whereas oropharynx cancers most often go to levels II, III, and IV. When cancerous nodes were found in other levels, they were usually positive in the areas of highest risk too. Bocca and others have observed that supraglottic cancers rarely metastasize to the submental and submandibular nodal groups. Nasopharyngeal and some oropharyngeal tumors can metastasize to the nodes in the posterior triangle of the neck. Finally, subglottic lesions and thyroid malignancies frequently involve the lymph nodes in the anterior central compartment of the neck.

Based on these findings, several selective neck dissections have been proposed.

Supraomohyoid Selective Neck Dissection

This procedure is used for oral cavity cancers. The submental, submandibular, upper, and midjugular groups of nodes are the usual sites of metastases from the oral cancers. Supraomohyoid neck dissection removes levels I, II, III, and at times (oral tongue cancer) level IV. Excluded is level V. Bilateral dissection is recommended for midline tumors (floor of the mouth, ventral surface of the tongue). In patients with significant (N2) nodal metastases in the ipsilateral neck, bilateral dissection or contralateral neck radiation is crucial. It is suggested that if there are metastases in level II, level IV, and V should be dissected. This recommendation suggests that an operation close to a complete functional neck dissection is appropriate for patients with oral cavity cancers with palpable metastases, and something less is acceptable for elective dissection. This approach to cancer codifies and structures of what experienced surgeons have always done: make intraoperative decisions based on operative findings. Martin objected to the selective approach because it lacked a statistical basis. That objection remains valid today.

Lateral Selective Neck Dissection

The lateral dissection removes nodal groups II, III, and IV, leaving levels I and V undissected. The lateral operation is recommended for oropharyngeal, hypopharyngeal, and laryngeal cancers and should be done bilaterally if there are proven metastases to one side of the neck.

Posterolateral Neck Dissection

This operation removes the nodes of levels II, III, IV, and V, the suboccipital, and the postauricular nodal groups. It is recommended for metastases from skin malignancies of the posterior scalp, posterior neck, and some parotid salivary gland cancers that have metastasized posteriorly. The dissection differs from the dissections favored for aerodigestive system metastases. It removes the lymph nodes and lymphatics containing fibrofatty tissue of the posterior neck, the subdermal fat, and fascia between the primary site and nodal compartments where there are no distinct fascial compartments.

Anterior Neck Dissection

This dissection removes only area VI, which includes the paratracheal nodes, perithyroid, and precricoid (Delphian) groups. The procedure is favored for thyroid cancer, cervical trachea,

subglottic laryngeal cancer (subglottic or transglottic), cervical esophagus, and hypopharynx cancer. The procedure is usually bilateral for cervical esophageal and large hypopharyngeal cancer. It can be combined with a lateral dissection and occasionally needs to be extended to the upper mediastinum. This selective dissection clarifies the management of an area of potential metastases that has been largely neglected. Nevertheless, there is a dearth of statistical data to make rational decisions about when, how much, whether both sides, when to extend, and so forth. The anterior dissection seems reasonable because of the definition of its scope.

There are situations where none of these selective operations will fit a clinical scenario. This requires another category called the extended neck dissection. The extended neck dissection is a defined selective dissection plus something more. The removal of a nonlymphatic structure, such as the internal jugular vein or the sternomastoid muscle. Other extensions that include, in a descriptive bloc, the upper mediastinum, the axilla, or the retropharyngeal space, are examples of the extended neck dissection.

DISSECTING THROUGH FASCIAL SPACES

The Latin approach is based on the anatomical compartmentalization of the neck. The fascial system creates spaces and barriers separating the lymphatic tissue from the remaining neck structures. The lymphatic system of the neck is contained within a fascial envelope, which, under normal conditions, may be removed without taking out other neck structures such as the internal jugular vein, sternocleidomastoid muscle, or spinal accessory nerve. The surgical technique that made this possible was initially referred to as functional neck dissection because it allowed a more functional approach to the neck in head and neck cancer patients. However, as previously emphasized, the most important but less well known fact about functional neck dissection is that it represents a surgical concept with no implications regarding the extent of the surgery. Osvaldo Suárez never performed functional neck dissection as the comprehensive type of neck dissection that some have made of it. In fact, the operation he used for cancer of the larynx did not include the submandibular and submental lymph nodes (area I) in the resection, something that now will be considered a selective neck dissection.

The question that arises at this point is, if functional neck dissection was initially designed as a new approach to the neck regardless of the extent of the surgery, why did we make of it just another type of “modified” radical neck dissection? To understand the reasons for this misinterpretation we must take ourselves to the moment when both trends—American and Latin—merged.

The increasing number of reports from European surgeons in the English literature describing the good results obtained with functional neck dissection drew the attention of American surgeons to this procedure. However, the merging of ideas resembled more a collision than a mixture, and the final result was another modification to radical neck dissection. The operation was accepted as an oncologically safe procedure, but the idea was not understood. The battle of functional neck dissection had been won, but the war of the types of neck dissection, the war of the different ways to approach the neck, was lost.

FUNCTIONAL AS A CONCEPT

We are aware that the two approaches herein specified—American and Latin—may look similar to many observers. However, there is a great conceptual difference between them. In the first case

the surgical technique is modified to preserve some neck structures, whereas in the second, a different approach is used to treat the neck with disease confined to the lymphatic system.

This difference may appear terminological and irrelevant when it comes to comparing “functional” versus “modified radical.” It may be said that, although the rationale is different, the end result is the same: the lymphatic system is removed from the neck, preserving the remaining neck structures. However, the situation becomes more complex when selective neck dissections appear in the surgical scenario.

Selective neck dissections are simple modifications of standard operations, whether they be functional or radical (we will see later that they are more closely related to functional than to radical neck dissection). Selective neck dissections are just technical variations designed to fit the operation to the patient on a more individualized basis. Thus, their potential number is as high as the number of possible modifications to the original procedure. On the contrary, functional neck dissection as described here is a concept, allowing a different approach to the neck.

The key factor for the misunderstanding of functional neck dissection was the mixture between concepts and techniques that took place in the literature. This situation was favored by a linguistic factor that played an important role in all this confusion.

The functional concept reached the American surgeons through the experience of third parties because Osvaldo Suárez never published his ideas in English. Moreover, the few Spanish papers he published did not emphasize the importance of his approach—as often happens with important contributions, the author is the person least aware of the impact of the innovation. The result of this indirect transmission of information was the partial distortion of the implicit message: functional is a concept, not just another modification.

The functional concept implies dissecting along fascial planes, regardless of the nodal regions that may be preserved or included in the resection. Functional means using fascial compartmentalization to remove the lymphatic tissue of the neck.

The final conclusion for this reasoning is that functional neck dissection should not be identified with a comprehensive type of nonradical neck dissection, but with a conceptual approach to the neck. Whether the surgeon decides to stop above or below the omohyoid muscle in oral cavity tumors, remove or preserve the lymph nodes in the posterior triangle of the neck (lower part of area V) in hypopharyngeal cancer, or resect or spare the submental lymph nodes in laryngeal cancer patients constitutes only minor considerations in regard to the basic principle. Now let us address the relations between the basic functional principle and selective neck operations.

FUNCTIONAL AND SELECTIVE NECK DISSECTIONS: SO CLOSE AND YET SO FAR

From the information given thus far, it is obvious that the functional concept and the selective operations are more similar than they appear to be in some classifications. They are both indicated for N0 patients, they both preserve neck structures not involved by the tumor, and they both may be performed simultaneously on both sides of the neck. In fact, functional and selective neck dissections are so similar to each other that they could be regarded as the same thing with different names. It is most important here to understand that the functional concept holds the clue for the oncological safety of all selective neck dissections.

If functional neck dissection is a concept, selective operations are the materialization of this concept. Thus, the functional concept includes in its definition all types of selective neck dissections because they all share the same rationale and indications of the functional approach. The differences between the various selective operations are only technical considerations emerging from a common, standard complete functional neck dissection.

One of the advantages of this conceptual approach to nonradical neck dissection is that it provides the rationale for the oncological safety of selective neck dissections. On the other hand, a conceptual approach like this reduces the relative importance of selective neck dissections, which are now regarded not as different operations, but as technical variations of the original procedure.

REASONS FOR THE ONCOLOGICAL SAFETY OF SELECTIVE NECK DISSECTIONS

Fascial compartmentalization of the neck provides the oncological safety for selective neck dissections by the inclusion of lymph nodes and ducts in a system of fascial spaces and barriers. It is possible to remove the lymphatic system without removing other neck structures as long as the tumor cells remain within the lymph node capsule.

The decision of whether to remove the whole lymphatic system of the neck or just a part of it will depend on several factors, including the location of the primary tumor, the N stage, and the experience and preferences of the surgeon.

The distribution of cervical lymph node metastases from head and neck tumors has been a matter of study and debate over the last decades. Nowadays we have a fairly consistent description of the most frequent metastatic areas for most primary sites in the head and neck. This situation allows the surgeon to preserve some nodal groups according to the location of the primary tumor without a significant risk of undertreatment. This is especially true in pathological N0 patients in whom the lymph flow should not have been disturbed by metastatic disease. However, in pN⁺ necks the situation may be different. Two problems must be considered in patients with metastatic disease in the lymphatic system of the neck.

1. The theoretical predictability of the lymph node metastatic pattern may have been modified by changes produced by the tumor cells contained within the lymphatic system. This may result in positive nodes outside the "normal" route. These nodes will be missed by a selective operation that otherwise could have been safe.
2. The presence of metastasis in the usual nodal areas significantly increases the chances for positive nodes in other less frequent regions for the primary site. In the preoperative clinically N⁺ neck with small palpable nodes this is the strongest argument against selective neck dissections. In these patients a complete functional neck dissection must be performed to include all the lymphatic system of the neck. The problem is different in the clinically N0 neck treated with selective neck dissection in which occult metastases are diagnosed after the operation. In these cases, selective neck dissection may be regarded as a staging rather than a therapeutic operation, and postoperative radiotherapy may be needed.

This is one of the strongest arguments against the extreme use of selective operations because the surgeon never knows before surgery which patients will show positive nodes at pathology after the operation. From the patient perspective, assuming the risk for a smaller operation is only justified on the basis of improved oncological results and decreased morbidity. The first criterion, oncological safety, has as yet only been demonstrated for a small number of selective operations. On the other hand, decreased morbidity is at least questionable when it comes to comparing the results of complete functional neck dissection with those of the most frequently recommended selective procedures. It is not preservation of lymphatic regions but of nonlymphatic structures that is related to surgical morbidity and sequelae in neck dissection.

The previous considerations support the important role that personal experience of the surgeon ultimately plays in selecting the type of dissection that should be used for different primary head

and neck tumors. And personal experience is acquired only after years of practice with standard procedures and sound apprehension of fundamental concepts.

In conclusion, whereas the oncological safety of some selective neck dissections has already been proved, the feasibility of others still lacks scientific demonstration and should be documented by means of well-designed trials. While we wait for the confirmation of the oncological safety of these procedures, it is our policy to teach basic concepts rather than technical modifications in the hope that time and experience will allow well-trained surgeons to adequately adjust their operations to the best interest of their patients.

THE ROLE OF SELECTIVE NECK DISSECTIONS IN THE FUNCTIONAL APPROACH

In the functional approach selective neck dissections are just technical modifications of the complete operation, which includes all nodal regions in the resection. We do not question the usefulness of these operations. In fact, a large number of our nonradical operations are selective neck dissections. However, we do not share the need to establish a comprehensive classification that includes all possible types of modifications and technical variations. The number of combinations and permutations of six nodal regions and more than 10 primary sites, plus two preoperative N stages, is immense. Such classification is impractical for teaching purposes.

Some authors support the need to create extensive classifications as a tool to obtain proper information about the usefulness of different types of selective neck dissection. However, the validity of such reasoning is questionable. The ill-defined boundaries that delineate the separation of nodal regions at surgery stand as an important drawback for standardizing purposes. Although clearly marked in theory, the anatomical landmarks that separate the nodal groups are difficult to identify during the operation. The artificial lines that divide the neck into nodal regions are not easily visible and the anatomical landmarks that may be used to help the surgeon can be largely displaced during the operative maneuvers. This gives little consistency to the reports of selective neck dissections coming from different institutions, and even from different surgeons within the same institution. What somebody refers to as anterolateral neck dissection may be completely different in extension, number of removed lymph nodes, and true anatomical boundaries, in contrast to theoretical limits, to the anterolateral dissection performed by other surgeons. Extending this situation to all types of selective neck dissections gives an idea of the actual inconsistency of the current classification from a practical standpoint.

Neck Dissection Classifications: Didactic versus Clinical Intention

For teaching purposes we prefer to use a more pragmatic approach that includes only two different types of neck dissection which represent the two main concepts: functional and radical (Table 3-1). After the young surgeons have learned the basics for these two approaches, they will decide whether to enlarge their practice with technical modifications to the standard procedures, based on their personal experience. An additional group of modified procedures is included in our classification for special situations. We accept the criticism of those who consider this to be a very simplistic approach to neck dissection classification. Those supporting more detailed classifications consider our approach to be inadequate for comparison purposes between different surgeons and institutions. However, in our opinion, exhaustive classifications do not allow useful comparisons as a consequence of the multiple subjective variables that take part in every operation,

TABLE 3-1. Conceptual Classification of Neck Dissection Used for Teaching Purposes

Functional Neck Dissection	Neck dissection following the anatomical fascial planes defined by fascial compartmentalization of the neck. <i>The extension of the dissection will depend on the location of the primary tumor and the experience of the surgeon. Surgical details should be reported at the end of the operation.</i>
Radical Neck Dissection	Neck dissection according to the guidelines described by Crile in 1906 and popularized later by Martin. <i>The extension of the dissection will depend on the location of the primary tumor and the experience of the surgeon. Surgical details should be reported at the end of the operation.</i>
Modified Neck Dissections	
Modified Functional ND	Fascial neck dissection, including the resection of one or more nonlymphatic structures usually preserved in conventional functional neck dissection (internal jugular vein, sternocleidomastoid muscle, spinal accessory nerve).*
Modified Radical ND	Neck dissection performed according to the surgical principles of the Crile operation, with preservation of one or more nonlymphatic structures usually removed in radical neck dissection (internal jugular vein, sternocleidomastoid muscle, spinal accessory nerve).*

*The surgical report must detail the modified structure(s).

especially when the surgical limits are diffuse and difficult to identify. In contrast to simpler systems, exhaustive systems are more difficult to learn and use in everyday life.

On the other hand, for clinical purposes we frequently use selective neck dissections, but only those that have been proved safe in our hands over the years (e.g., preserving level I in cancer of the larynx). However, we consider them simple modifications of the standard procedures and do not pay special attention to nomenclature and other terminological issues. Each one of these operations is selected on a personal basis according to factors relating to the primary tumor, the patient, and the treatment team. This selection process results in a polymorphous variety of procedures designed to fit the operation to the patient on a personal basis.

It must be emphasized that we never push the limits too far concerning the preservation of nodal regions. There are two reasons for this: (1) the wish to avoid “staging” operations when therapeutic procedures are easily achievable and (2) the belief that the time and morbidity added with more extensive operations are not significant from the patient’s perspective. With this approach we try to increase the effectiveness of our surgery and limit the need for postoperative radiotherapy in early N stages, reducing the cost and morbidity of the treatment.

INDICATIONS AND LIMITATIONS OF THE FUNCTIONAL APPROACH

To be safe, functional neck surgery requires all metastatic disease to be confined within the lymphatic tissue. Thus, this approach is ideal for N0 patients with a high risk of occult metastasis. An additional advantage of functional neck dissection is that it may be performed simultaneously on both sides of the neck without increasing morbidity. In all midline head and neck lesions with high risk of cervical metastasis (floor of the mouth, base of the tongue, supraglottic larynx), functional neck dissection is the best surgical option for N0 patients.

In patients with small palpable nodes functional neck dissection is still a valid option as long as some principles are carefully observed. The nodes should not be greater than 2.5 to 3.0 cm in

greatest diameter. This is justified by the need to have all metastatic disease confined within the lymph node capsule. Although extracapsular spread is possible in lymph nodes of all sizes, it is well known that extracapsular spread increases with increasing lymph node size. Gross extracapsular extension results in lymph node fixation to contiguous structures. Therefore, lymph node mobility must be carefully assessed before surgery. This is even more important than the absolute size in centimeters because small nodes may be fixed, thus preventing a functional approach in these cases. In no instance should functional neck dissection be attempted in patients with fixed nodes. If at surgery there is any doubt about the feasibility of the functional operation, the suspicious structure must be removed with the specimen. Cancer cells cannot be pursued with a scalpel, and surgical demonstrations of "technical expertise" are unacceptable in cancer patients and must be reserved for the dissection room.

The number of palpable nodes is not a contraindication for functional neck dissection as long as all nodes fulfill the previously mentioned criteria. The same can be said with respect to the location of the primary tumor. Functional neck dissection is as safe for supraglottic tumor as it is for piriform sinus cancer, as long as the indications are carefully followed in both situations. The fact that patients with cancer of the hypopharynx do more poorly than those with laryngeal tumors cannot be modified by performing more aggressive operations than those required for the N stage of the patient.

By definition, functional neck dissection is not possible in patients previously treated with radiotherapy or other types of neck surgery. In these patients the fascial planes have disappeared as a consequence of the previous treatment. Thus, fascial dissection is not possible anymore. In these cases modified radical neck dissection appears as an alternative to radical neck dissection as a means to preserve structures not involved by the tumor. The dissection will be made according to the basic principles of radical neck dissection, but preservation of uninvolved neck structures will be accomplished according to the surgical scenario. This is a clear example that illustrates the difference between functional and modified radical neck dissection.

Surgical Technique

This chapter describes the surgical technique for a complete functional approach to the neck in which all cervical nodal groups are removed. For teaching purposes, the surgical steps are sequentially detailed. However, not every single surgical step of those mentioned must be considered mandatory for every malignant head and neck tumor. As previously emphasized in this book, the preservation of selected nodal groups is a valid option that does not modify the basic principle of the functional approach to the neck (i.e., the removal of lymphatic tissue by means of fascial dissection). Surgeons must be able to decide, according to their own personal experience, which nodal groups should be included in the dissection and which can be preserved, then proceed accordingly, skipping the surgical steps that are not considered necessary.

PREOPERATIVE PREPARATION AND OPERATING ROOM SETUP

The patient should be prepared as for any major operation. All routine laboratory tests must be performed, including electrocardiogram and chest radiographs. Preoperative evaluation is accomplished by the anesthesiologist prior to surgery. Premedication is used according to the anesthesiologist's choice. Prophylactic antibiotics are given according to the usual protocol. The patient's neck and upper chest are shaved and prepared for the operation.

The patient is placed supine on the operating table with a pillow or inflatable rubber bag under the shoulders to obtain the proper angle for surgery (Fig. 4-1). This is generally obtained when the occiput rests against the upper end of the table. Elevating the upper half of the operating table to approximately 30 degrees will decrease the amount of bleeding during surgery. The patient's lower face, ears, neck, shoulders, and upper chest are prepared with surgical solution, and the patient is draped in layers (Fig. 4-2). Four towels are placed and affixed to the skin. Two of the towels are placed horizontally, one from the chin to the mastoid over the body of the mandible and the other across the upper chest from the shoulder to the midline. The remaining two towels are placed vertically, from the mastoid tip to the shoulder, except for unilateral procedures where the second vertical towel is placed in the midline. A sheet is placed over the patient's chest and legs, and an open sheet covers the entire patient except for the field of operation. The Mayo stand is prepared with the suction tubing and cautery cords secured in place (Fig. 4-3).

Two assistants are usually present: one in front of the surgeon and the second at the patient's head. The scrub nurse stands on the right side of the patient facing the head of the table (Figs. 4-4A,



Figure 4-1 Patient prepared for surgery with a pillow under the shoulders to obtain adequate neck extension.



Figure 4-2 The patient is covered with drapes and a "Y" incision is outlined on the right side of the neck.



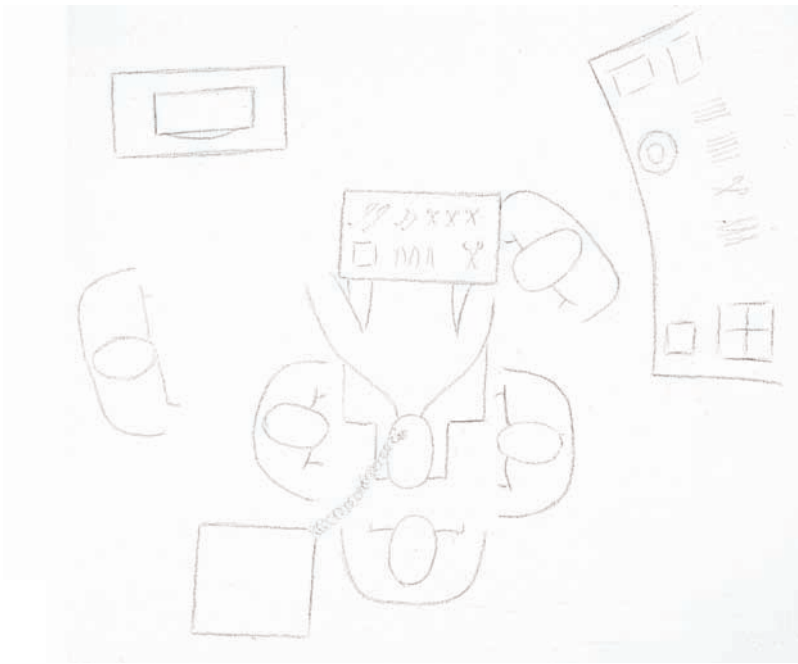
Figure 4-3 Mayo stand located over the patient's chest with the scrub nurse standing at the right side of the surgeon.

4-4B). The anesthetist sits at the patient's head with the machine to the opposite side of the surgery. Few general instruments are needed for the operation (Fig. 4-5).

General endotracheal anesthesia is always used. Muscular relaxation is not a priority but the surgeon must be aware of the patient's condition to know the degree of contraction that can be expected when approaching the main nerves in the neck. A bloodless field will decrease the operating time and help the identification of neck structures. We do not routinely use infiltration of local anesthetics.

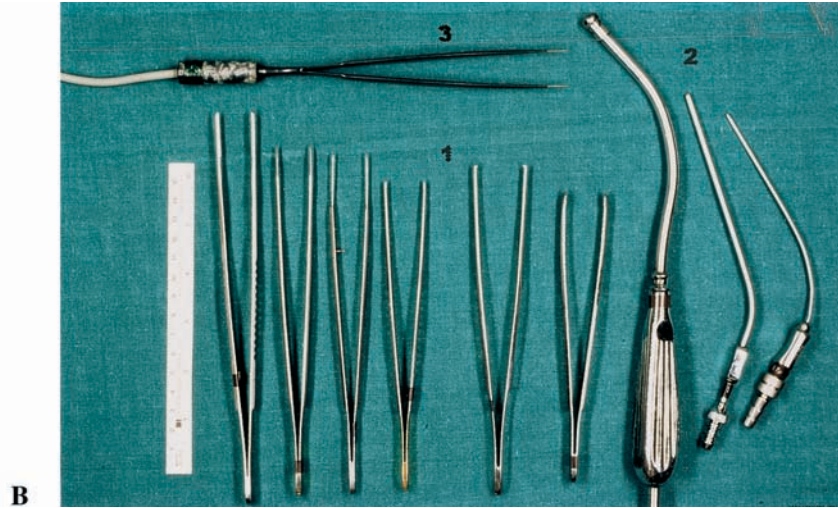


A



B

Figure 4-4 (A) Picture showing the surgical team for a right-side functional neck dissection. (B) Operating room setup for the operation.





D



E

Figure 4-5 General instruments used in functional and selective neck dissection. (A) 1, scissors; 2, knives (#10, #15); 3, needle holders. (B) 1, atraumatic and toothed tissue forceps; 2, suction tips; 3, monopolar forceps. (C) 1, Volkmann retractors; 2, Howarth raspator; 3, Desmarres vascular retractor; 4, Deschamps ligature needle; 5, skin hooks; 6, Farabeuf retractors; 7, Langenbeck retractors. (D) 1, straight Péan's forceps; 2, large and small Duval forceps; 3, large and small Allis forceps. (E) 1, right-angle forceps; 2, large and small curved Péan's forceps; 3, Dandy hemostatic forceps; 4, mosquito forceps.

INCISION AND FLAPS

The exact location and type of skin incision will depend on the site of the primary tumor and whether a unilateral or bilateral neck dissection is planned. The following are the main goals to be achieved by the skin incision:

- Allow adequate exposure of the surgical field.
- Assure adequate vascularization of the skin flaps.

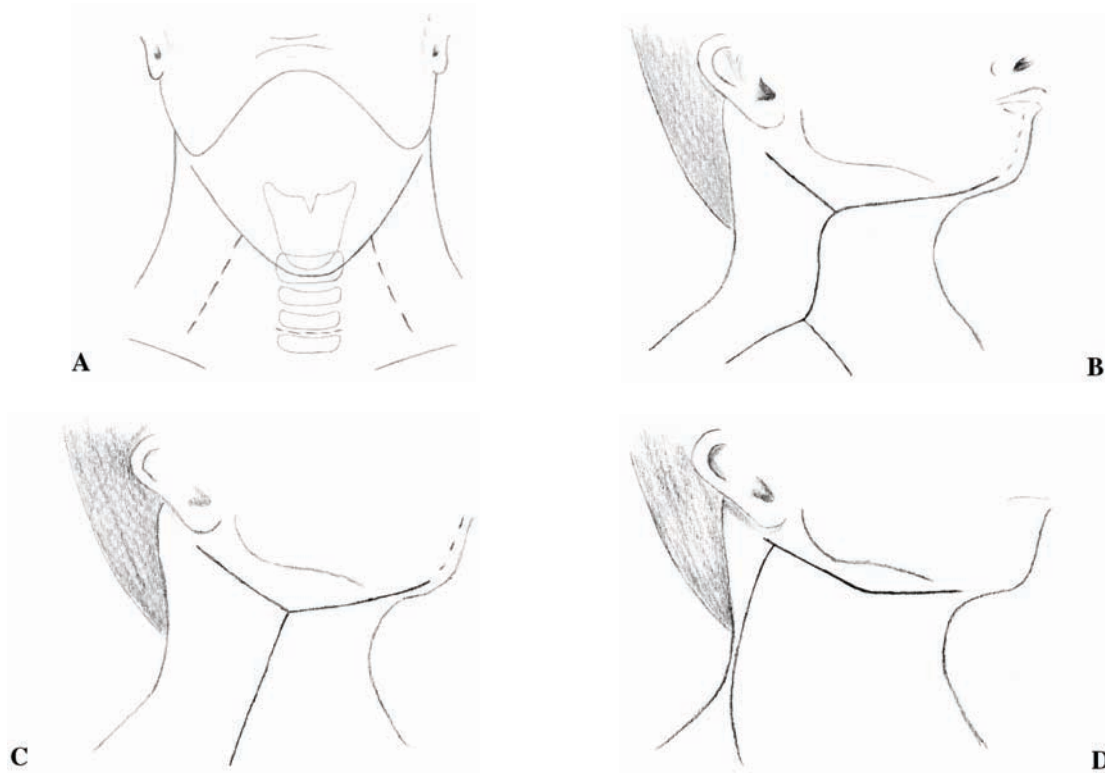
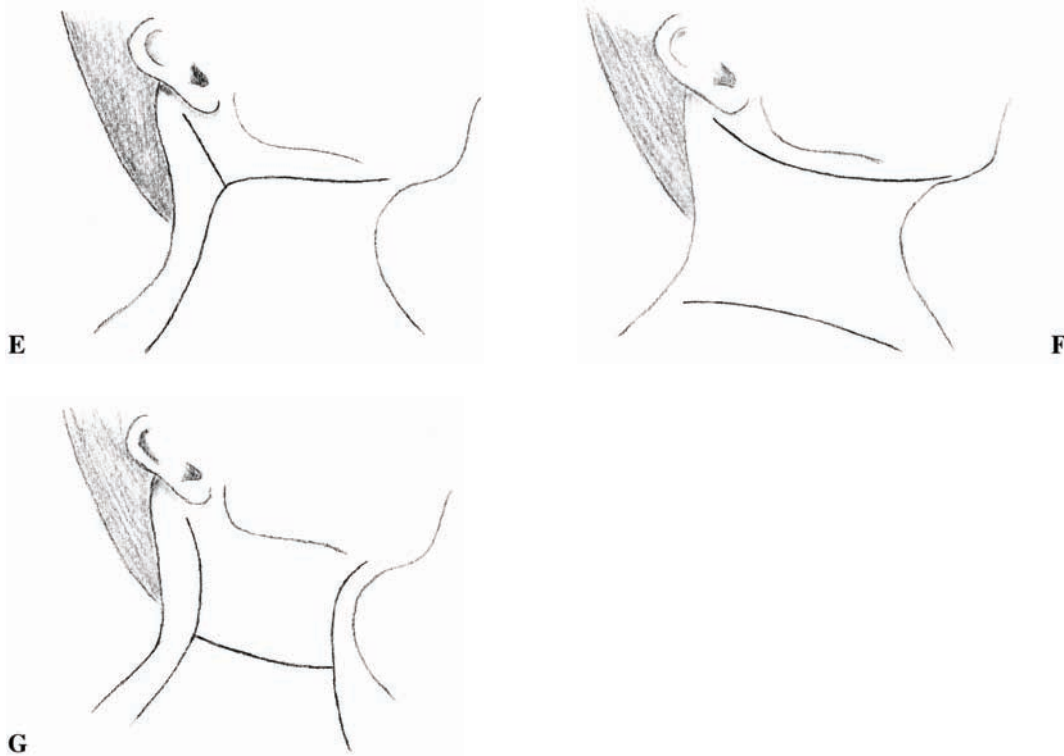


Figure 4-6 Some popular skin incisions for functional and selective neck dissection. (A) Gluck incision for unilateral and bilateral neck dissection. (B) Double-Y incision of Martin. (C) Single-Y incision. (D) Schobinger incision. (E) Conley incision. (F) Mac Fee incision. (G) H incision.

- Protect the carotid artery if the sternocleidomastoid muscle has to be sacrificed.
- Include scars from previous procedures (e.g., surgery, biopsy, etc.).
- Consider the location of the primary tumor.
- Facilitate the use of reconstructive techniques.
- Contemplate the potential need of postoperative radiotherapy.
- Produce acceptable cosmetic results.

A number of skin incisions may be used for neck dissection (Fig. 4-6). A popular incision in our practice is the classic *Gluck* incision (Fig. 4-6A), which is basically an apron flap incision, with a vertical posterolateral arm to approach the supraclavicular area. For a bilateral functional neck dissection the incision extends between both mastoid tips, crossing the midline at the level of the cricoid arch. This incision allows good exposure when the neck dissection is to be combined with total or partial laryngectomy. Sometimes the vertical arm can be avoided by prolonging the apron flap in a posteroinferior direction, thus producing a better cosmetic result. When the operation includes a total laryngectomy the tracheostomy is usually incorporated in the incision. On the other hand, for partial laryngectomies and other tumors requiring temporary tracheostomy, a small independent horizontal incision is made at the level of the second tracheal ring for the tracheostomy.

The *double-Y* incision of Martin (Fig. 4-6B) is also popular for functional and selective neck dissection. A chin extension may be used when the removal of the primary tumor requires an intraoral approach. A well-known disadvantage of this incision is the compromise to the blood supply, especially in the two crossings of the incision. Thus, the vertical arm of the incision should



be placed posterior to the carotid artery. The cosmetic result is improved by giving the vertical arm a slightly S-shaped curve.

The *single-Y* incision (Fig. 4-6C) avoids one of the crossings of the double-Y incision but makes the dissection of the supraclavicular fossa difficult.

The *Schobinger* flap (Fig. 4-6D) is also designed to protect the carotid artery by means of a large anteriorly based skin flap. However the blood supply to the posterosuperior part of the flap is not good and, occasionally, this area becomes devitalized.

The *Conley* modification (Fig. 4-6E) of the *Schobinger* flap brings the posterosuperior arm of the incision a little further anteriorly. The vertical arm of the incision is extended more posteriorly, toward the lateral third of the clavicle.

The incisions commonly used for radical neck dissection in previously irradiated patients may also be used for functional neck dissection. These include the Mac Fee parallel transverse incision (Fig. 4-6F) and the H incision (Fig. 4-6G). They both allow a good preservation of the blood supply to the skin flaps. The Mac Fee incision has excellent cosmetic results. However, the approach to the neck is not as good as with other incisions. Because a functional approach to the neck is not possible in previously irradiated patients where no fascial spaces remain after radiation, this incision is not commonly used for functional procedures. However, it may be useful for modified radical neck dissection when the extension of nodal disease allows preservation of some neck structures. Many other skin incisions may be used depending on the clinical characteristics of the lesion and the personal preference of the surgeon.

After the incision is completed, the skin flaps are elevated deep to the platysma muscle, preserving the superficial layer of the cervical fascia (Fig. 4-7). Preservation of the external lymphatic envelope allows further fulfillment of the basic anatomical principle of the functional approach (i.e., removal of the fascial walls of the lymphatic container along with the lymphatic tissue of the neck).

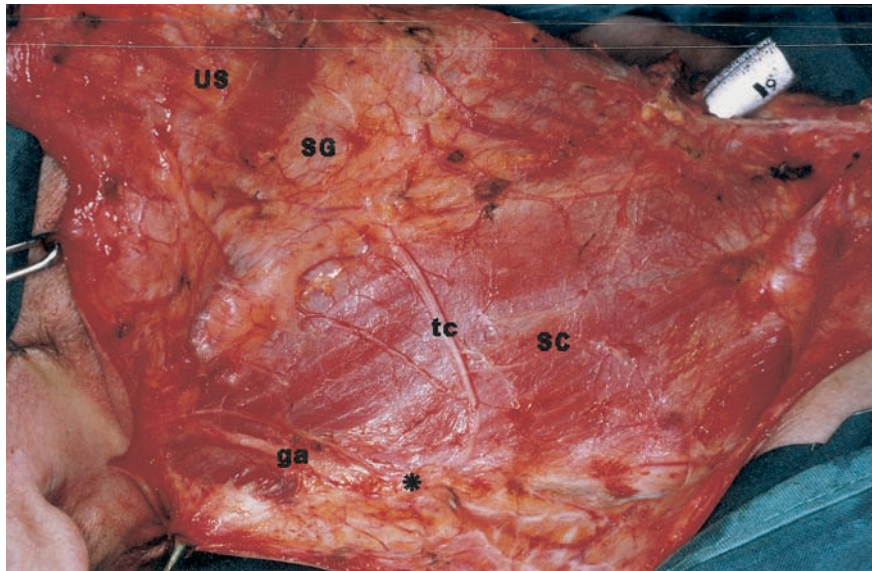


Figure 4-7 The skin flaps have been raised, preserving the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia (right side). US, upper skin flap; SG, submandibular gland; tc, transverse cervical branch from the superficial cervical plexus; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; ga, great auricular nerve; *, Erb's point.

The limits for a complete functional neck dissection are similar to those of the classic radical neck dissection (Fig. 4-8). The surgical field should expose superiorly the inferior border of the mandible and the tail of the parotid gland. Inferiorly, the flap should be raised up to the level of the clavicle and the sternal notch. The midline of the neck will be the anterior border of the surgical field for a unilateral neck dissection. Finally, the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle in the upper part of the surgical field, and the anterior border of the trapezius muscle in the lower half of the neck, constitute the posterior boundary of the dissection. After the flaps have been raised, the underlying neck structures can be seen shining through the superficial layer of the cervical fascia (Figs. 4-7, 4-8).

The flaps must be protected by means of wet surgical sponges. Frequent moistening of the sponges will help to keep the skin flaps in good condition throughout the operation. It should be remembered that this may be a long operation since neck dissection is often performed in conjunction with removal of the primary tumor and, in some instances, reconstructive procedures. Thus, all efforts should be made to preserve the skin in good condition until the end of the procedure.

DISSECTION OF THE STERNOCLEIDOMASTOID MUSCLE

Usually, the first step of the operation is the dissection of the fascia that covers the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The goal of this maneuver is to completely unwrap the muscle from its surrounding fascia.

Prior to approaching the fascia of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the external jugular vein must be ligated and divided. Usually, three sections of the external jugular vein are required in functional and selective neck dissection (Fig. 4-9): (1) at the tail of the parotid gland, where the

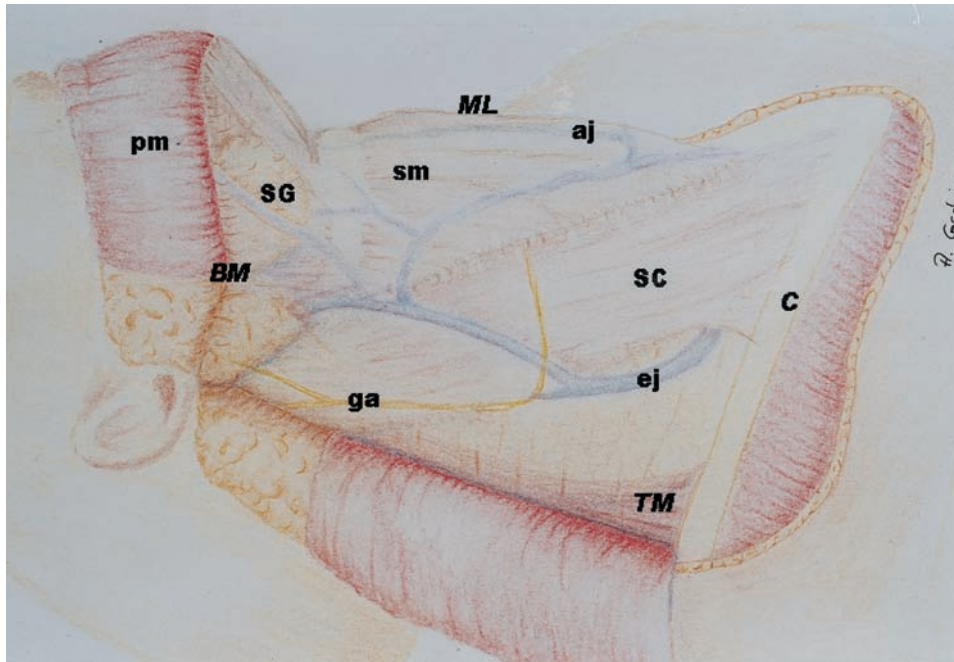


Figure 4-8 Boundaries of a complete functional neck dissection on the right side of the neck. *ML*, midline; *BM*, inferior border of the mandible; *C*, clavicle; *TM*, trapezius muscle; *ga*, great auricular nerve; *SC*, sternocleidomastoid muscle; *sm*, strap muscles; *pm*, platysma muscle; *ej*, external jugular vein; *aj*, anterior jugular vein; *SG*, submandibular gland.

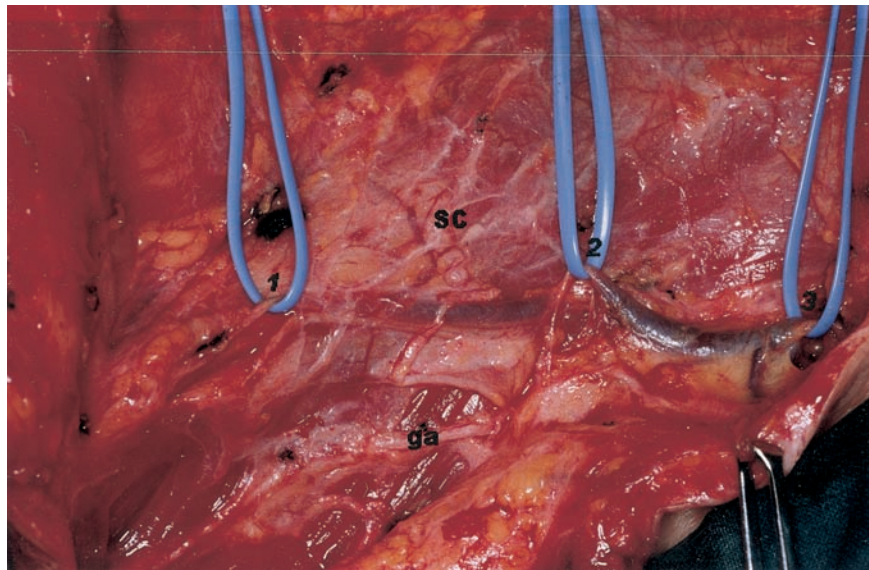


Figure 4-9 Points of division of the external jugular vein on a right functional neck dissection. *1*, tail of the parotid gland; *2*, posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle; *3*, supraclavicular fossa; *SC*, sternocleidomastoid muscle; *ga*, great auricular nerve.

external jugular vein begins by the union of the retromandibular and posterior auricular veins; (2) at the external surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle; and (3) at a later step of the operation, within the posterior triangle of the neck when this nodal region is included in the dissection.

The dissection of the sternocleidomastoid muscle begins with a longitudinal incision over the fascia, along the entire length of the muscle. This cut is made with a number 10 knife blade and must be placed near the posterior border of the muscle (Fig. 4-10). This facilitates the dissection of the sternocleidomastoid muscle because the cleavage plane between the fascia and the muscle is much easier to identify in a forward direction. The external jugular vein should be thus transected as close to the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle as possible. The vein is then included in the specimen and dissected forward with the fascia of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 4-11).

Using several hemostats, one of the assistants retracts the fascia medially while the surgeon carries the dissection toward the anterior margin of the muscle (Fig. 4-11). Fascial retraction should be done with extreme care because the thin superficial layer of the cervical fascia is the only tissue now included in the specimen.

We strongly recommend performing this, as well as most other parts of the operation, using knife dissection. The fascial planes of the neck are mainly avascular and can be easily followed with the scalpel. For knife dissection to be most effective the tissue must be under traction. An important task of the assistants throughout the operation is to apply adequate pressure to the dissected tissue.

When the dissection reaches the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle the hemostats that have been used to retract the fascia may be left lying on the medial part of the surgical field hanging toward the opposite side. This will maintain the required amount of traction while freeing the assistants' hands. Then the muscle is retracted posteriorly to continue the dissection over its medial face. Retraction is performed initially by one of the assistants, who holds the muscle posteriorly by means of a retractor, while the surgeon continues the dissection over the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 4-12). When the dissection reaches the deep medial face of the muscle

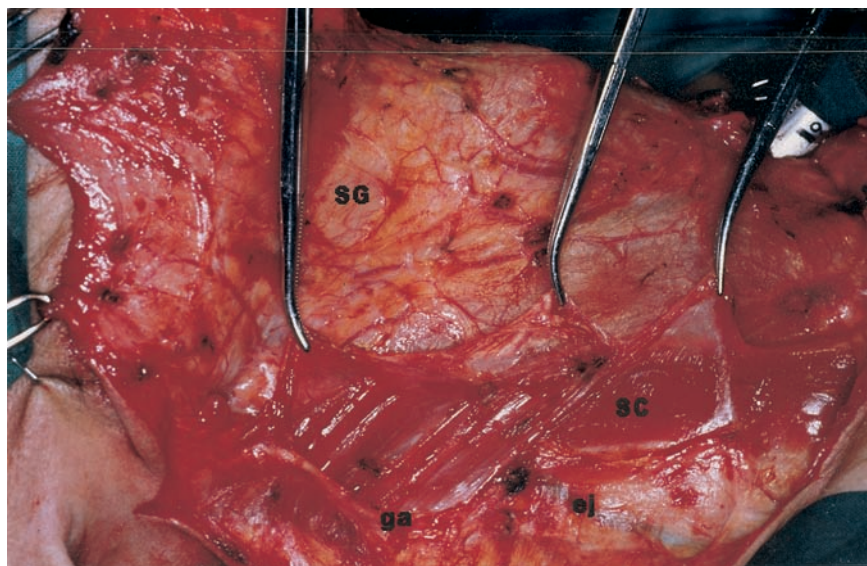


Figure 4-10 Incision of the fascia over the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the right side. Note the posterior placement of the incision with respect to the muscle. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; SG, submandibular gland; ej, external jugular vein; ga, great auricular nerve.

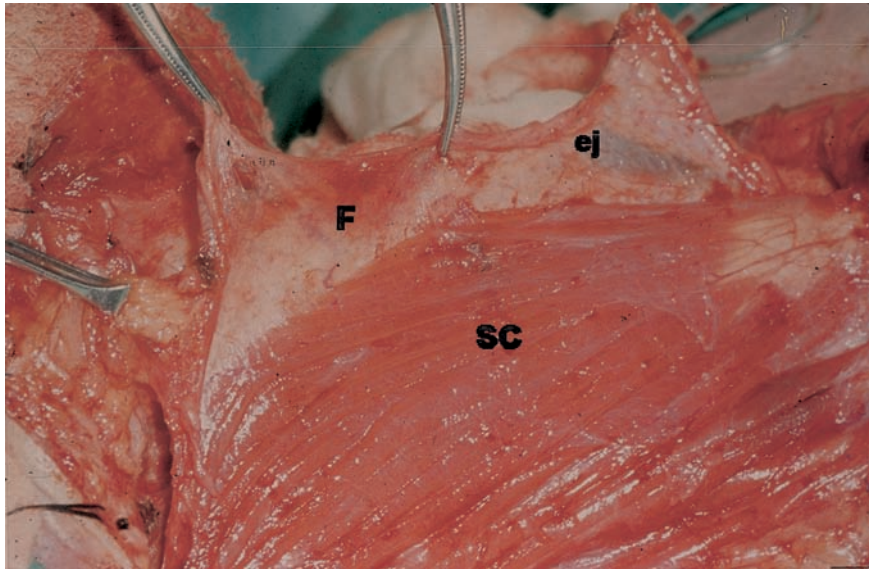


Figure 4-11 The fascia of the sternocleidomastoid muscle is dissected medially. The external jugular vein is included in the fascia (right side). ej, external jugular vein; F, fascia; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle.

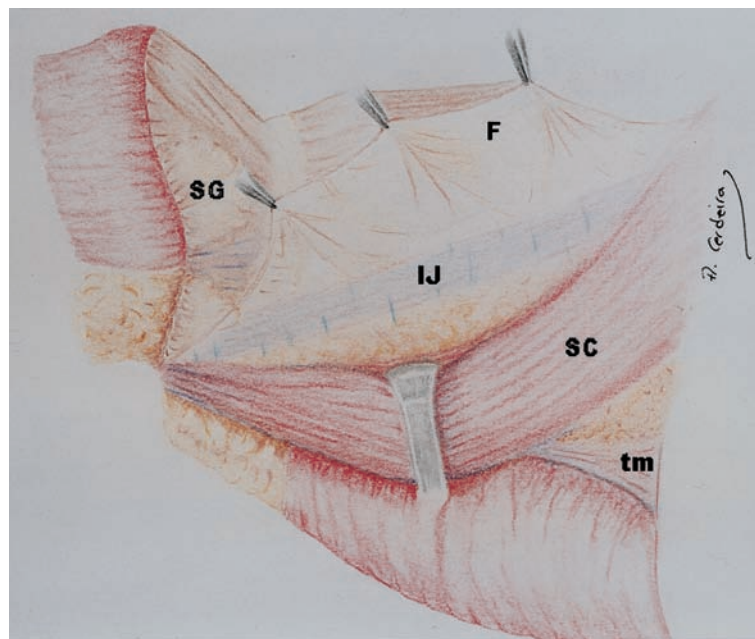


Figure 4-12 Lateral retraction of the sternocleidomastoid muscle allows the dissection of the medial surface of the muscle. The dissected fascia is carefully pulled medially (right side). IJ, internal jugular vein shining through the fascia; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; F, dissected fascia; tm, trapezius muscle; SG, submandibular gland.

(close to the carotid sheath) the retractor is removed and further separation of the sternocleidomastoid muscle is performed by the surgeon using a hand with a gauze pad.

Until this point, the cleavage plane between the muscle and the fascia is avascular. However, when the deep medial face of the muscle is approached, small perforating vessels are found entering the muscle through the fascia (Fig. 4-13). The assistant must now cauterize the vessels while the surgeon continues the dissection over the entire medial surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The surgeon must be extremely careful at the upper half of this region, where the spinal accessory nerve enters the muscle. One or more small vessels usually accompany the spinal accessory nerve, which often divides before entering the muscle. The vessels should be cauterized without injuring the nerve, and all branches of the nerve must be preserved to obtain the best shoulder function. More details concerning the dissection of the spinal accessory nerve are given in a later stage of the operation.

After all the small vessels entering the sternocleidomastoid muscle have been cauterized, a new avascular fascial plane is entered and the dissection continues posteriorly along the entire length of the muscle. The internal jugular vein can now be seen through the fascia of the carotid sheath (Fig. 4-14).

The muscle is now almost completely separated from its covering fascia except for a small portion at the posterior border. This part of the muscle will be dissected in a later stage of the procedure. Wet surgical sponges are now introduced in the lower half of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, between the muscle and its dissected fascia. They will serve two purposes: (1) maintain the desired moisture of the dissected tissues while the attention shifts to the upper part of the surgical field, and (2) serve as a reference for the dissection of the fascia that still covers the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, in a later stage of the operation.

The surgeon now moves to the upper part of the surgical field to complete the identification of the spinal accessory nerve. For a better understanding of the following steps of the operation, at this point it may help the reader to take a short pause in the technical details to realize how the surgical approach is made with respect to the sternocleidomastoid muscle when the posterior triangle is included in the resection.

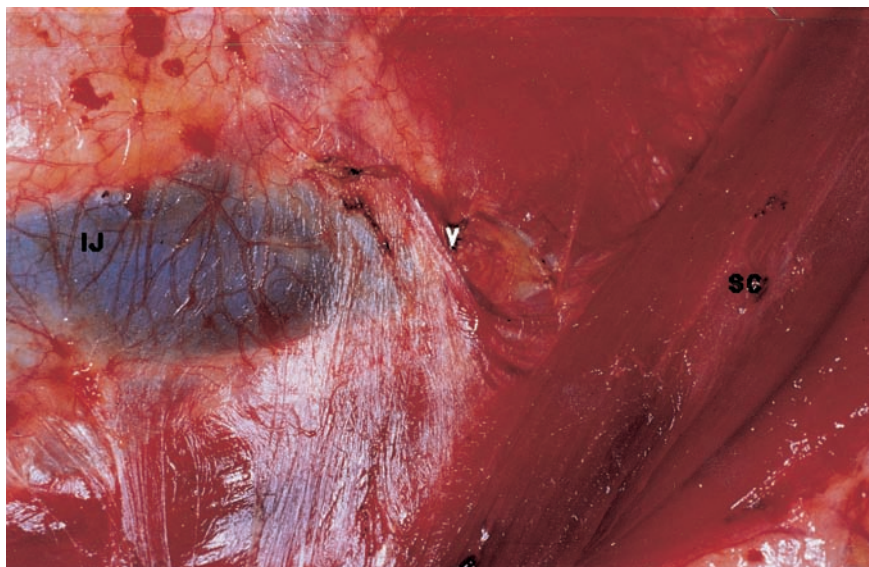


Figure 4-13 Small vessels enter the sternocleidomastoid muscle through its medial face (right side). SC, Sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted laterally; IJ, Internal jugular vein shining through the fascia; V, Vascular pedicle entering the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

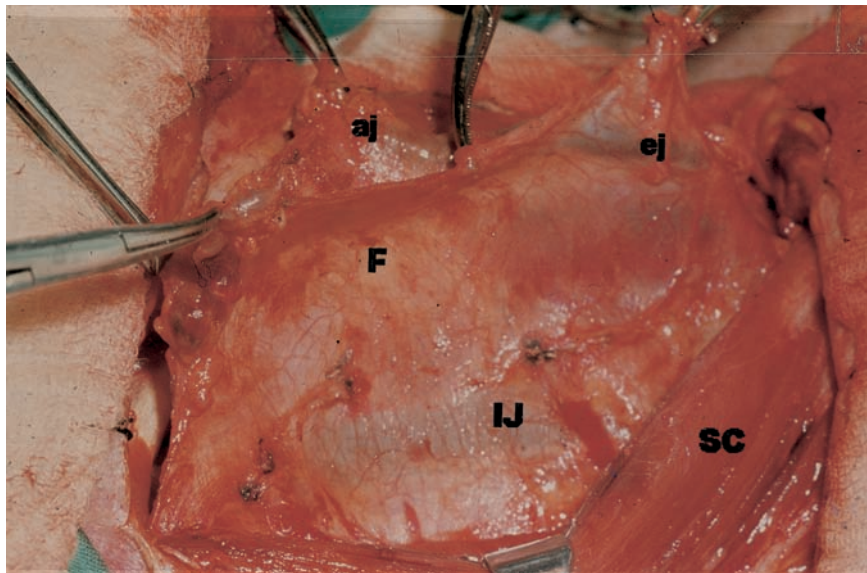


Figure 4-14 The dissection of the medial face of the sternocleidomastoid muscle has been completed (right side). IJ, internal jugular vein; ej, external jugular vein; aj, anterior jugular vein; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; F, dissected fascia.

MANAGEMENT OF THE STERNOCLEIDOMASTOID MUSCLE

Including the posterior triangle of the neck in the field of dissection requires a combined approach, both posterior and anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 4-15). In the upper half of the neck the dissection is performed anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle, whereas in the lower half of the neck the supraclavicular fossa is approached posterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

To better understand this, imagine the surgical field divided horizontally in two halves by a line passing through Erb's point, the place where the superficial branches of the cervical plexus appear at the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. This creates an upper and a lower part of the neck.

The upper half of this division includes the submental and submandibular nodes (area I), the upper part of the posterior triangle of the neck (upper part of area V), and part of the lymphatic chain of the internal jugular vein (area II and part of area III). The dissection of the upper half of this division is performed anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. For this purpose, the muscle must be retracted posteriorly throughout the dissection.

The lower half of this imaginary division includes the supraclavicular fossa (lower part of area V), the lower part of the lymphatic chain of the internal jugular vein (area IV and part of area III), and the paratracheal lymph nodes (area VI). These regions will be approached both posterior and anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The supraclavicular fossa will be dissected from behind the muscle, and the remaining lymph structures of the lower half of the neck will be approached anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

For the surgical specimen to be removed en bloc, the tissue removed from the supraclavicular fossa will be passed beneath the sternocleidomastoid muscle to meet the remaining part of the specimen. This maneuver, which has always been difficult to understand, is detailed in the following text.

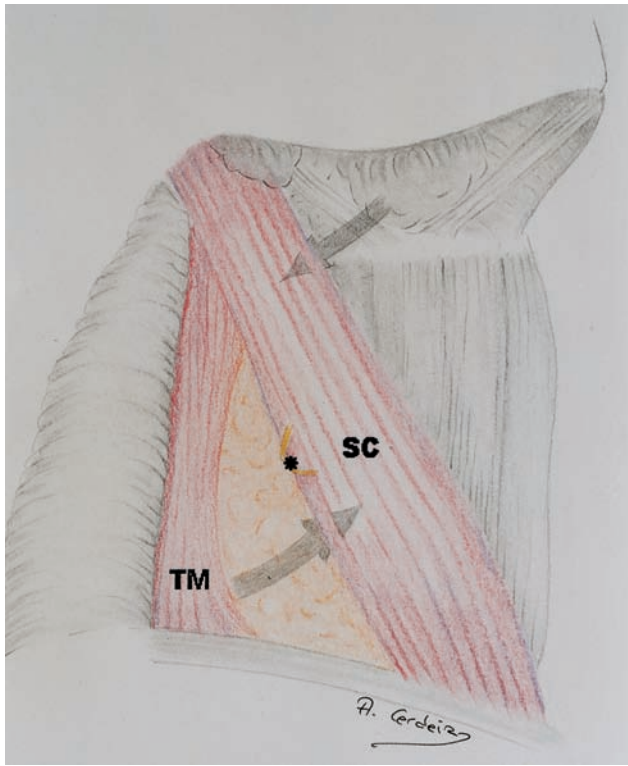


Figure 4-15 Schematic view of the approach to the neck for a complete functional neck dissection. Above Erb's point the operation is performed anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The lower part of the posterior triangle (supraclavicular fossa) is approached posterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; TM, trapezius muscle; *, Erb's point.

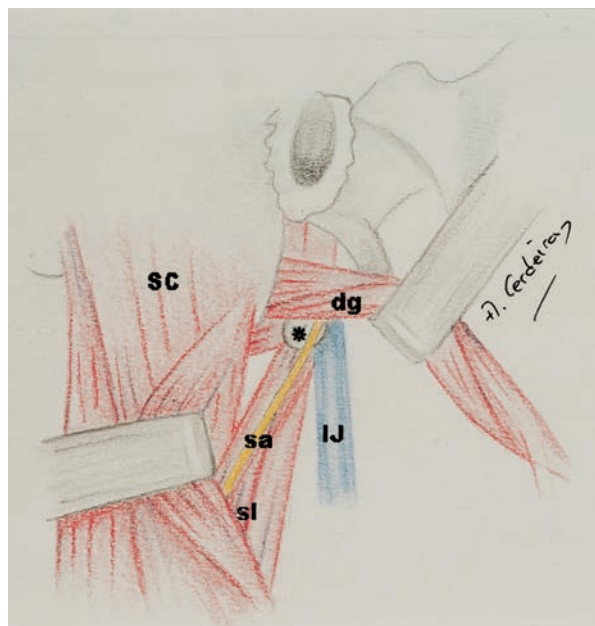


Figure 4-16 Anatomical landmarks for the identification of the spinal accessory nerve on its course between the internal jugular vein and the sternocleidomastoid muscle (right side). *, transverse process of the atlas; sa, spinal accessory nerve; IJ, internal jugular vein; dg, digastric muscle; sl, splenius cervicis and levator scapulae muscles; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Now we shall resume the dissection at the point where we left it. The sternocleidomastoid muscle was almost completely free of its fascia, except for a small part at the posterior edge of the muscle, and the attention of the surgeon was directed to the upper part of the surgical field to identify the spinal accessory nerve on its course between the jugular foramen and the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

IDENTIFICATION OF THE SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE

The main goal of this step of the operation is to locate the nerve at the entrance of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The dissection of the entire course of the nerve between the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the internal jugular vein will be performed in a later step of the procedure.

The spinal accessory nerve enters the sternocleidomastoid muscle approximately at the junction of the upper and middle third of the muscle. The transverse process of the atlas serves as a useful anatomical landmark (Fig. 4-16).

Adequate exposure of the area requires posterior retraction of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The small vessels that usually go along with the nerve are carefully cauterized and the nerve is examined for divisions that may appear before it enters the muscle. All nerve branches must be preserved to obtain the best shoulder function. Sometimes a branch from the second cervical nerve can be seen joining the spinal accessory nerve before its entrance into the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Although most anatomy books consider this and other branches from the cervical plexus to be mainly sensory, it is our experience that preservation of these branches helps to prevent shoulder dysfunction after the operation.

Once the nerve is identified, wet surgical sponges are introduced between the muscle and the fascia, avoiding excessive pressure and stretching maneuvers that may lead to spinal accessory nerve damage. The dissection now continues along the upper border of the surgical field.

DISSECTION OF THE SUBMANDIBULAR FOSSA

Removal of the submental and submandibular lymph nodes (area I) comes next. From a technical standpoint, this maneuver may be accomplished without removing the submandibular gland. In fact, preservation of the submandibular gland was originally described by Osvaldo Suárez as one of the advantages of the functional approach to the neck. However, the surgical treatment of most primary tumors that require the inclusion of level I as part of the dissection also requires the removal of the submandibular gland. On the other hand, those tumors in which the submandibular gland may be preserved without compromising the oncological safety of the operation, such as cancer of the larynx, hypopharynx, or thyroid gland, usually do not require the dissection of level I. Thus, to avoid centering the controversy where it is less necessary, the following description will present the surgical details of submandibular and submental lymph node removal (area I) including the resection of the submandibular gland (for technical details concerning submandibular gland preservation see Chapter 5).

Dissection of the submandibular and submental triangle starts with a fascial incision along the upper boundary of the surgical field, from the midline to the tail of the parotid gland (Fig. 4-17). Before reaching the deep plane, the anterior jugular vein must be ligated and divided. The fascia is then incised at the submental area and the tissue in the submental region is dissected inferiorly. The incision is continued posteriorly 1 cm below and parallel to the lower border of the mandible to avoid injuring the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve.

The marginal nerve runs superficially in the submandibular gland fascia (Fig. 4-18). Most of the times its identification is tedious and unnecessary. Safe preservation of this branch of the facial nerve may be accomplished by using the facial vein as a landmark. This maneuver begins with the identification of the facial vein at the lower border of the submandibular gland (Fig. 4-19A). The vein is then ligated and divided (Fig. 4-19B). The distal ligature is left long, with a hemostat attached, so that it can be reflected superiorly over the body of the mandible (Fig. 4-19C). As the

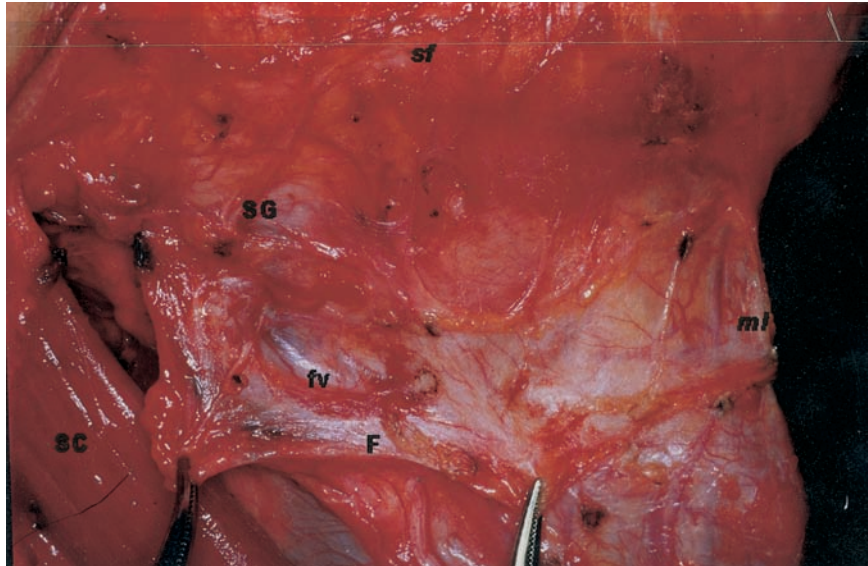


Figure 4-17 The fascia has been incised along the upper boundary of the surgical field and retracted inferiorly (right side). *sf*, superior skin flap; *ml*, midline of the neck; *F*, Fascia retracted inferiorly; *SC*, sternocleidomastoid muscle; *SG*, submandibular gland; *fv*, facial vein.

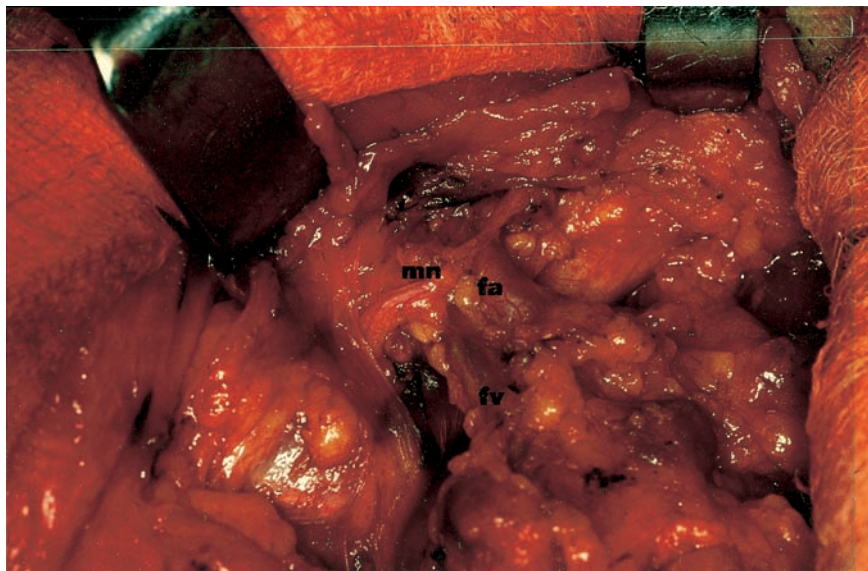


Figure 4-18 Marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve on the right side of the neck. *mn*, marginal nerve; *fv*, facial vein; *fa*, facial artery.

fascia and the distal stump of the anterior facial vein are retracted superiorly, the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve is taken away from the dissection that follows.

The dissection is then continued over the anterior border of the submandibular gland. The posterior border of the mylohyoid muscle is dissected free from the submandibular gland and retracted anteriorly. The dissection continues along the superior border of the submandibular

gland to identify the facial artery which may go superficial to, trough, or even posterior to the submandibular gland. The artery is ligated and divided, thus freeing the superior border of the gland. When the facial artery goes superficial to the submandibular gland it may be dissected from the submandibular gland and preserved (Fig. 4-20). At the anterosuperior border of the gland, the lingual nerve must be identified. This is accomplished by retracting the mylohyoid muscle medially and the submandibular gland in a posteroinferior direction. In so doing, the subman-

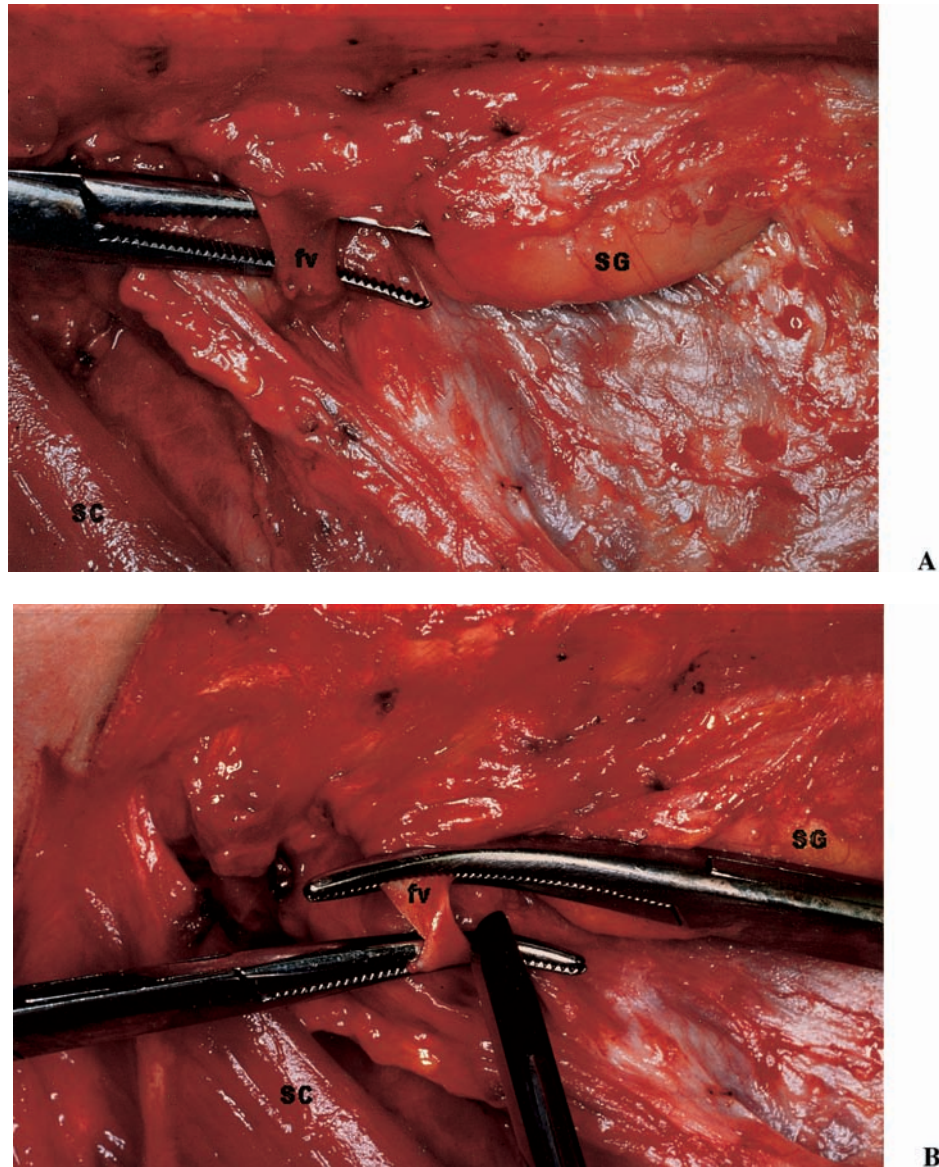


Figure 4-19 Surgical maneuver to preserve the marginal nerve on the right side of the neck. (A) The facial vein is identified immediately below the submandibular gland. (B) The vein is ligated and divided. (C) The distal ligature is left long and reflected superiorly. SG, submandibular gland; fv, facial vein; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; dl, distal ligature reflected superiorly.

continued on page 80

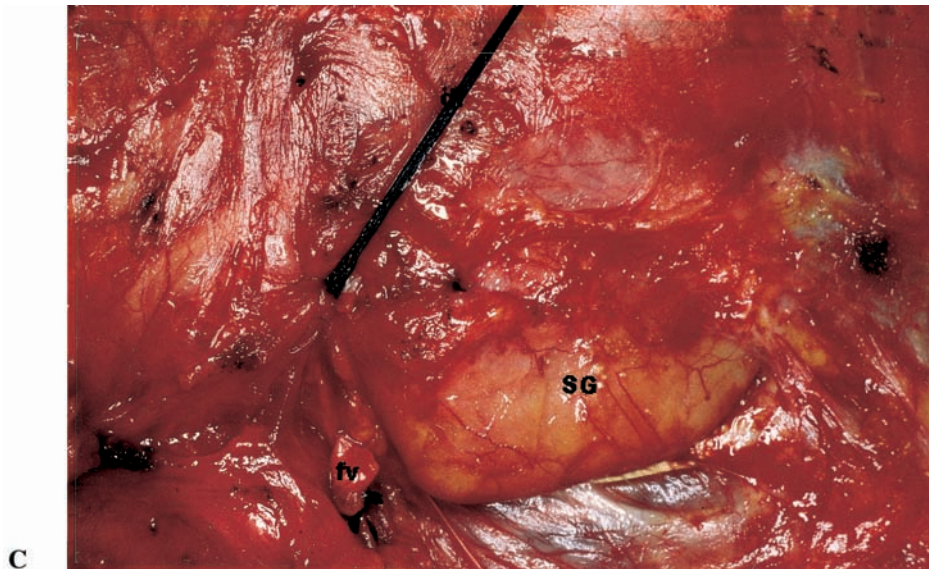


Figure 4-19 (continued)

dibular ganglion and its accompanying vein will bring the lingual nerve into the field (Fig. 4-21). The submandibular duct is identified inferior to the lingual nerve. A hemostat is placed across the submandibular ganglion and vein, and both structures are ligated and divided. This frees the lingual nerve, which retracts superiorly, out of the field. After it has been ligated and divided, the gland is retracted inferiorly to identify the genioglossus and hyoglossal muscles. The dissection is continued inferiorly on the medial side of the submandibular gland to identify the digastric muscle and the proximal end of the facial artery. If it was not previously preserved, the artery is ligated again immediately above the digastric muscle. The hypoglossal nerve is identified coursing in an

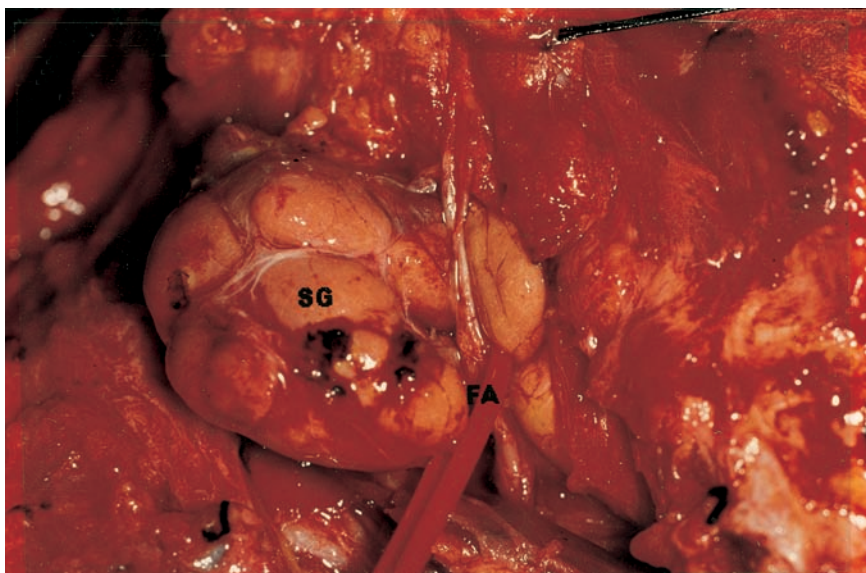


Figure 4-20 Facial artery running superficial to the right submandibular gland. SG, submandibular gland; FA, facial artery.

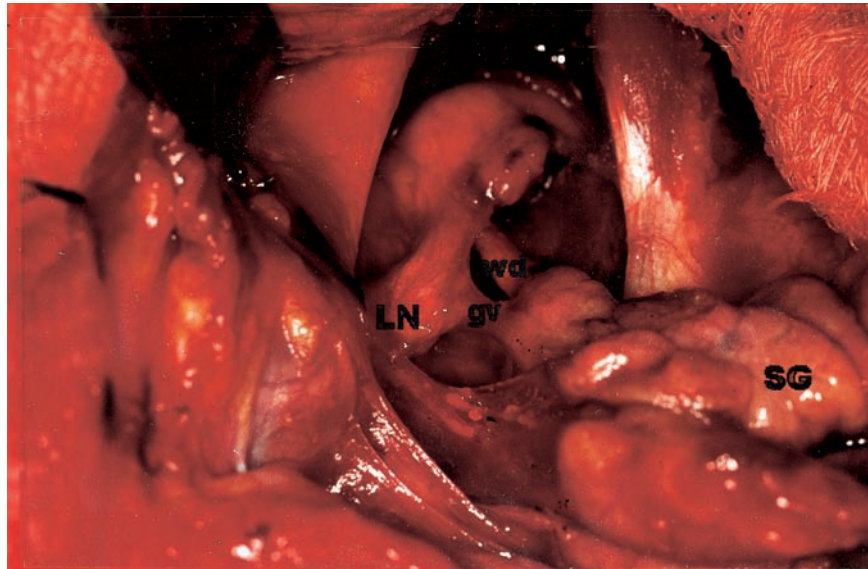


Figure 4-21 Lingual nerve in the submandibular fossa (right side). LN, lingual nerve; SG, submandibular gland; wd, Whartons's duct; gv, submandibular ganglion and accompanying vein.

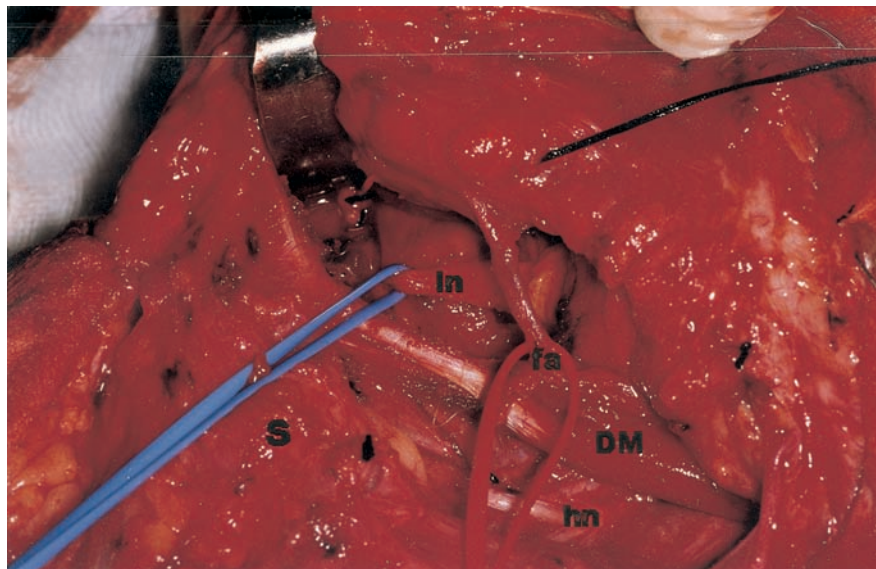


Figure 4-22 Right submandibular fossa after removal of the submandibular gland. DM, digastric muscle; fa, facial artery; ln, lingual nerve; hn, hypoglossal nerve; S, specimen including the submandibular gland and the lymphatic tissue from the submandibular region.

anterosuperior direction just above and medial to the anterior belly of the digastric muscle. This completely frees the submandibular gland (Fig. 4-22), which is included in the specimen along with the fibrofatty tissue containing the lymph nodes from the submandibular and submental regions (area I).

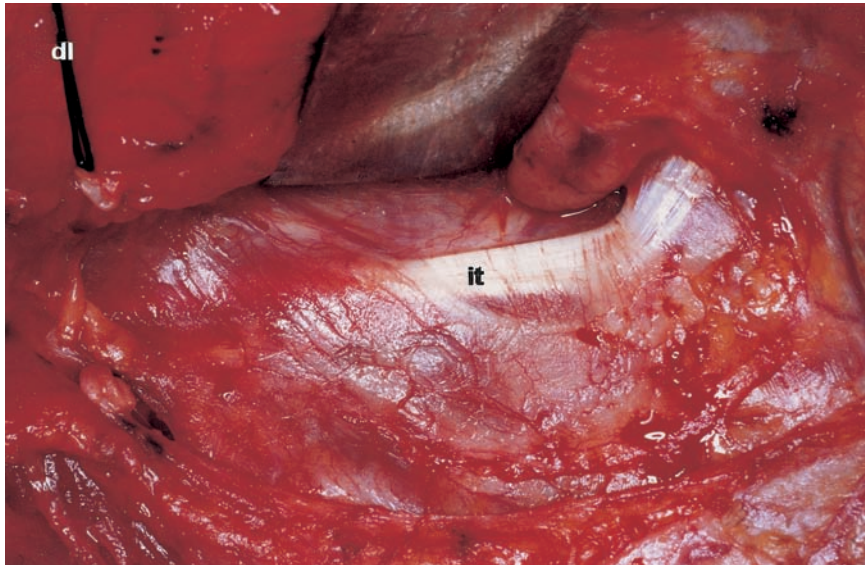


Figure 4-23 The posterior belly of the digastric muscle leads the forthcoming dissection (right side). it, intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle; dl, distal ligature of the facial vein.

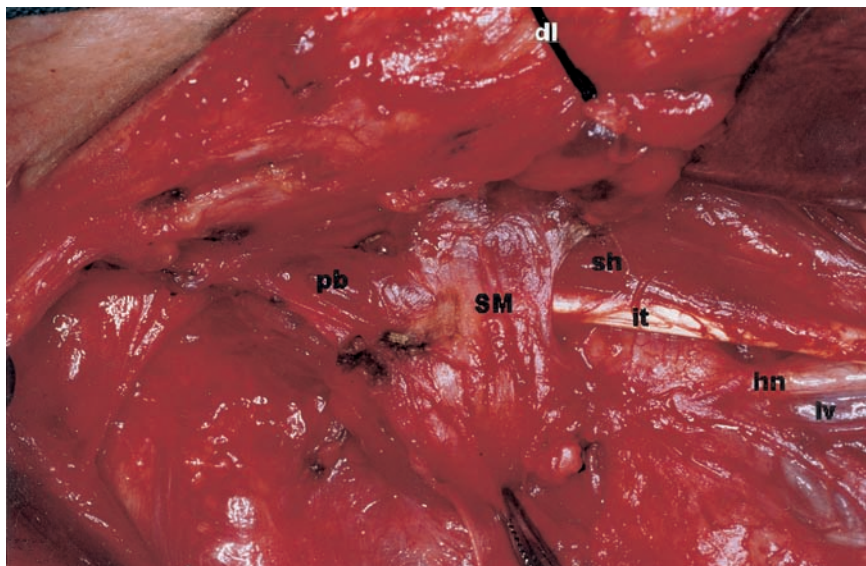


Figure 4-24 Section of the stylohyoid ligament on the right side of the neck. it, intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle; pb, posterior belly of the digastric muscle; sh, stylohyoid muscle; dl, distal ligature of the facial vein; SM, stylohyoid muscle; hn, hypoglossal nerve; lv, lingual vein.

The specimen is reflected inferiorly, and the fascia over the digastric and stylohyoid muscles is incised from the midline to the tail of the parotid gland (Fig. 4-23). Following the posterior belly of the digastric muscle the stylohyoid ligament is transected (Fig. 4-24). At this level, the retromandibular vein, the posterior auricular vein, and the external jugular vein are identified.

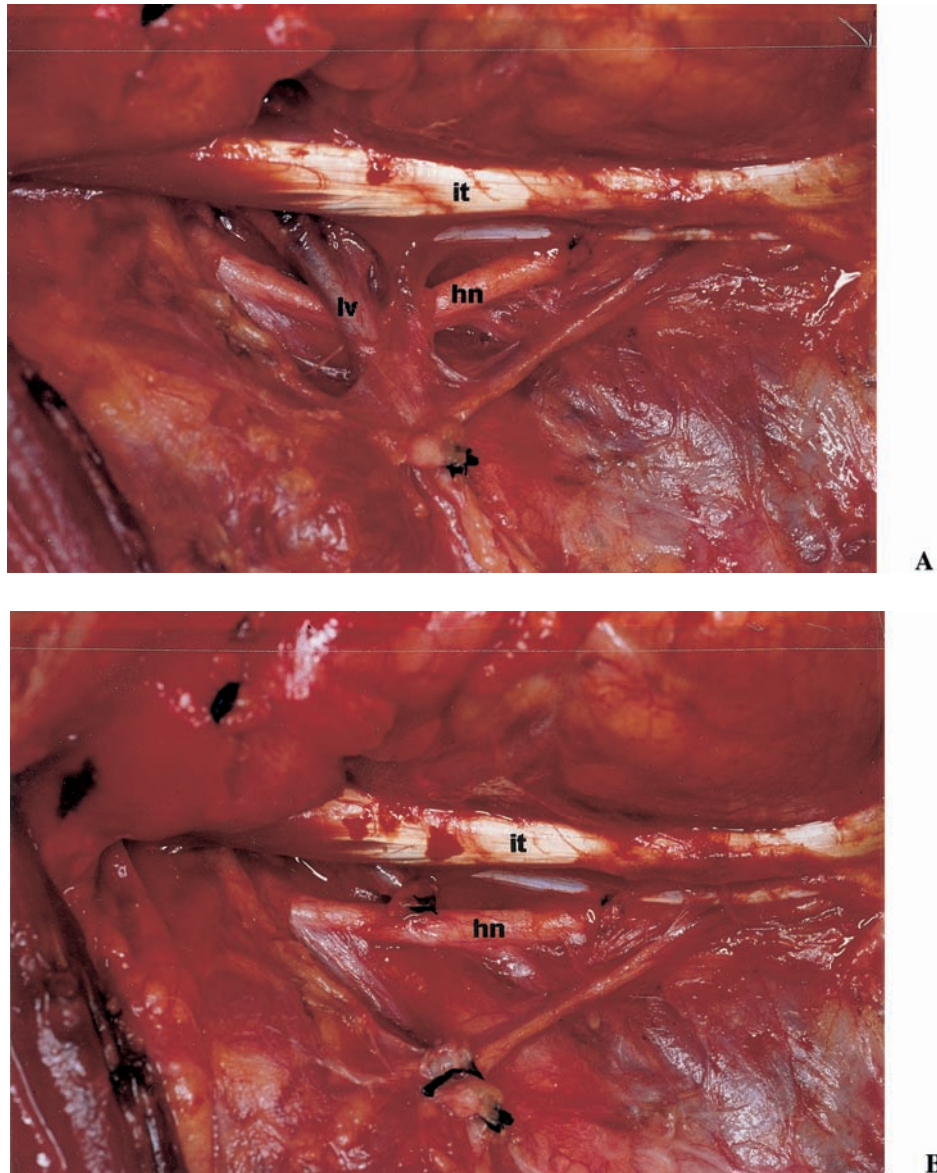


Figure 4-25 Hypoglossal nerve in the right submandibular fossa. (A) The hypoglossal nerve is identified underneath the intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle. A lingual vein can be seen crossing superficial to the nerve. (B) The lingual vein has been ligated and the nerve is separated from the lymphatic tissue in the submandibular triangle. hn, hypoglossal nerve; it, intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle; lv, lingual vein crossing the hypoglossal nerve.

They should be ligated and divided according to their anatomical distribution. Depending on the lower extension of the tail of the parotid gland, part of the gland may also be included in the resection. This will facilitate the visualization of the upper jugular nodes (upper part of area II) as well as include in the specimen the infraparotid lymph nodes.

The digastric and stylohyoid muscles are retracted superiorly, exposing the hypoglossal nerve as well as the lingual veins that follow and cross the nerve in this area (Fig. 4-25). The lingual veins

should be carefully ligated because they may be a source of troublesome bleeding. When bleeding occurs in this area, bipolar coagulation may be used instead of clamps and ligatures to avoid injury to the hypoglossal nerve.

The dissected tissue is finally pulled inferiorly and dissected free from the subdigastric and upper jugular spaces. At this moment, the specimen includes the submandibular and submental lymph nodes (area I), the uppermost jugular nodes (upper part of area II), and (optionally) the submandibular gland.

DISSECTION OF THE SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE

The dissection of the spinal accessory nerve is one of the few steps of the operation that we usually perform using scissors instead of scalpel. To approach this area the sternocleidomastoid muscle is retracted posteriorly, and the posterior belly of the digastric muscle is pulled superiorly with a smooth blade retractor (Fig. 4-26). The wet surgical sponges previously left over the nerve at the level of its entrance in the sternocleidomastoid muscle are removed and the nerve is dissected toward the carotid sheath.

At this level the nerve runs within the "lymphatic container" of the neck, thus forcing the surgeon to cut across the fibrofatty tissue instead of following fascial planes as for the rest of the operation. Consequently, the tissue overlying the nerve is divided and the nerve completely exposed from the sternocleidomastoid muscle to the internal jugular vein (Fig. 4-27).

As the dissection approaches the internal jugular vein, the surgeon must be aware of the relations between these two structures. Usually, the internal jugular vein lies immediately behind the proximal portion of the nerve. However, on some occasions the nerve may go behind the

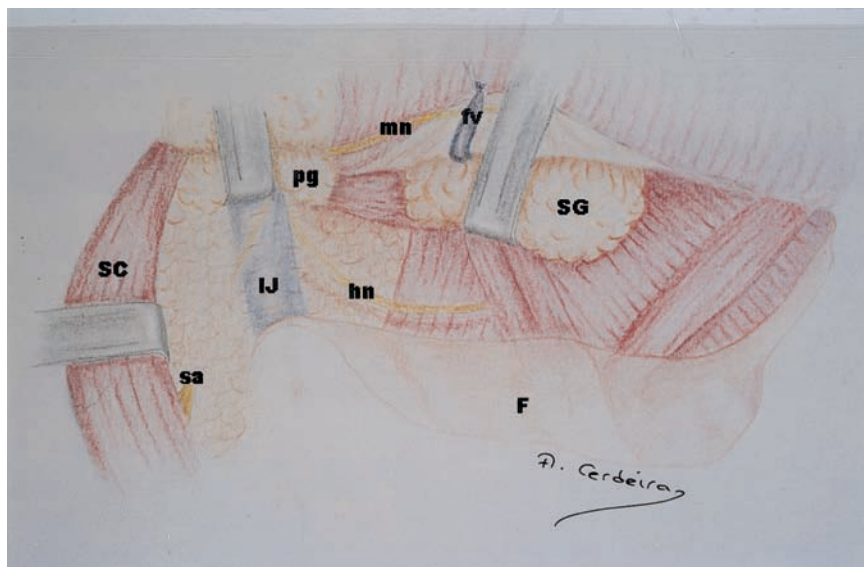


Figure 4-26 Surgical field prepared for the dissection of the spinal accessory area on the right side of the neck. SC, Sternocleidomastoid muscle; IJ, Internal jugular vein; sa, spinal accessory nerve; hn, hypoglossal nerve; mn, marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve; fv, facial vein; SG, submandibular gland; pg, tail of the parotid gland; F, fascia dissected from the upper part of the surgical field.

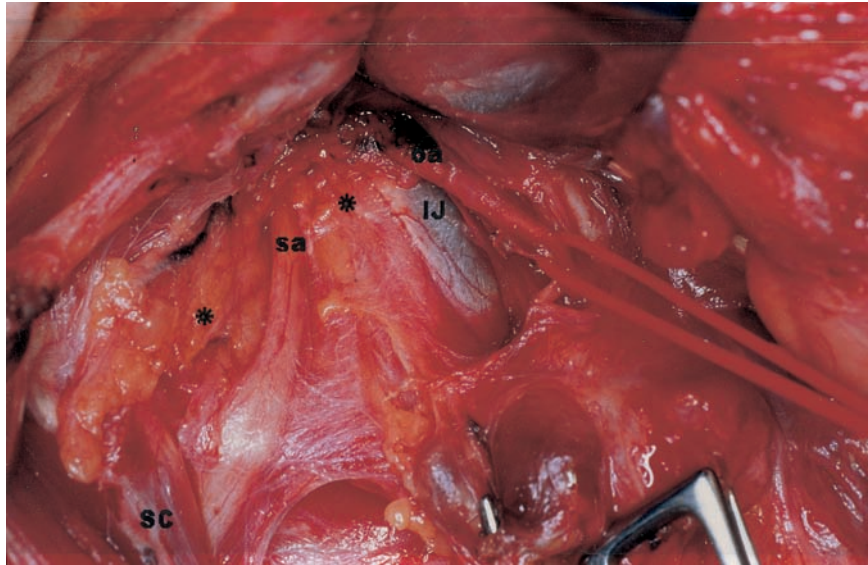


Figure 4-27 The spinal accessory nerve is completely exposed in the upper part of the field on the right side of the neck. sa, spinal accessory nerve; IJ, internal jugular vein; oa, occipital artery; SC, Sternocleidomastoid muscle; *, fibrofatty tissue of the upper jugular and upper spinal accessory regions.

vein or even across it (Fig. 4-28). These anatomical variations should be kept in mind to avoid unintentional damage to the internal jugular vein when following the spinal accessory nerve.

Once the spinal accessory nerve has been completely exposed, the tissue lying superior and posterior to the nerve must be dissected from the splenius capitis and levator scapulae muscles. The tissue is pulled in an anteroinferior direction toward the spinal accessory nerve.

It must be emphasized that the lymph nodes that are now being removed are located between the spinal accessory nerve and the internal jugular vein. This region corresponds to the ill-defined boundary between area II and the upper part of area V, which constitutes one of the weak points of the artificial lymph nodal region classification. The lymph nodes in this region belong to the spinal accessory nerve lymph chain and to the upper jugular lymph chain, and no clear anatomical landmarks can be found here to separate these two lymphatic chains (Fig. 4-29). Thus, the surgeon

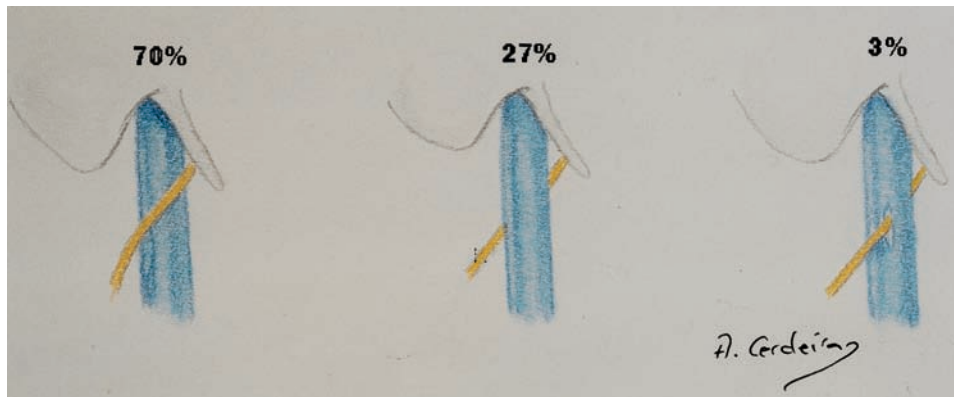


Figure 4-28 Anatomic relations between the spinal accessory nerve and the internal jugular vein.

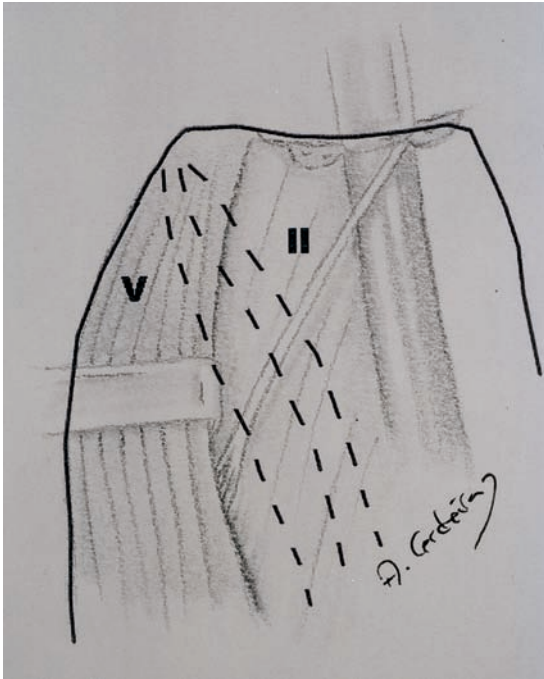


Figure 4-29 Posterior retraction of the sternocleidomastoid muscle distorts the theoretic limits between level II and the upper part of level V on an area without significant anatomic landmarks. The dotted lines show the variability of the boundaries between these two levels (right side).

must be especially careful during this step of the operation to avoid missing potentially metastatic lymph nodes behind.

The occipital and sternocleidomastoid arteries are often found at this step of the operation (Fig. 4-27). When seen, they must be ligated and divided. However, most of the time they are inadvertently sectioned during the removal of the lymphatic tissue in this area. If this happens it is usually easier to cauterize them instead of trying to place clamps and ligatures.

Once the dissected tissue reaches the level of the spinal accessory nerve it must be passed underneath the nerve to be removed in continuity with the main part of the specimen. Osvaldo Suárez referred to this step of the operation as "the spinal accessory maneuver" (Figs. 4-30, 4-31). After this maneuver has been completed, the specimen includes the fibrofatty tissue coming from the spinal accessory nerve area along with the tissue removed from the submandibular triangle (area I) and upper jugular region (Fig. 4-32).

Before moving to the next step of the operation, a final cut is made in this area that will help further dissection. Keeping the sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted posteriorly, a number 10 scalpel blade is used to make an incision into the tissue located below the entrance of the spinal accessory nerve into the sternocleidomastoid muscle. This cut is made just anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle and goes down to the level of Erb's point following the medial border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 4-33). The underlying levator scapulae muscle is identified and the tissue is slightly dissected forward and medially over its fascia. The rest of the dissection in this area will be completed later.

Again, wet surgical sponges are left around the spinal accessory nerve over the splenius capitis and levator scapulae muscles, and the dissection is taken to the supraclavicular fossa.

DISSECTION OF THE POSTERIOR TRIANGLE OF THE NECK

The supraclavicular fossa constitutes the lower part of area V. The need to include this area in the dissection has become one of the most controversial issues concerning functional and selective

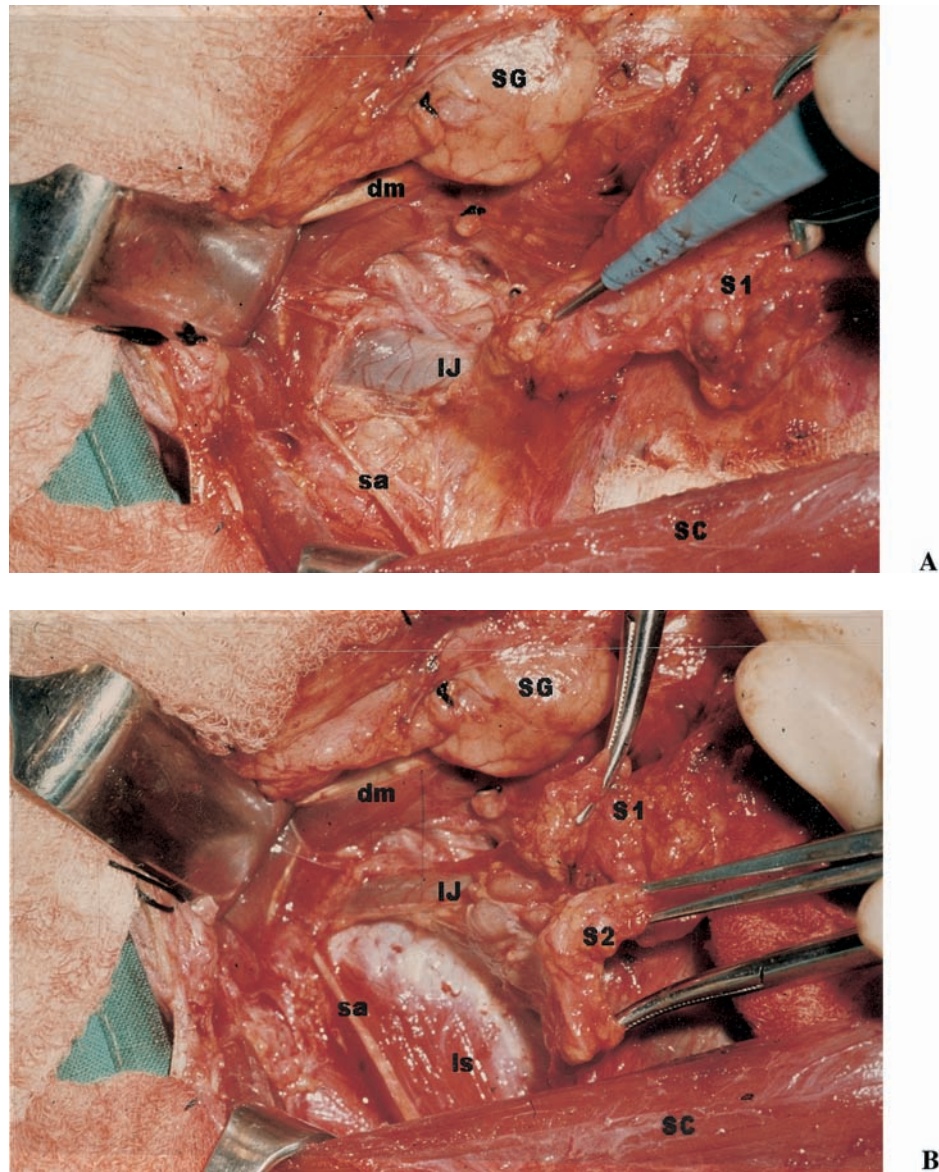


Figure 4-30 Spinal accessory maneuver on the right side of the neck. (A) The nerve is exposed between the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the internal jugular vein. (B) The fibrofatty tissue lying posterior and superior to the nerve is passed beneath the nerve. sa, spinal accessory nerve; IJ, internal jugular vein; SG, submandibular gland; dm, digastric muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; ls, levator scapulae muscle; S1, specimen from the submandibular and upper jugular area; S2, specimen from the upper spinal accessory and posterosuperior jugular area.

neck dissection. We remind the reader that this controversy is beyond the scope of this book. We are not discussing the indications for the inclusion of this region in the dissection. Nor are we suggesting that this should be considered an unavoidable part of functional neck dissection for every single head and neck tumor. As should be clear to those reaching this point of reading, *functional* is not a surgical technique, but a concept, and the description of a complete approach should mention the removal of all nodal groups in the neck.

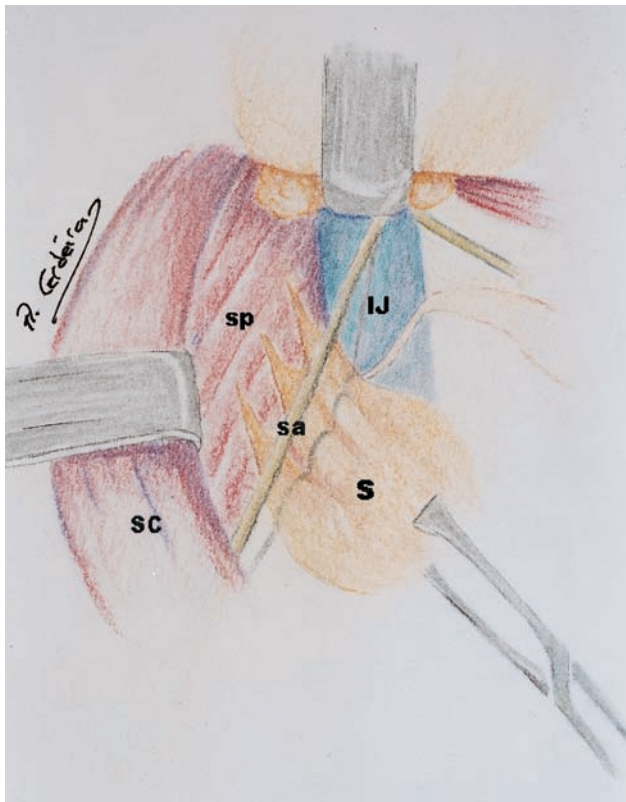


Figure 4-31 Artist's view of the spinal accessory maneuver on the right side of the neck. sa, spinal accessory nerve; IJ, internal jugular vein; S, specimen; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; sp, splenius capitis muscle.

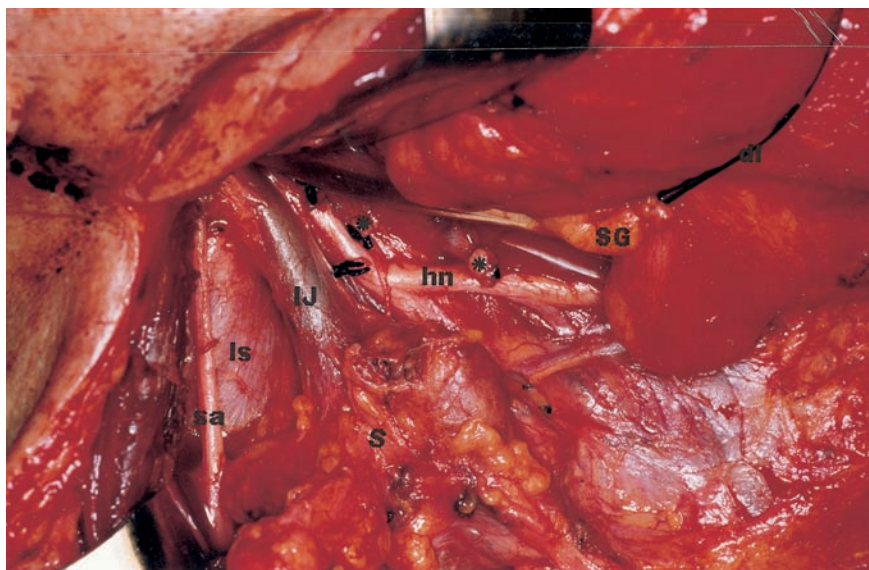


Figure 4-32 Anterior view of the surgical field after dissection of the upper cervical regions on the right side. IJ, internal jugular vein; sa, spinal accessory nerve; ls, levator scapulae muscle; hn, hypoglossal nerve; SG, submandibular gland; dl, distal ligation of the facial vein; *, divided lingual veins.

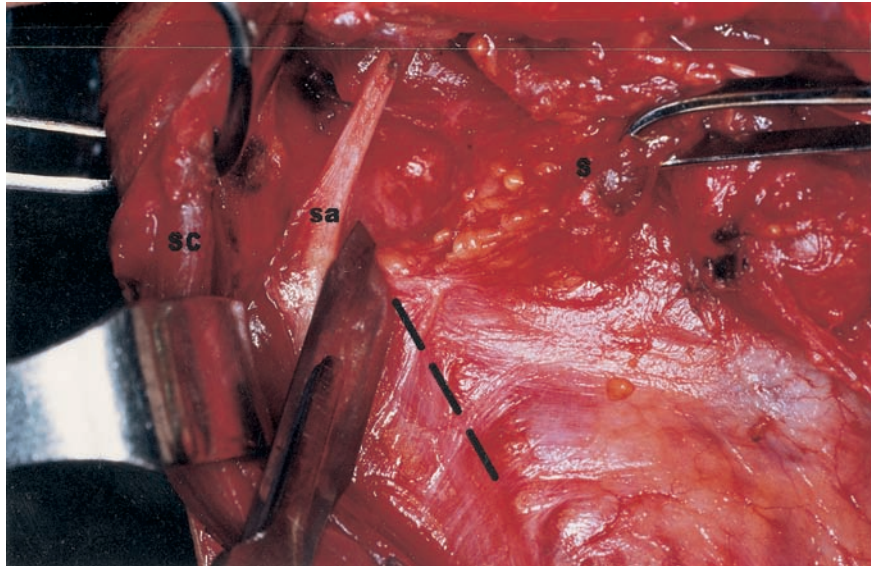


Figure 4-33 The spinal accessory maneuver has been completed. A final cut is made anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle (-----), between the spinal accessory nerve and the level of Erb's point (right side). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted posteriorly; sa, spinal accessory nerve; S, specimen from the upper jugular and spinal accessory area.

To facilitate the exposure of the supraclavicular area, this region is approached posterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The dissection begins with the removal of the fascia that still covers the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 4-34). It must be remembered that the fascia was dissected off the muscle up to its posterior border in a previous step of the operation (see

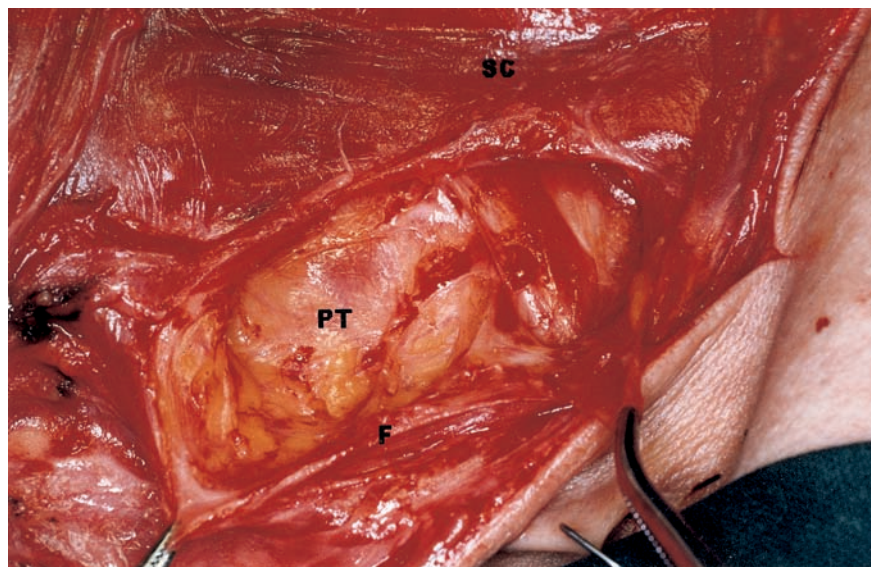


Figure 4-34 Dissection of the remaining fascia of the sternocleidomastoid muscle at the supraclavicular fossa (right side). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; F, fascia retracted laterally; PT, fibrofatty tissue of the supraclavicular fossa.

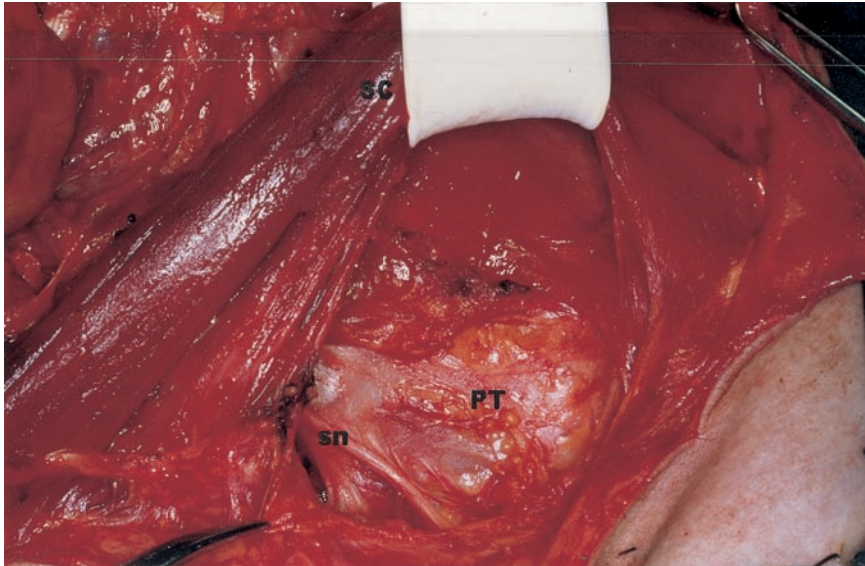


Figure 4-35 The sternocleidomastoid muscle is completely released from its surrounding fascia and is pulled medially to facilitate the dissection of the supraclavicular fossa (right side). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted medially; sn, supraclavicular branch of the cervical plexus; PT, fibrofatty tissue of the supraclavicular fossa.

Dissection of the Sternocleidomastoid Muscle). The wet surgical sponges left between the anteromedial aspect of the muscle and the dissected fascia are used as a reference to complete the fascial isolation of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Once completed, this maneuver results in a total release of the muscle from its surrounding fascia (Fig. 4-35).

The loose fibrofatty tissue of the supraclavicular fossa and the absence of well-defined dissection planes within this area make knife dissection ineffective here. Thus, for this step of the operation scissors and blunt dissection are preferred.

Some anatomical landmarks define the boundaries of the surgical field in the posterior triangle (Fig. 4-36). The inferior limit is located at the level of the clavicle. The posterior margin is clearly marked by the anterior edge of the trapezius muscle, and the upper boundary is defined by the exit of the spinal accessory nerve toward the trapezius muscle. The transverse cervical vessels and the omohyoid muscle constitute important anatomical landmarks within this area.

The sternocleidomastoid muscle is retracted anteriorly, and the external jugular vein is divided and ligated low in the neck if this was not done at a previous stage of the operation. The dissection then proceeds from the anterior border of the trapezius muscle in a medial direction including the lymphatic contents of the supraclavicular fossa. The upper margin of this area presents the greatest risk of damage to the spinal accessory nerve. The spinal accessory nerve leaves the sternocleidomastoid muscle deep to Erb's point and descends obliquely downward and backward toward the trapezius muscle. The position of the patient's head, along with the traction exerted by the surgeon during the dissection may displace the nerve from its original course, creating a slight anterior curvature where the nerve may be inadvertently damaged. Displacement of the nerve is due to its connections with the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves. During the dissection of this region several supraclavicular branches of the cervical plexus may be found. They follow a similar course but are located superficial to the spinal accessory nerve (Fig. 4-37). Although the difference between the eleventh nerve and the supraclavicular branches is easily noticed, the novice surgeon may sometimes find this to be difficult.

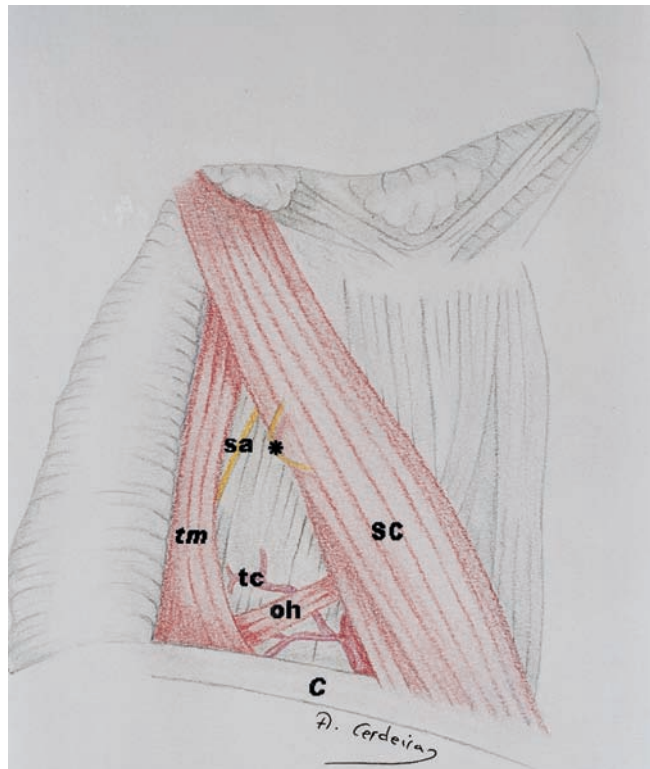


Figure 4-36 Boundaries of the dissection and anatomic landmarks in the posterior triangle. C, clavicle; tm, trapezius muscle; sa, spinal accessory nerve; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle; tc, transverse cervical artery; *, Erb's point.

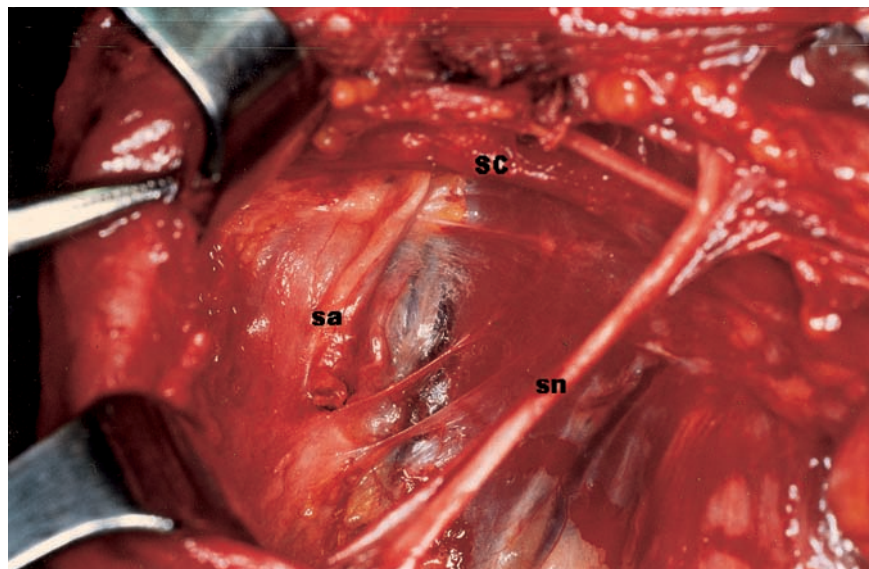


Figure 4-37 The spinal accessory nerve crossing the posterior triangle of the neck on the right side. Note the supraclavicular branch of the cervical plexus following a similar but more superficial course. sa, spinal accessory nerve; sn, supraclavicular branch of the cervical plexus; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle (posterior border).

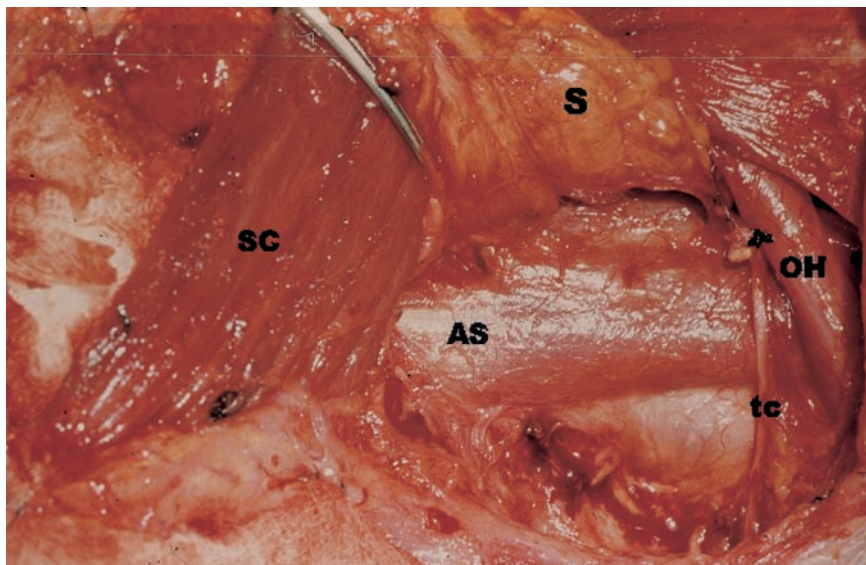


Figure 4-38 Dissection of the right supraclavicular fossa. tc, transverse cervical artery; OH, omohyoid muscle; AS, anterior scalene muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; S, specimen from the supraclavicular fossa.

The omohyoid muscle is then identified, and its fascia is dissected off the muscle to be removed with the contents of the posterior triangle. The muscle may be transected at this moment if this will be required for the removal of the primary tumor; otherwise it is preserved and retracted inferiorly with a smooth blade retractor. The transverse cervical vessels are identified deep to the omohyoid muscle (Fig. 4-38). Usually they are easily dissected free from the surrounding fibrofatty tissue, displaced inferiorly, and preserved. However, the numerous variations in the branches and the exact manner of branching of the thyrocervical trunk restrain the systematization of this step (Fig. 4-39).

The deep layer of the cervical fascia over the levator scapulae and scalene muscles is now visible (Fig. 4-38). The brachial plexus is easily identified as it appears between the anterior and middle scalene. Staying superficial to the scalene fascia prevents injuring the brachial plexus and the phrenic nerve (Fig. 4-40).

The dissection is continued medially until it reaches the level of the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The muscle is then pulled laterally with retractors and the contents of the supraclavicular fossa are passed underneath to meet the tissue previously dissected from the upper half of the neck. The sternocleidomastoid muscle is then retracted posteriorly, and the dissection continues anterior to the muscle toward the carotid sheath.

DISSECTION OF THE DEEP CERVICAL MUSCLES

If the previous steps have been properly performed, we will now have two main blocks of the dissection. The upper part includes the submandibular and submental triangles (area I), as well as the upper jugular and spinal accessory regions (upper part of areas II and V). The lower block includes the supraclavicular fossa (remaining part of area V). A small bridge of tissue still separates these two blocks and connects the specimen to the deep cervical muscles (Fig. 4-41). This bridge usually goes from just below the entrance of the spinal accessory nerve into the sternocleidomastoid muscle to a level just below Erb's point.

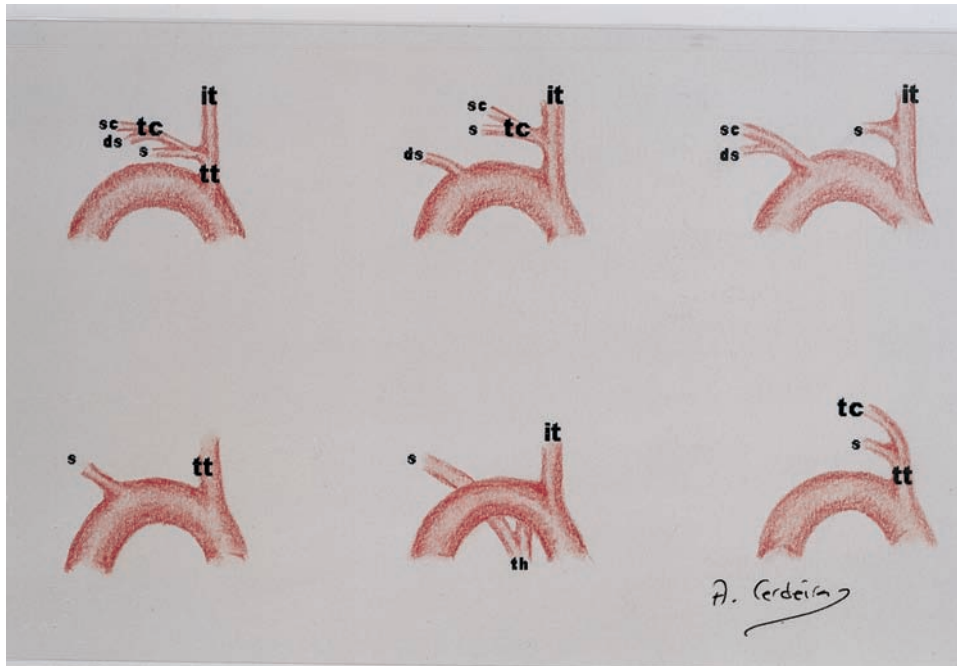


Figure 4-39 Variations in the branches of the thyrocervical trunk. tt, thyrocervical trunk; it, inferior thyroid artery; tc, transverse cervical artery; s, superficial cervical artery; ds, descending scapular artery; sc, suprascapular artery; th, internal thoracic artery.

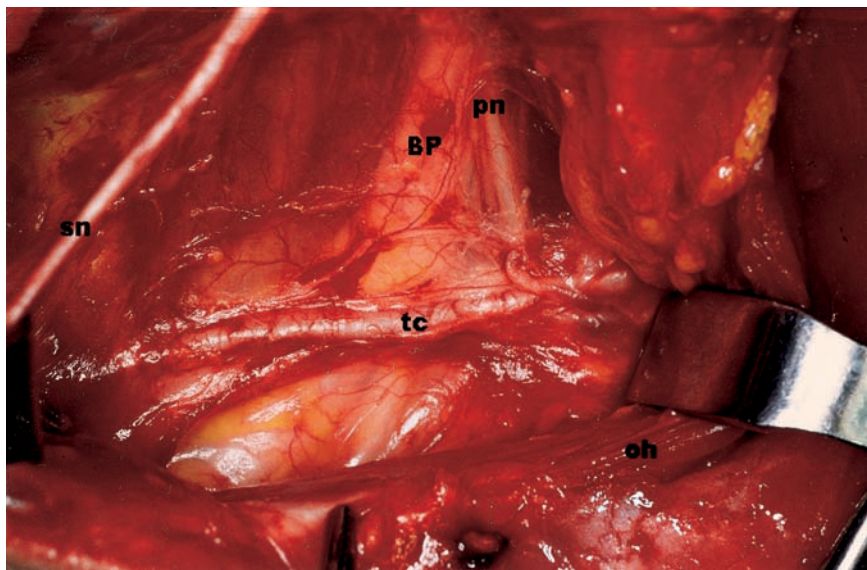


Figure 4-40 Anterior view of the anatomic landmarks on the right supraclavicular fossa. BP, Brachial plexus; pn, phrenic nerve; tc, transverse cervical artery; sn, supraclavicular branch of the cervical plexus; oh, omohyoid muscle retracted inferomedially.

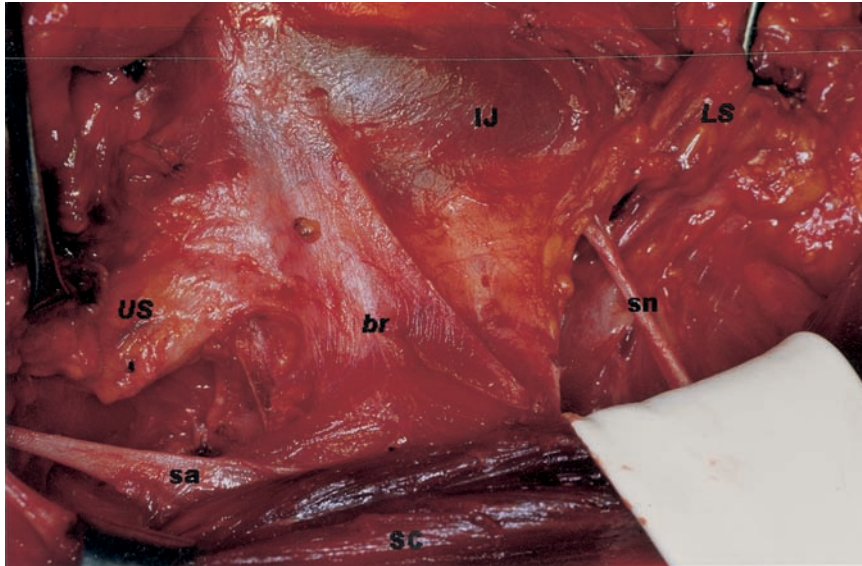


Figure 4-41 Lateral view of the bridge of tissue between the upper and the lower parts of the specimen on a right functional neck dissection. *br*, bridge of tissue between the upper and lower parts of the specimen; *US*, upper part of the specimen (submandibular, upper jugular, and upper spinal accessory regions); *LS*, lower part of the specimen (supraclavicular area); *SC*, sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted laterally; *IJ*, internal jugular vein; *sa*, spinal accessory nerve; *sn*, supraclavicular branch of the cervical plexus.

Using a scalpel, this bridge is transected and the fascia of the levator scapulae muscle is identified. This maneuver creates a single block that must be dissected free from the deep muscles toward the carotid sheath (Fig. 4-42). The dissection that follows will be performed using sharp dissection. Thus, the specimen is grasped with forceps and adequate traction is applied.

As the dissection proceeds medially, several branches of the cervical plexus are found. A thorough knowledge of neck anatomy is essential to combine oncological radicalism with functional surgery. As already mentioned, to achieve optimal shoulder function, the deep branches from the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves that may anastomose with the spinal accessory nerve should be preserved (Fig. 4-43). In the same manner, the contribution to the phrenic nerve from the third, fourth, and fifth cervical nerves should also be preserved. This is best achieved by keeping the dissection superficial to the scalene fascia, where the branches of the cervical plexus usually lie. On the other hand, the superficial or cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus will be transected as the dissection approaches the carotid sheath.

The dissection of the deep cervical muscles must be stopped as soon as the carotid sheath is exposed. Continuing the dissection posterior to the carotid sheath carries a high risk of damage to the sympathetic trunk (Fig. 4-44).

DISSECTION OF THE CAROTID SHEATH

The carotid sheath is a fascial envelope surrounding the internal jugular vein, common carotid artery, and vagus nerve (Fig. 2-3). It is interposed between the superficial and prevertebral layers of the cervical fascia. The carotid sheath must be included in the resection, preserving its neurovascular contents.

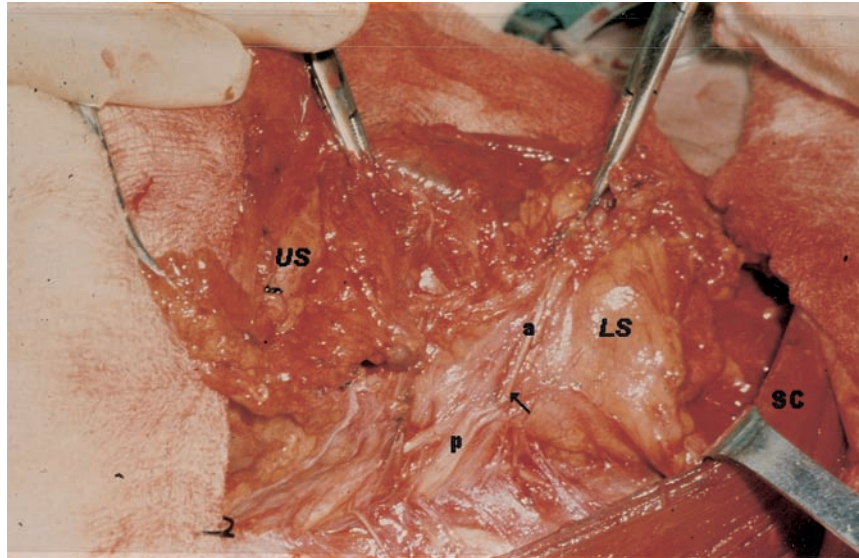


Figure 4-42 The whole specimen is now anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Note the anterior (a) and posterior (p) branch of the cervical plexus. The anterior branches must be sectioned (arrow) to continue the dissection toward the carotid sheath (right side). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; US, upper part of the specimen (submandibular, upper jugular, and upper spinal accessory areas); LS, lower part of the specimen (supraclavicular fossa).

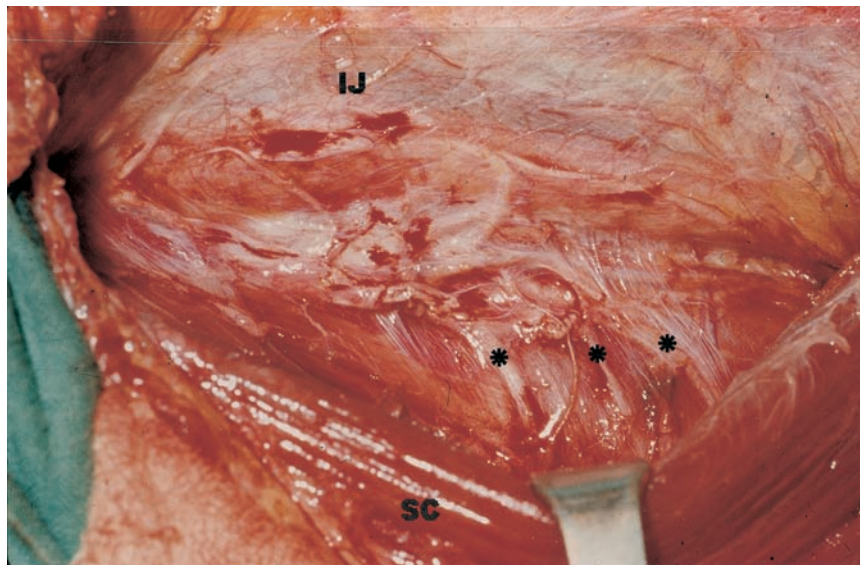


Figure 4-43 Lateral view of the deep branches of the cervical plexus that have been preserved on the right side. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; IJ, internal jugular vein; *, deep branches of the cervical plexus.

This part of the dissection needs a new number 10 knife blade and adequate tension. The surgical specimen is grasped with hemostats and retracted medially by the assistant, while the surgeon uses one hand with a gauze pad to pull laterally over the deep cervical muscles. This allows a complete exposure of the carotid sheath along the entire length of the surgical field. To avoid injuring important neurovascular structures, during the next minutes all movements should

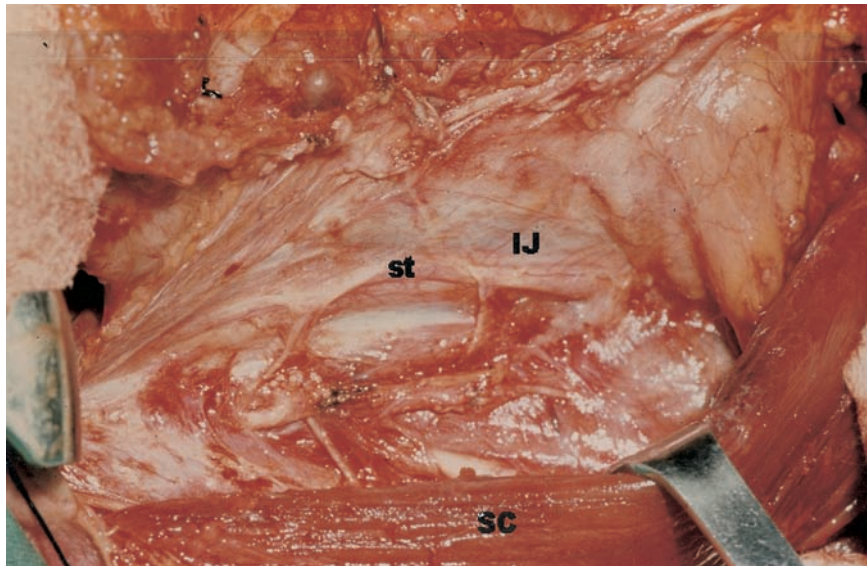


Figure 4-44 The right sympathetic trunk is exposed posterior to the carotid sheath. st, sympathetic trunk; IJ, internal jugular vein; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle.

be precise and gentle. This includes all activity from the assistants, scrub nurse, and circulating personnel in the operating room.

An incision is made with the scalpel over the vagus nerve along the entire length of the carotid sheath (Fig. 4-45). The nerve can be easily identified between the internal jugular vein and the carotid artery (Fig. 4-46). The dissection then continues, removing the fascia from the internal jugular vein. This is achieved by continuously passing the knife blade along the wall of the internal jugular vein up and down along its entire length (Fig. 4-47). The scalpel must be moved obliquely



Figure 4-45 The carotid sheath should be opened by cutting over the vagus nerve. ca, carotid artery; vn, vagus nerve; S, specimen.

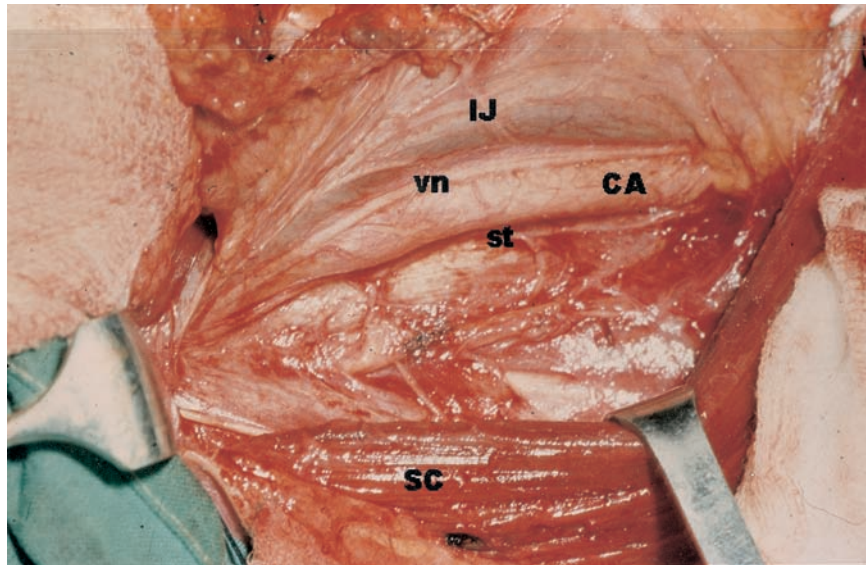


Figure 4-46 Dissection of the carotid sheath on the right side. CA, carotid artery; IJ, internal jugular vein; vn, vagus nerve; st, sympathetic trunk; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle.

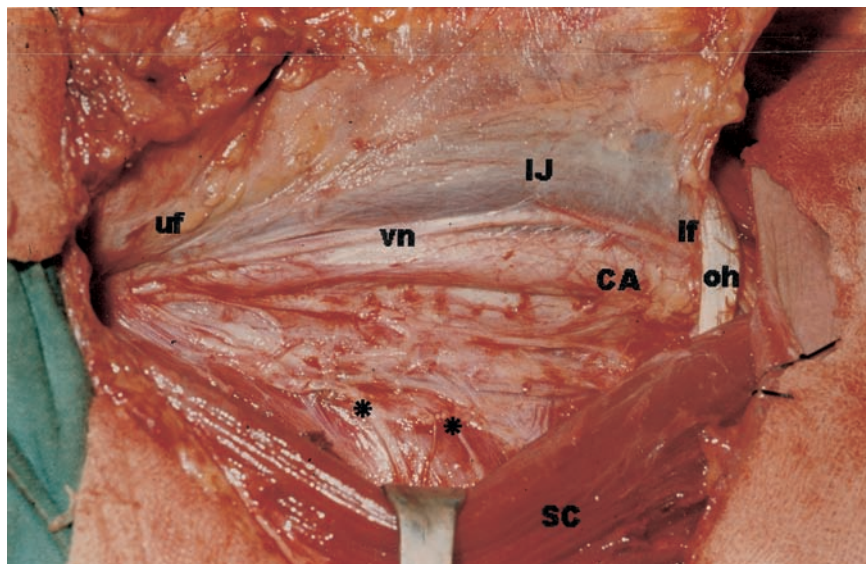


Figure 4-47 Dissection of the carotid sheath on the right side. CA, carotid artery; IJ, internal jugular vein; vn, vagus nerve; oh, omohyoid muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; uf, upper fold of the internal jugular vein wall; lf, lower fold of the internal jugular vein wall; *, deep branches of the cervical plexus.

with respect to the vein, with the blade pointing away from the vein wall. When this is properly done and the traction exerted on the tissue is adequate, this maneuver is extremely safe and effective. The fascia can be seen coming apart from the vein after each pass of the knife blade, until the internal jugular vein is completely released from its fascial covering (Fig. 4-48).

The facial, lingual, and thyroid veins appear as the dissection approaches the medial wall of the internal jugular vein (Fig. 4-49). They should be clearly identified, ligated, and divided to complete the isolation of the internal jugular vein. Other smaller branches as well as some vasa vasorum often found during the dissection of the internal jugular vein can be cauterized, taking care not to use the cautery too close to the venous wall to avoid troublesome perforations that will require further repair. Bipolar cautery may be helpful at this stage of the operation.

The dissection of the carotid sheath has two danger points. One at each end—upper and lower—of the dissection (Fig. 4-47). At these two points the traction exerted to facilitate the dissection of the fascial envelope produces a folding of the wall of the internal jugular vein that can be easily sectioned at the touch of the scalpel blade. We refer to these two points as the *initial folds*, and they should be freed before further dissection of the internal jugular vein is attempted. The surgeon must be extremely cautious to avoid injuring the vein at these points.

Lower in the neck, the terminal portion of the thoracic duct on the left side (Fig. 4-50), and the right lymphatic duct, when present, are also within the boundaries of the dissection and must be preserved. They are difficult to identify because of their variable anatomy and, more often than desired, can only be found after being injured, which is especially likely given their very thin wall that easily breaks under normal dissection maneuvers. The surgeon must be aware that post-operative leakage in patients with functional neck dissection is much more difficult to solve than in patients with radical neck dissection because of the preservation of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. The pressure maneuvers that usually control chylous fistulae in patients with radical neck dissection are less effective when the muscle remains in place. Thus, intraoperative recognition of the problem and appropriate management at the time of operation are essential for a

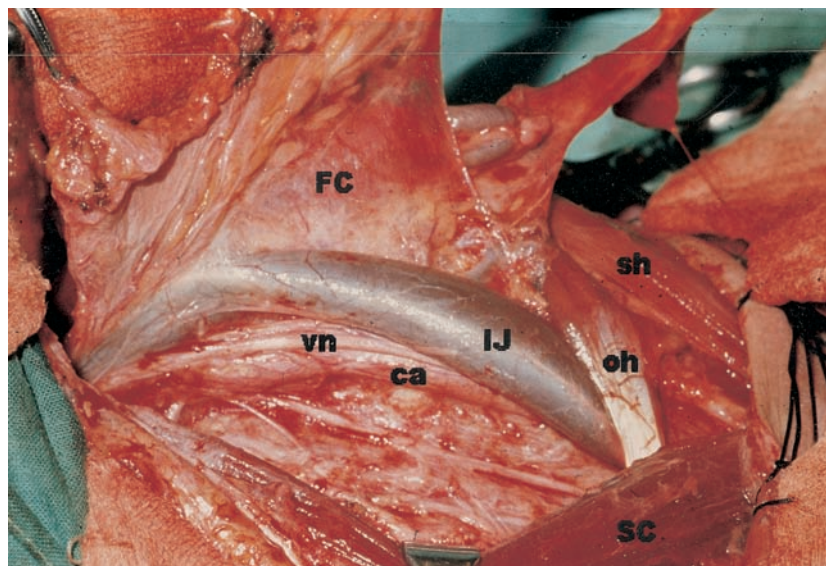


Figure 4-48 Dissection of the internal jugular vein within the carotid sheath (right side). ca, carotid artery; IJ, internal jugular vein; vn, vagus nerve; oh, omohyoid muscle; sh, sternohyoid muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; FC, fascia of the carotid sheath.

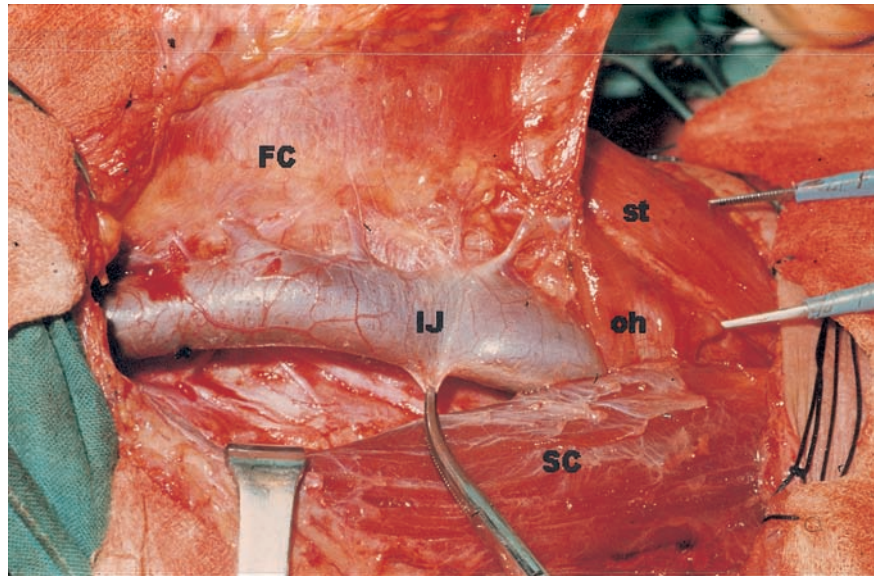


Figure 4-49 Lateral view of the veins draining into the medial face of the right internal jugular vein. IJ, internal jugular vein; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle; st, sternothyroid muscle; FC, fascia of the carotid sheath.

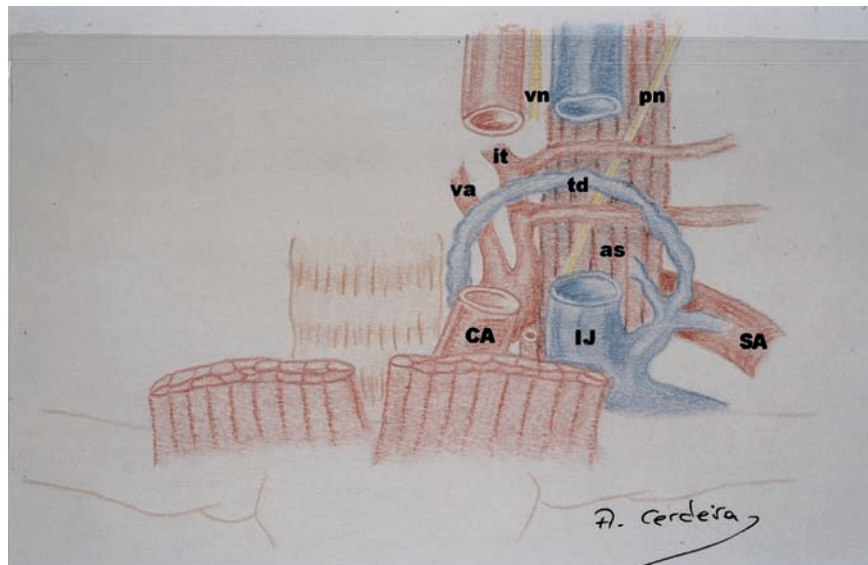


Figure 4-50 Cervical course of the thoracic duct on the left side of the neck, td, thoracic duct; IJ, internal jugular vein; CA, carotid artery; SA, subclavian artery; va, vertebral artery; it, inferior thyroid artery; as, anterior scalene muscle; pn, phrenic nerve; vn, vagus nerve.

successful outcome. Once injured, the thoracic duct must be surrounded by muscle, fascia, or adipose tissue before being sutured. More details about the management of the thoracic duct can be found in Chapter 5.

Once the internal jugular vein is released from its covering fascia, the dissection continues medially over the carotid artery. The specimen is now completely separated from the great vessels and remains attached only to the strap muscles (Fig. 4-51). The dissection of the strap muscles will complete the release of the neck dissection specimen. However, when the strap muscles are to be removed with the primary tumor, an en bloc resection may be performed by leaving the specimen pedicled over the strap muscles in order to resect the primary tumor in-contiguity with the neck dissection specimen.

DISSECTION OF THE STRAP MUSCLES

Although this is described as the last step of the operation, it may be performed in a different order according to the needs of the surgery and the location of the primary tumor.

The midline constitutes the medial border of the dissection for unilateral operations. Thus, a midline cut is made in the superficial layer of the cervical fascia from the upper border of the surgical field to the sternal notch (Fig. 4-52). If the upper end of the anterior jugular vein was not transected at a previous step of the operation, it is now identified, ligated, and divided. The same is made at the lower boundary of the dissection. After both ends of the anterior jugular vein have been ligated and divided, the fascia is dissected from the underlying strap muscles. The dissection starts at the upper part of the surgical field and continues in a lateral and inferior direction. The sternohyoid and omohyoid muscles are completely freed from their fascial covering (Fig. 4-53).

As the dissection proceeds laterally toward the carotid sheath the superior thyroid artery can be identified coursing in an inferomedial direction toward the thyroid gland (Fig. 4-54). Depending on the resection of the primary tumor, the superior thyroid artery can be preserved or should be ligated and divided. The common facial vein and a variable vein communicating the superficial

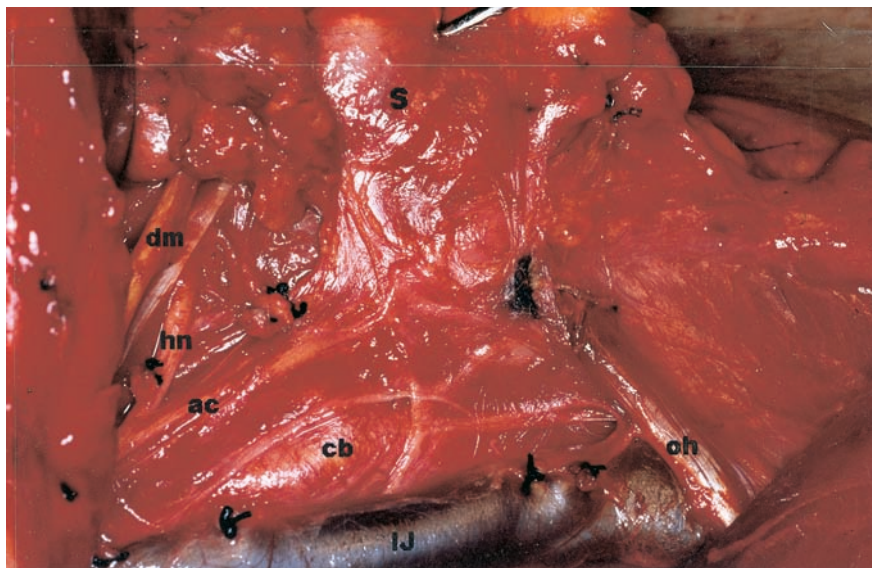


Figure 4-51 After dissection of the carotid sheath the specimen remains pedicled over the strap muscles (right side). IJ, internal jugular vein; cb, carotid bifurcation; hn, hypoglossal nerve; ac, ansa cervicalis (superior root); dm, digastric muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle; S, specimen.

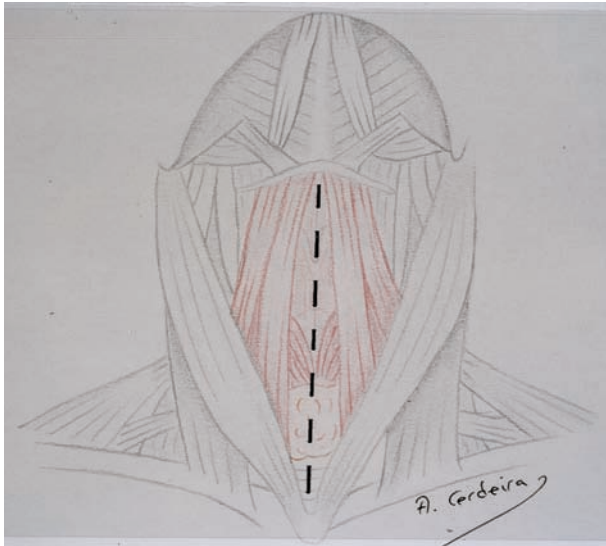


Figure 4-52 Midline incision for the dissection of the fascia over the strap muscles.

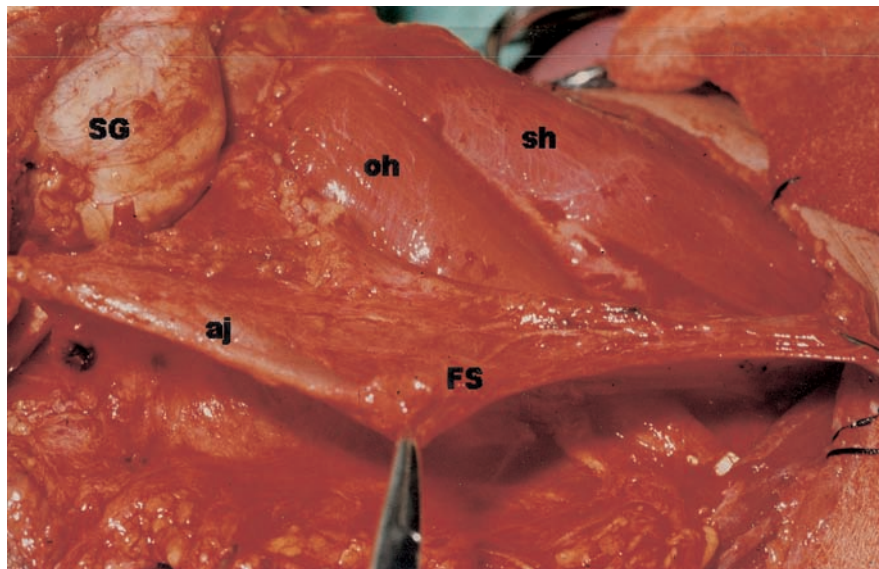


Figure 4-53 Dissection of the strap muscles on the right side. sh, sternohyoid muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle; SG, submandibular gland; aj, anterior jugular vein; FS, fascia of the strap muscles.

and deep venous systems of the neck (Kocher's vein) are usually ligated and divided before the specimen is completely released from the strap muscles.

DISSECTION OF THE CENTRAL COMPARTMENT

The prelaryngeal, pretracheal, and paratracheal lymph nodes constitute the central lymphatic compartment of the neck (area VI). Lymph nodes in this area are mainly located in the

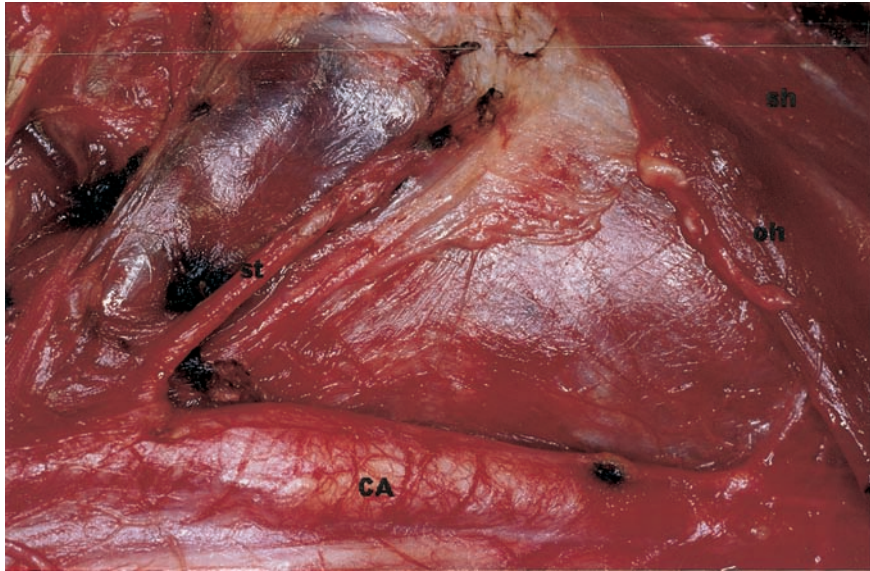


Figure 4-54 The right superior thyroid artery crosses inferomedially toward the thyroid gland. CA, carotid artery; st, superior thyroid artery; oh, omohyoid muscle; sh, sternohyoid muscle.

tracheoesophageal groove and around the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The lateral boundaries of this region are the common carotid arteries, the superior boundary is the hyoid bone, and the inferior boundary is the suprasternal notch (Fig. 4-55).

For some tumor locations the central compartment must be included in the dissection. This is the case of tumors of the thyroid gland, subglottic lesions, and some hypopharyngeal cancers. In some cases, it is also important to remove the lymph nodes in the anterior superior mediastinum along with the dissection of the central compartment.

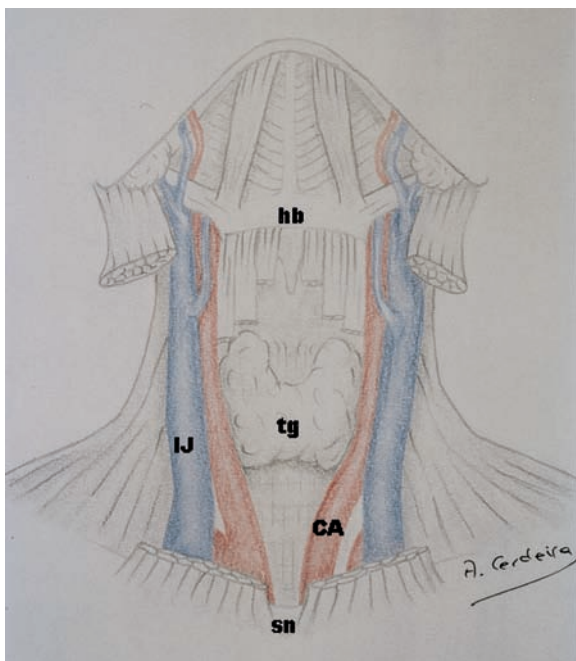
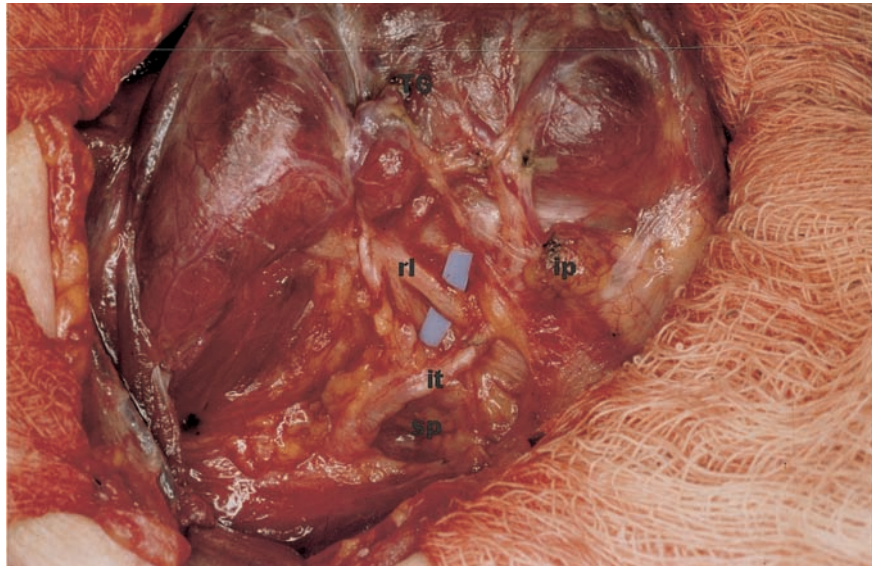
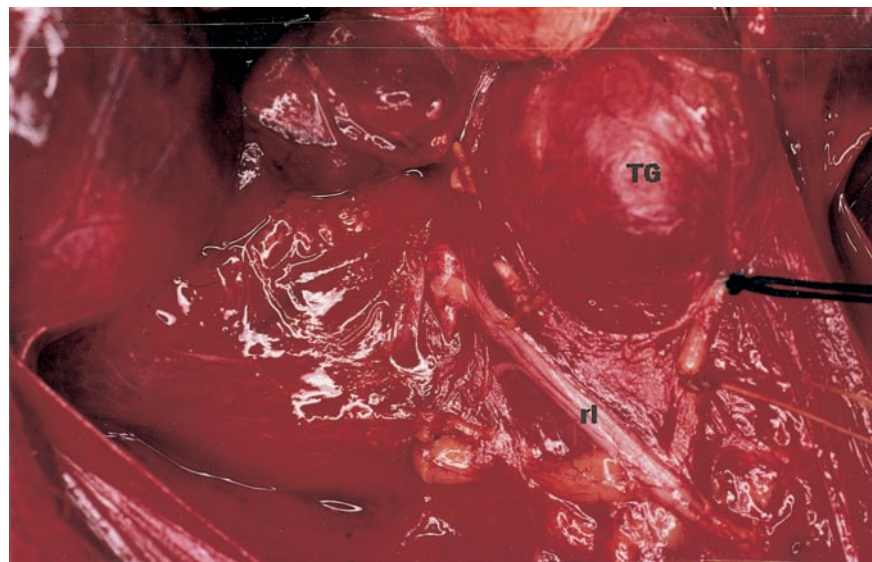


Figure 4-55 Anatomical boundaries of the central compartment of the neck. CA, carotid artery; IJ, internal jugular vein; hb, hyoid bone; sn, suprasternal notch; tg, thyroid gland.

During the dissection of the central compartment, the recurrent laryngeal nerve must be identified and preserved in a patient with normal vocal cord function whose primary tumor does not require the removal of the ipsilateral larynx. Identification of the nerve should be attempted before further removal of lymphatic tissue from the central compartment in order to assure its preservation (Fig. 4-56A). The nerve is then followed upward toward the larynx and downward to the upper mediastinum. The inferior thyroid artery is ligated and divided when total



A



B

Figure 4-56 Identification of the recurrent laryngeal nerve and parathyroid glands (right side). (A) The recurrent laryngeal nerve and both parathyroid glands are identified before dissection of the central compartment. (B) The inferior thyroid artery is ligated and divided, and the nerve is completely exposed. TG, thyroid gland; rl, recurrent laryngeal nerve; sp, superior parathyroid gland; ip, inferior parathyroid gland; it, inferior thyroid artery.

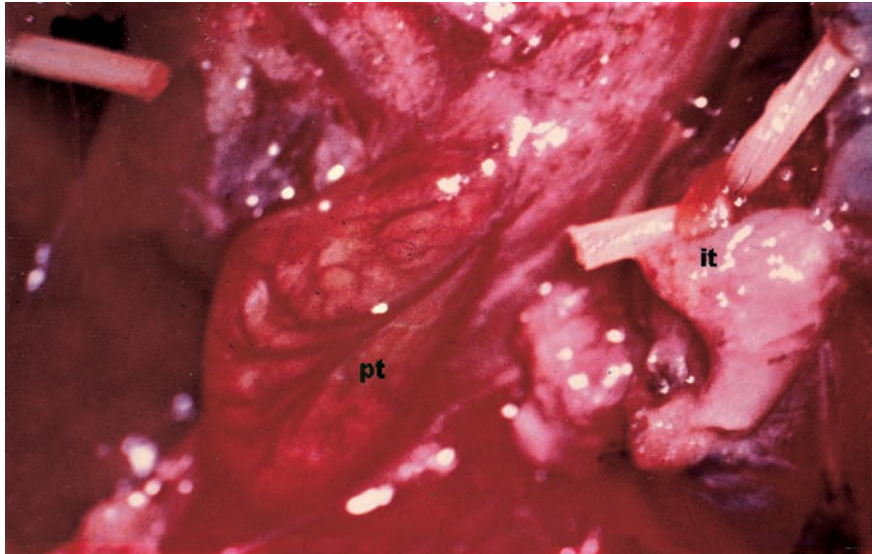


Figure 4-57 Vascular pattern of a parathyroid gland (microphotograph $\times 25$). pt, parathyroid gland; it, inferior thyroid artery ligated.

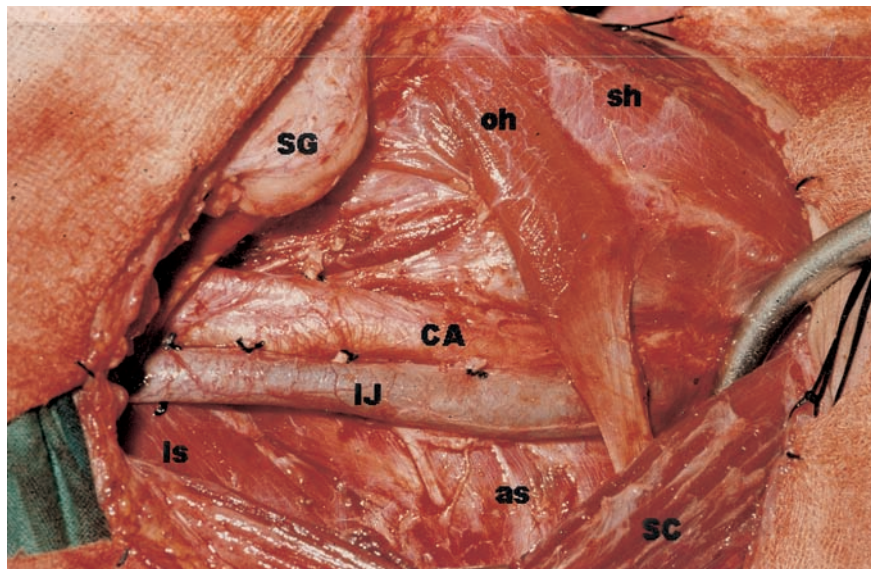


Figure 4-58 The neck after a right functional neck dissection for supraglottic cancer of the larynx. IJ, internal jugular vein; CA, carotid artery; SG, submandibular gland; oh, omohyoid muscle; sh, sternohyoid muscle; ls, levator scapulae muscle; as, anterior scalene muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle.

lobectomy is planned (Fig. 4-56B), and the lymphatic tissue is removed from the central compartment of the neck.

Adequate management of the parathyroids is also extremely important in all cases. At least one gland should be identified on each side and their blood supply must be preserved (Fig. 4-57). When this is not possible because of the vascular anatomy of the parathyroids or as a consequence

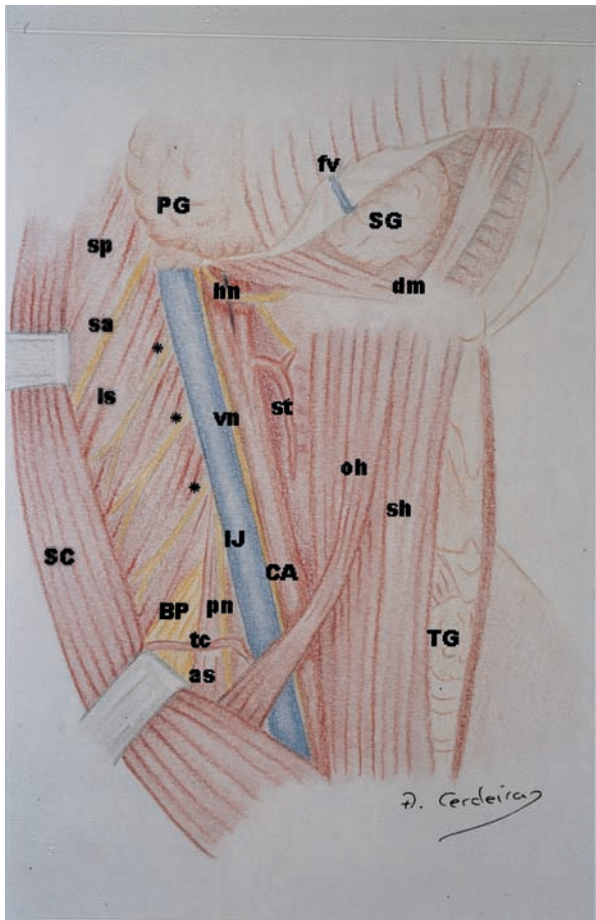


Figure. 4-59 Artist's view of the neck after right functional neck dissection. IJ, internal jugular vein; fv, distal stump of the facial vein; CA, carotid artery; st, superior thyroid artery; SG, submandibular gland; PG, parotid gland; TG, thyroid gland; oh, omohyoid muscle; sh, sternohyoid muscle; dm, digastric muscle; sp, splenius capitis muscle; ls, levator scapulae muscle; as, anterior scalene muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; sa, spinal accessory nerve; vn, vagus nerve; pn, phrenic nerve; hn, hypoglossal nerve; BP, brachial plexus; tc, transverse cervical artery; *, deep branches of the cervical plexus.

of the extension of the nodal disease, every attempt should be made to autotransplant enough parathyroid gland tissue to a muscle in the neck. In patients with thyroid cancer this is generally performed in the sternocleidomastoid muscle. In all patients undergoing central compartment dissection careful postoperative calcium monitoring is mandatory.

CLOSURE OF THE WOUND

Figures 4-58 and 4-59 show the appearance of the neck after functional neck dissection has been completed. Once again, we would like to emphasize that it is not the preservation of anatomical structures that makes functional neck dissection different from radical neck dissection, but the approach to the neck through fascial planes.

The neck is carefully inspected for bleeding points and surgical sponges. Careful hemostasis is time consuming but rewarding. The entire field is thoroughly irrigated with normal saline. Finally, the skin is closed in two layers over a large suction catheter. The platysma is sutured with absorbable buried sutures, and the skin with skin clips. A moderately tight dressing is applied with special attention to the supraclavicular fossa because this is the area where most serohematomas develop.

Hints and Pitfalls

KNIFE DISSECTION AND THE FUNCTIONAL APPROACH

The principle of fascial dissection is more easily achieved when the surgeon uses the knife through fascial planes. For some steps of the operation the scalpel is the best surgical tool whereas for others the scissor is preferred. Elevation of the skin flaps and dissection of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, submandibular fossa, deep cervical muscles, carotid sheath, and strap muscles are best performed using knife dissection. On the other hand, dissection of the area around the spinal accessory nerve, posterior triangle, and paratracheal space is more easily accomplished with the scissor. The main difference between these two groups is the type of tissue that is being dissected. Knife dissection requires firm tissue like muscle or vessels (Fig. 5-1), whereas fibrofatty tissue is more easily dissected with the scissors (Fig. 5-2).

Knife dissection requires precise handling of the knife, careful surgical technique, and adequate help from the assistants. The blade of the scalpel must be directed oblique to the tissue that is being dissected and away from the muscle or vessel whose fascia is being removed. This protects the structures, especially the veins, from being injured by the knife blade. To be appropriate, knife dissection must be carried all the way up and down the surgical field, avoiding the creation of holes along the dissected structure. The knife blade is much more efficient when cutting over tense tissue. Thus, the assistants must apply adequate tension to the surgical field to increase the effectiveness of knife dissection.

WASHING THE FIELD REGULARLY

Clear vision of the different structures in the surgical field is of paramount importance. Blood obscures the field and makes identification of structures more difficult. A bloodless field must be maintained throughout the operation. In addition, washing the field regularly with warm saline greatly contributes to cleaning the working area (Fig. 5-3).

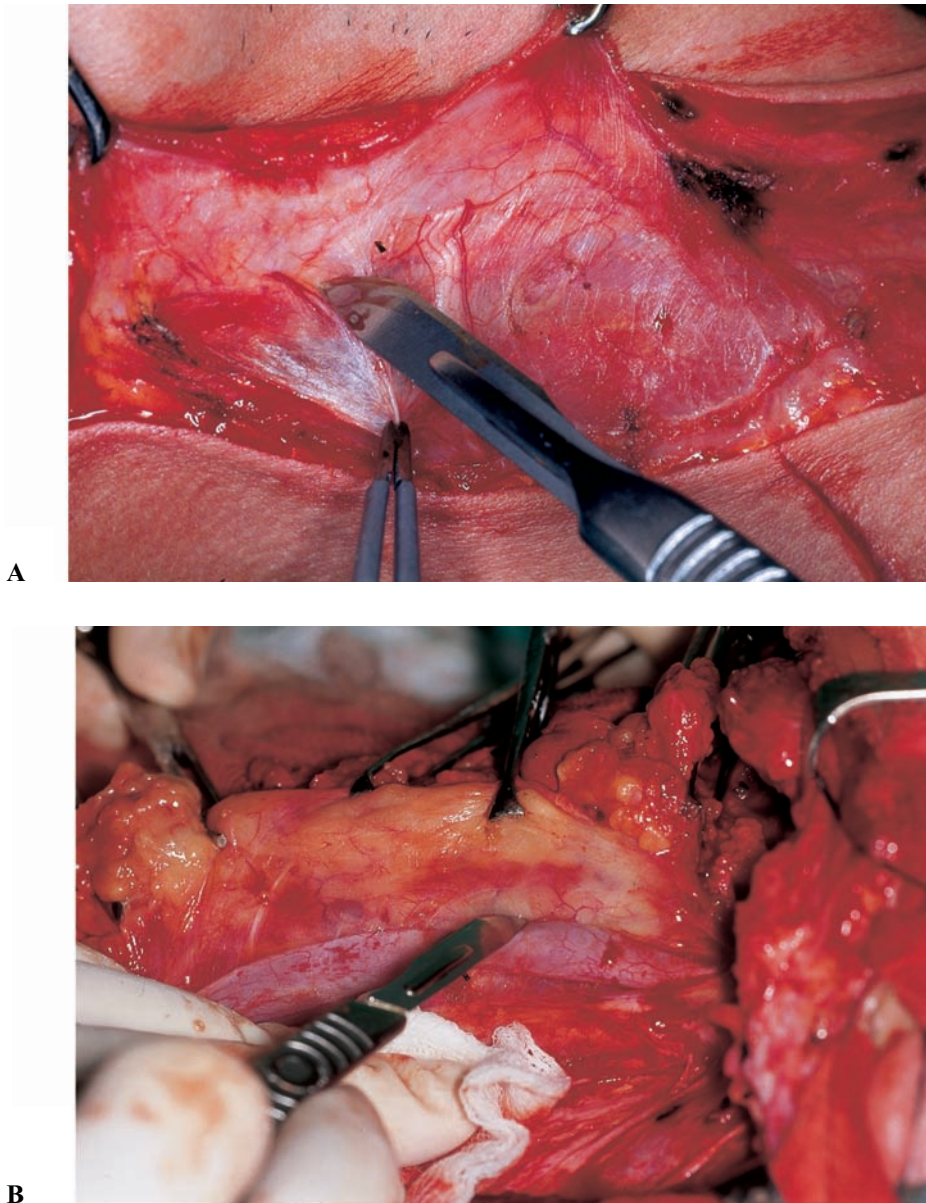


Figure 5-1 The knife is preferred for the dissection of firm tissue like muscle (A) or vessels (B). Safe knife dissection requires placing the tissue under traction, as seen in the photos.

RAISING THE FLAPS

The superficial layer of the cervical fascia must remain intact after the flaps have been raised. This may pose a problem to the novice surgeon, who usually finds it difficult to preserve the integrity of this fascial layer. The best way to achieve this goal is by cutting with the scalpel over the deep face of the platysma muscle. As for any other type of neck dissection, the platysma muscle is included with the skin flaps because it provides additional blood supply that protects the skin and assists in the healing process. The proper sequence for an adequate incision will be to mark the skin incision,

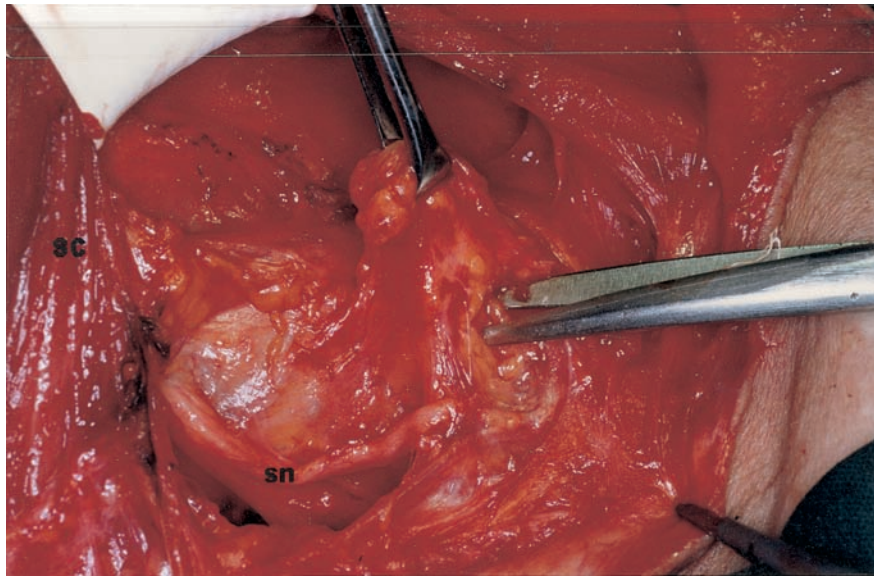


Figure 5-2 Fibrofatty tissue is best dissected with the scissors. Here an example of the dissection of the supraclavicular fossa on the right side. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted medially; sn, supraclavicular nerve.

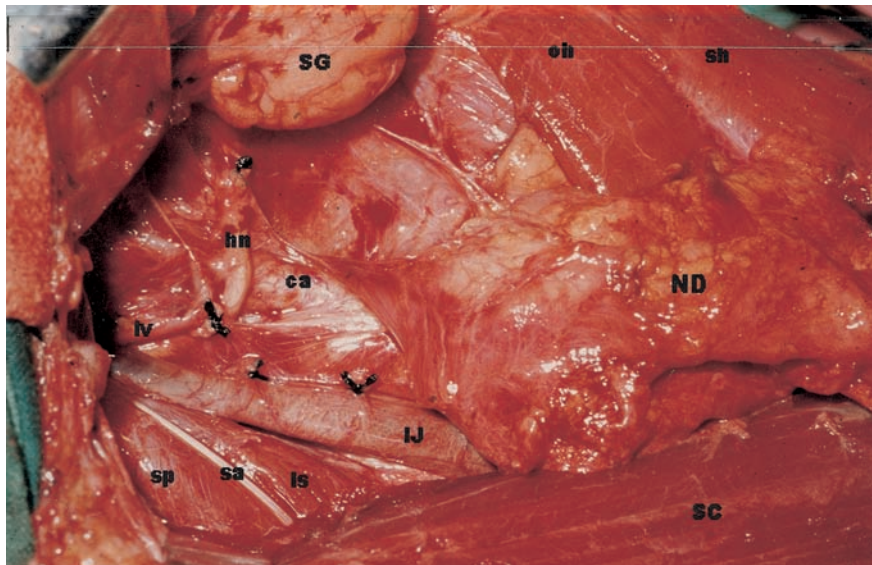


Figure 5-3 Regularly washing the field allows better visualization of the anatomical structures. SG, submandibular gland; IJ, internal jugular vein; ca, carotid artery; lv, lingual veins; sa, spinal accessory nerve; hn, hypoglossal nerve; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle; sh, sternohyoid muscle; sp, splenius capitis muscle; ls, levator scapulae muscle; ND, neck dissection specimen.

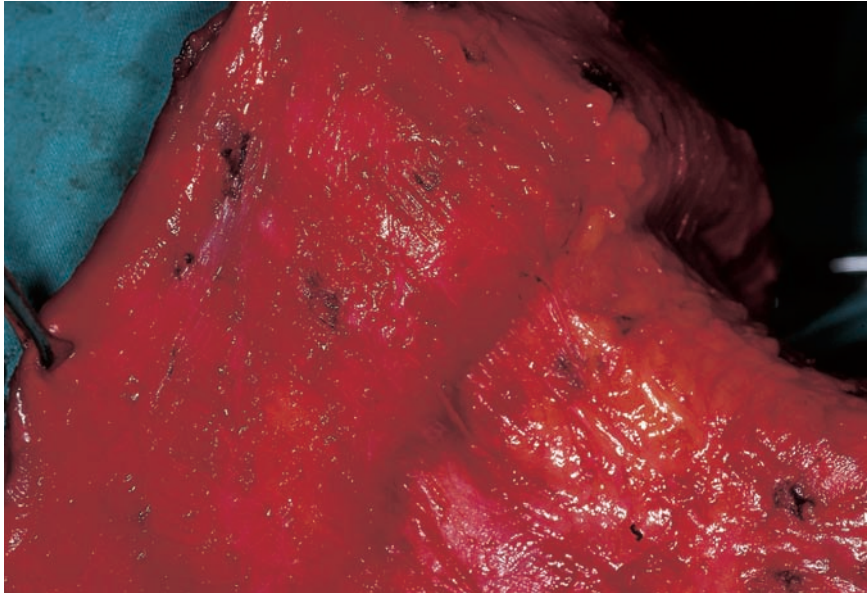


Figure 5-4 Fibers of the platysma muscle after elevation of the skin flaps.

incise the skin, cut the platysma muscle, and start raising the flap, keeping the deep face of the platysma under vision. If the muscular fibers of the platysma are seen throughout the elevation of the skin flaps (Fig. 5-4), preservation of the superficial layer of the cervical fascia is assured.

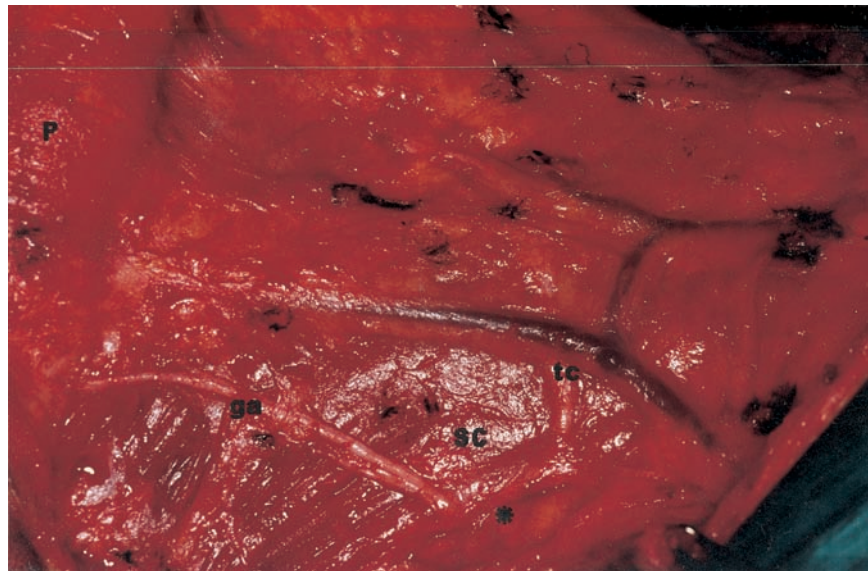
IDENTIFICATION OF THE GREAT AURICULAR NERVE

The great auricular nerve is used to identify the posterior border of the upper part of the surgical field (Fig. 5-5A). This branch of the cervical plexus rounds the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle from Erb's point and courses almost directly upward toward the ear lobule, where it supplies almost all the auricle, the skin over the parotid gland, and the skin over the mastoid process. Whenever possible, the great auricular nerve should be preserved to avoid numbness of the ear, which is especially disturbing in female patients (Fig. 5-5B).

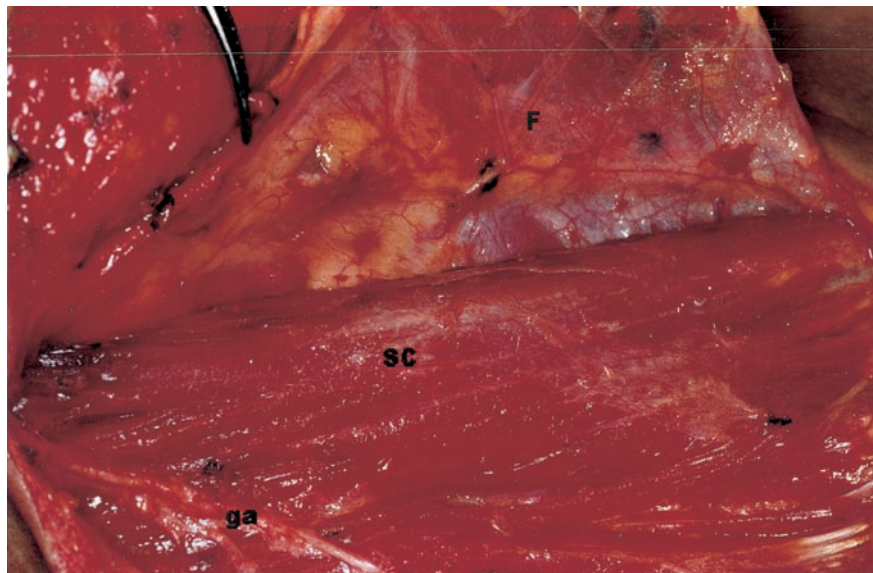
MANAGEMENT OF THE EXTERNAL JUGULAR VEIN

The external jugular vein begins in the substance of the parotid gland. It is most often formed by the union of the retromandibular (posterior facial) and the posterior auricular veins. It runs vertically downward across the superficial surface of the sternocleidomastoid muscle to pierce the fascia of the posterior triangle of the neck just above the clavicle. The external jugular vein terminates in the subclavian or in the internal jugular vein after receiving several tributaries throughout its cervical course (Fig. 2-12).

During functional neck dissection, the external jugular vein is found at different stages of the operation and should be ligated and divided at different levels. In a complete functional neck



A



B

Figure 5-5 Identification and preservation of the great auricular nerve on the right side. (A) The great auricular nerve crosses the external face of the sternocleidomastoid muscle from Erb's point toward the ear lobule. (B) The fascia over the sternocleidomastoid muscle is incised anterior to the great auricular nerve in order to preserve innervation of the ear lobule. ga, great auricular nerve; tc, transverse cervical branch of the cervical plexus; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; P, platysma muscle; F, fascia dissected from the sternocleidomastoid muscle; *, Erb's point.

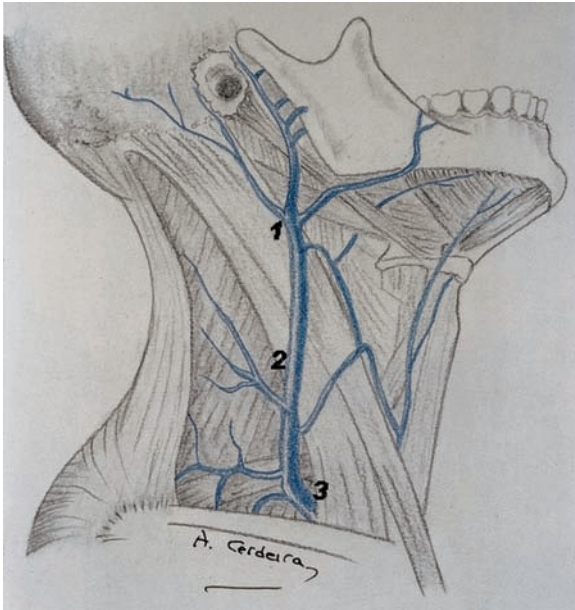


Figure 5-6 The external jugular vein must be ligated and divided at different levels during the operation. 1, tail of the parotid gland; 2, posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle; 3, supraclavicular fossa.

dissection, there are three places where the external jugular vein must be ligated and divided (Fig. 5-6). From topdown the vein must be transected at the tail of the parotid gland during the dissection of the upper part of the surgical field at the level of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle during the dissection of the muscle and within the fibrofatty tissue of the supraclavicular fossa while dissecting the posterior triangle of the neck.

During the ligation of the external jugular vein and other large veins in the neck special attention should be directed to distal venous stumps. Open distal venous stumps may be responsible for air embolism. Thus, careful closure of all distal stumps must be ensured before closure of the wound.

INCISION OF THE FASCIA OVER THE STERNOCLEIDOMASTOID MUSCLE

To facilitate the complete dissection of the fascia surrounding the sternocleidomastoid muscle the initial incision must be made as close to the posterior border of the muscle as possible (Fig. 5-7). The reason for this is that the fascia is more easily dissected off the sternocleidomastoid muscle in a forward direction. Making the incision close to the posterior border of the muscle leaves no remaining fascia to be dissected posteriorly and facilitates the complete isolation of the muscle from its surrounding fascia.

THE MARGINAL MANDIBULAR BRANCH OF THE FACIAL NERVE

It is cosmetically important to preserve the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve. The mandibular nerve courses just deep to the superficial layer of the cervical fascia but superficial to both the anterior facial vein and artery. Identification of the nerve is time consuming and may require nerve stimulation for the novice surgeon to confirm the exact location of this thin branch of the facial nerve.

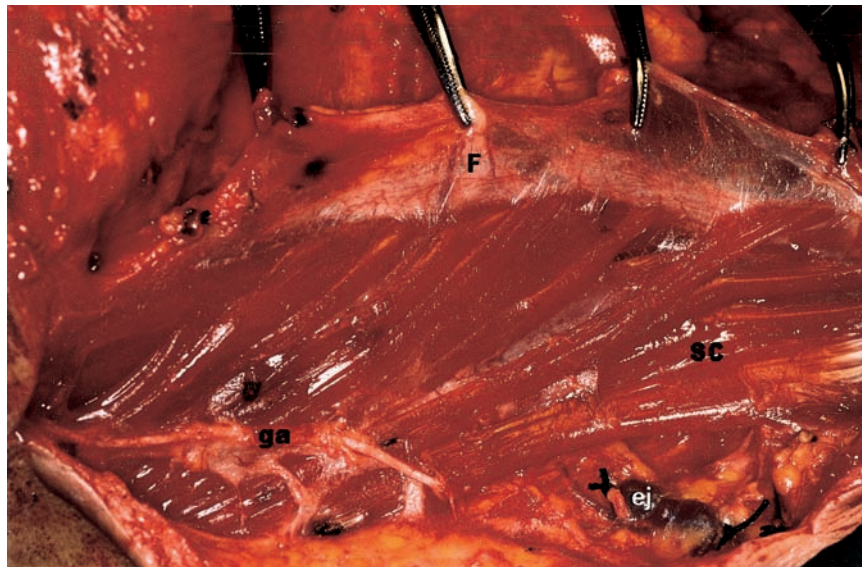


Figure 5-7 Lateral view of the dissection of the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the right side. The fascia is incised over the posterior border of the muscle and dissected forward. The great auricular nerve has been preserved. Note the external jugular vein ligated at the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle and above the clavicle. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; F, fascia dissected from the sternocleidomastoid muscle; ga, great auricular nerve; ej, external jugular vein.

It is much easier, and equally safe, to identify, ligate, and divide the anterior facial vein at the inferior border of the submandibular gland. The superior ligature, which is left long, is reflected superiorly with a hemostat (Fig. 5-8). Although the mandibular nerve is usually not seen during this maneuver, it will be automatically reflected superiorly with the skin flap, thus preventing its injury.

PRESERVING THE SUBMANDIBULAR GLAND

As already mentioned, removal of the submandibular gland is not a routine surgical step of functional neck dissection. The gland must be included in the specimen when the location of the primary tumor dictates its removal or when metastatic disease is suspected in the submandibular triangle. In the remaining situations the submandibular gland may be preserved. This is the case with cancer of the larynx and hypopharynx, where the lymph nodes in the submandibular and submental region (area I) are usually not involved and, additionally, there is no need to approach the primary tumor through the submandibular triangle. When a submandibular gland preserving functional neck dissection is performed, the dissection of the upper border of the surgical field must be modified with respect to the procedure described in the previous chapter.

After the flaps have been raised, the submandibular gland can be seen through the superficial layer of the cervical fascia in the upper part of the surgical field (Fig. 5-9). The fascia is then incised from the midline to the tail of the parotid gland, at the level of the lower border of the submandibular gland as for a gland-removing procedure. Then the facial vein is ligated and divided, reflecting upward the superior ligature to preserve the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve. The retromandibular vein and the external jugular vein are also ligated and divided.

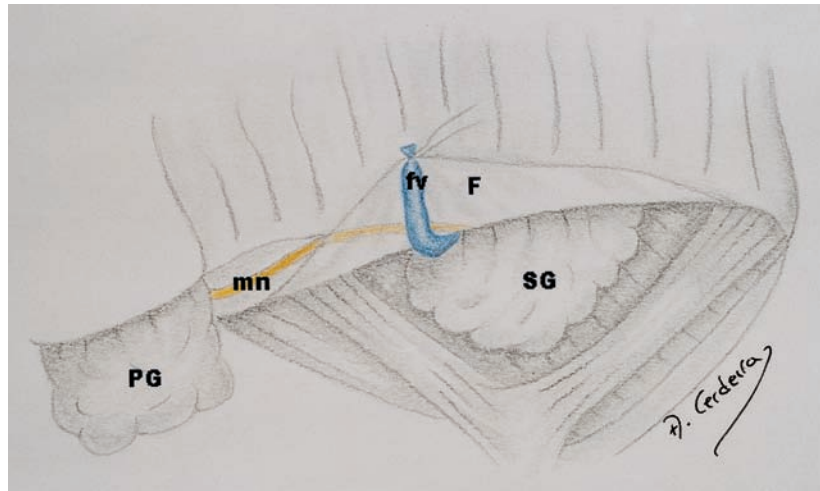


Figure 5-8 Protection to the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve is obtained with the maneuver of the facial vein (right side). fv, facial vein; mn, marginal nerve; F, fascia retracted upwards; SG, submandibular gland; PG, parotid gland.

Now, instead of including the submandibular gland within the specimen, its fascia is dissected inferiorly while the gland is retracted superiorly (Figs. 5-10 and 5-11). The contents of the submandibular fossa are now exposed. The fibrofatty tissue containing the submandibular nodes is grasped and dissected off the submandibular triangle, preserving the gland. The dissection may be continued medially to include the submental nodes, but this is seldom required in tumors that allow preservation of the submandibular gland.

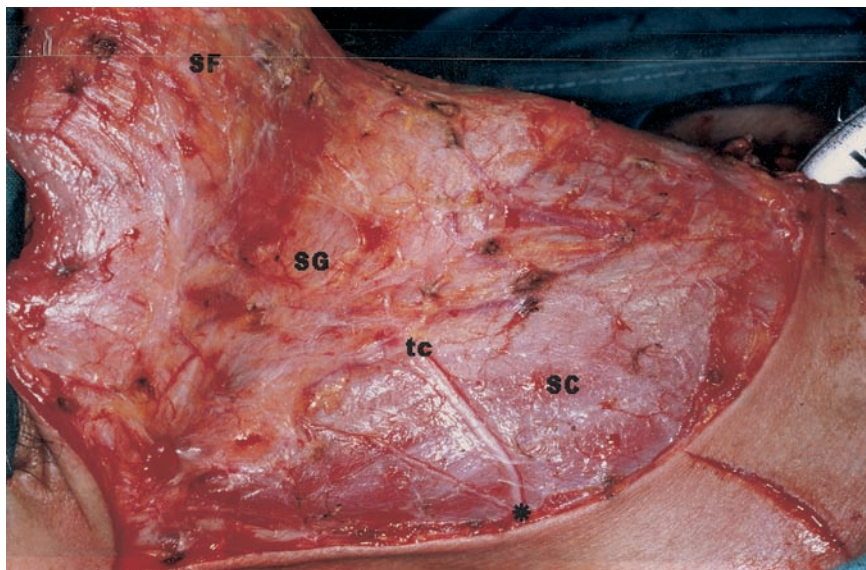


Figure 5-9 Lateral view of the surgical field after elevation of the skin flaps, preserving the deep layer of the cervical fascia (right side). SG, submandibular gland; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; tc, transverse cervical nerve; SF, superior skin flap; *, Erb's point.

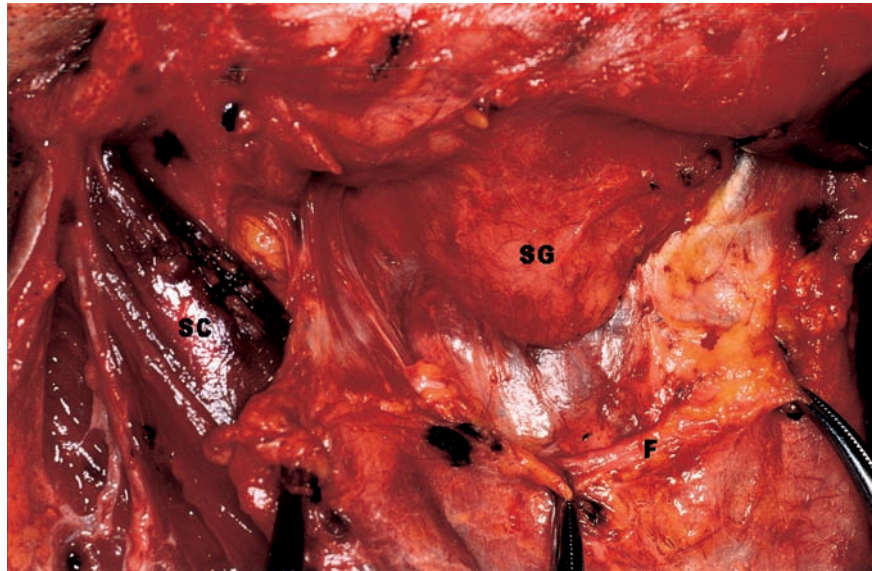


Figure 5-10 The fascia is incised in the upper boundary of the surgical field and dissected inferiorly over the submandibular gland. SG, submandibular gland; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; F, fascia dissected inferiorly.

The dissection then continues over the digastric and stylohyoid muscles. The muscles are retracted superiorly (Fig. 5-12), and the fascial sheath is easily dissected from the subdigastric and upper jugular spaces. The hypoglossal nerve is identified and the dissection is continued in the usual way, the only difference being the preservation of the submandibular gland.

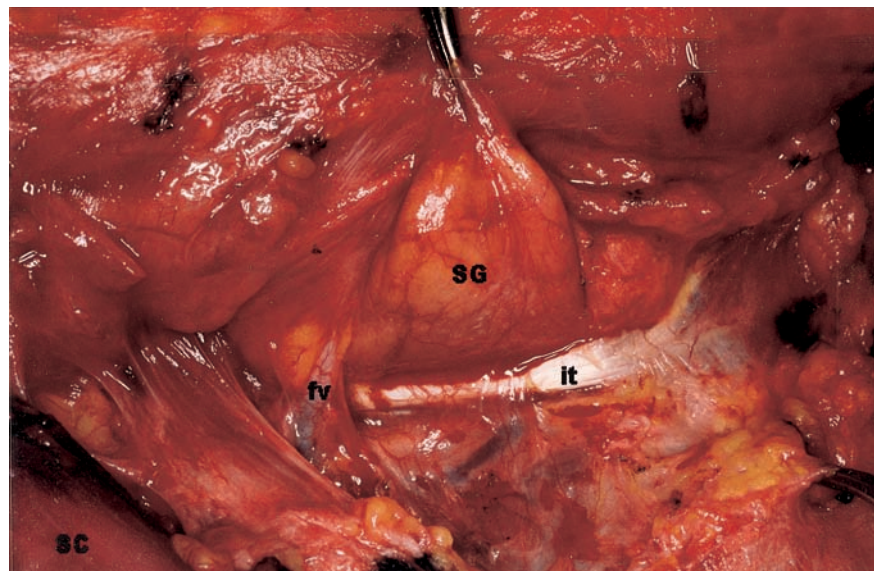


Figure 5-11 The submandibular gland is retracted superiorly, exposing the digastric muscle. SG, submandibular gland; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; it, intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle; fv, facial vein.

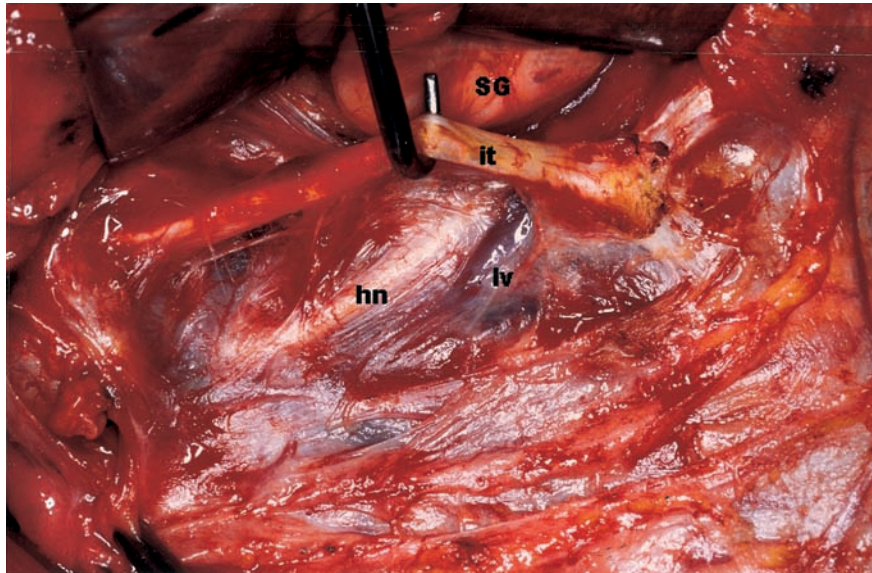


Figure 5-12 Retraction of the submandibular gland and digastric muscle allows the dissection of the submandibular fossa (right side). SG, submandibular gland; it, intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle; hn, hypoglossal nerve; lv, lingual vein.

THE LINGUAL VEINS AND THE HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE

The hypoglossal nerve in the submandibular triangle is crossed by a variable number of lingual veins that drain the lingual area toward the internal jugular vein (Fig. 5-13). The anatomical distribution of the lingual veins is unpredictable, thus preventing a systematic approach to the area. These veins are a frequent source of troublesome bleeding because of their thin wall and the proximity to the main trunk of the hypoglossal nerve. This area must be approached carefully; it is important to avoid the placement of clamps and ligatures without clear identification of the hypoglossal nerve. Bipolar coagulation may be useful at this stage of the operation.

IDENTIFICATION OF THE SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE

The most common complaint after radical neck dissection is the discomfort of shoulder droop resulting from spinal accessory nerve transection. Functional neck dissection preserves the spinal accessory nerve. However, shoulder function after functional neck dissection is not always normal. The explanation to this apparently paradoxical fact must be sought in the variable innervation of the shoulder, especially with respect to the participation of the cervical plexus in shoulder motility. Injury to the motor branches of the cervical plexus that supply the deep muscles of the neck may explain the variation in the degree of disability of the shoulder after preservation of the spinal accessory nerve. The possibility of motor supply to the trapezius from the cervical plexus in human beings is still controversial and rests upon indirect embryological, surgical, and clinical evidence.

The spinal accessory nerve must be identified as it enters the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 5-14). This point is usually located at the junction of the upper one third and lower two thirds of the muscle. During the dissection of the medial aspect of the fascia of the sternocleidomastoid

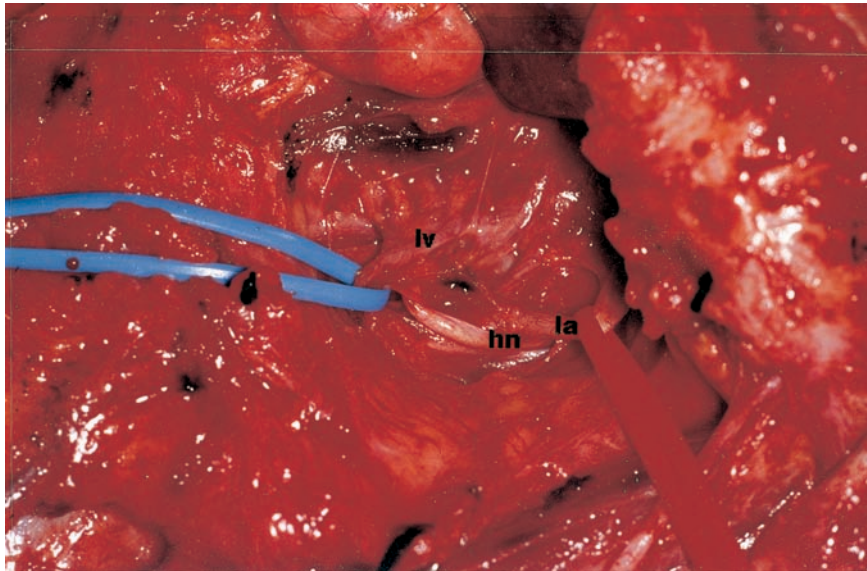


Figure 5-13 Relations between the hypoglossal nerve and the lingual vessels in the right submandibular fossa. hn, hypoglossal nerve; lv, lingual vein; la, lingual artery.

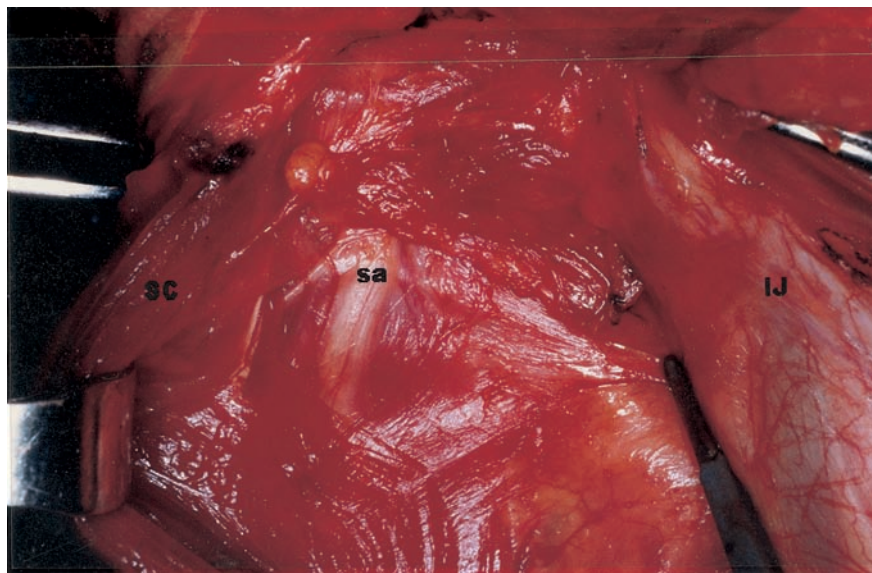


Figure 5-14 The spinal accessory nerve is identified as it enters the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the right side. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; IJ, internal jugular vein; sa, spinal accessory nerve.

muscle, the entrance of the spinal accessory nerve into the muscle is easily identified. The nerve is usually accompanied by a satellite vessel that must be carefully cauterized to avoid excessive nerve stimulation.

Once identified at its entrance in the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the nerve is followed superiorly toward the internal jugular vein (Fig. 5-15). The spinal accessory nerve usually comes obliquely in a posterior and inferior direction from the jugular foramen. The relations between the spinal accessory nerve and the internal jugular vein are variable. In approximately two thirds of cases, the nerve crosses external to the vein. In the remaining cases, the nerve passes behind the vein (Fig. 5-16) or even across it. The surgeon must keep this important information in mind while dissecting the spinal accessory nerve toward the internal jugular vein. When the vein is approached, precise identification of its wall is mandatory before complete isolation of the nerve is accomplished. Otherwise, the internal jugular vein may be easily injured.

The isolation of the spinal accessory nerve in this region takes place through the fibrofatty tissue of the upper jugular area where the scalpel is not very effective. Thus, the scissors is recommended for this step of the operation. For a satisfactory removal of all fibrofatty tissue in this area it is important to completely isolate the spinal accessory nerve from the surrounding tissue. This will facilitate the delivery of the tissue beneath the nerve by means of the spinal accessory maneuver.

On a complete functional approach, the spinal accessory nerve may also be found in the posterior triangle of the neck. At this level, the surgical position of the patient and the traction applied to the dissected tissue may displace the nerve from its original course. Usually, a slight anterior curvature is created through the neural anastomosis of the spinal accessory nerve with the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves. To avoid injuring the spinal accessory nerve in the posterior triangle, a thorough knowledge of its anatomy is essential.

The spinal accessory nerve enters the supraclavicular triangle at its upper angle, deep to Erb's point, and descends obliquely in a posterior and inferior direction toward the trapezius muscle (Fig. 5-17). Its course is usually associated with the posterior border of the levator scapulae muscle. The spinal accessory nerve should not be confused with several supraclavicular branches of the

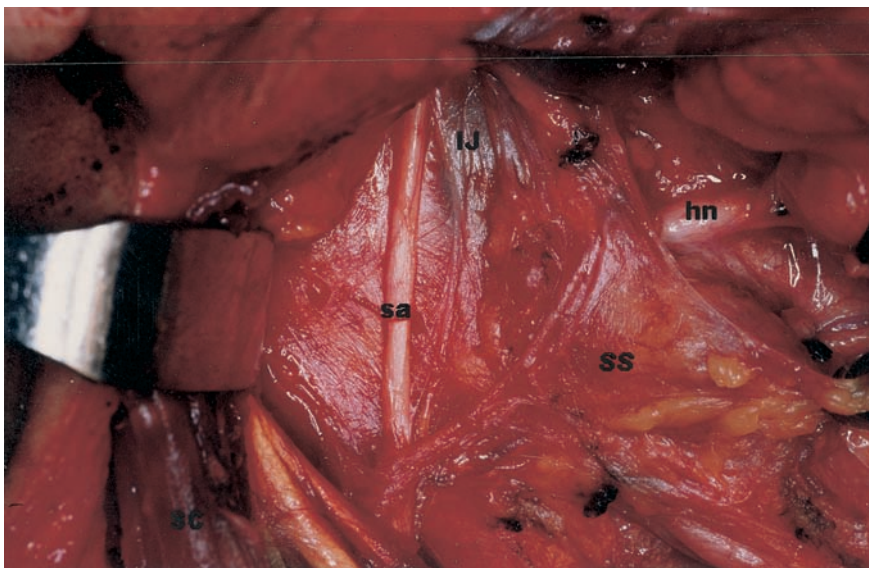


Figure 5-15 The nerve is completely exposed between the muscle and the internal jugular vein (right side). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; IJ, internal jugular vein; sa, spinal accessory nerve; hn, hypoglossal nerve; SS, specimen from the submandibular area.

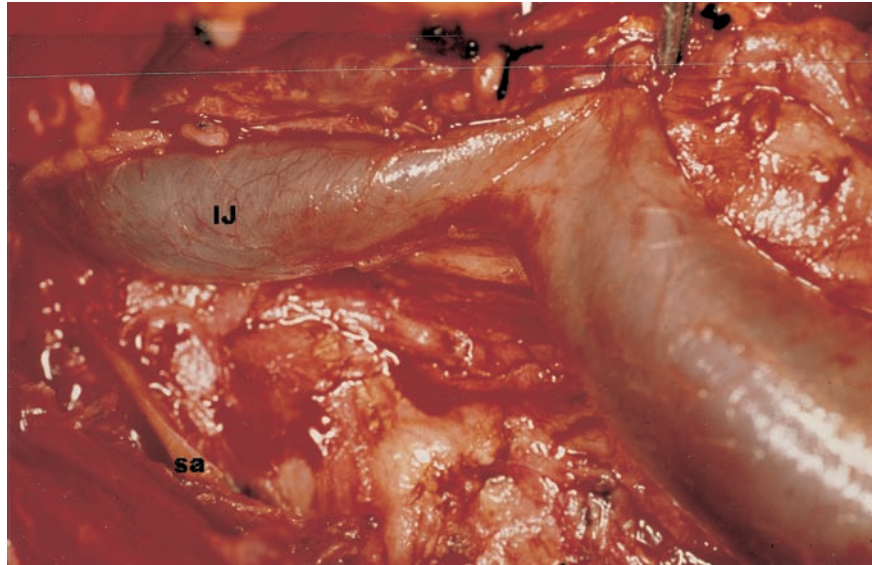


Figure 5-16 Lateral view of the right spinal accessory nerve crossing posterior to the internal jugular vein. IJ, internal jugular vein; sa, spinal accessory nerve.

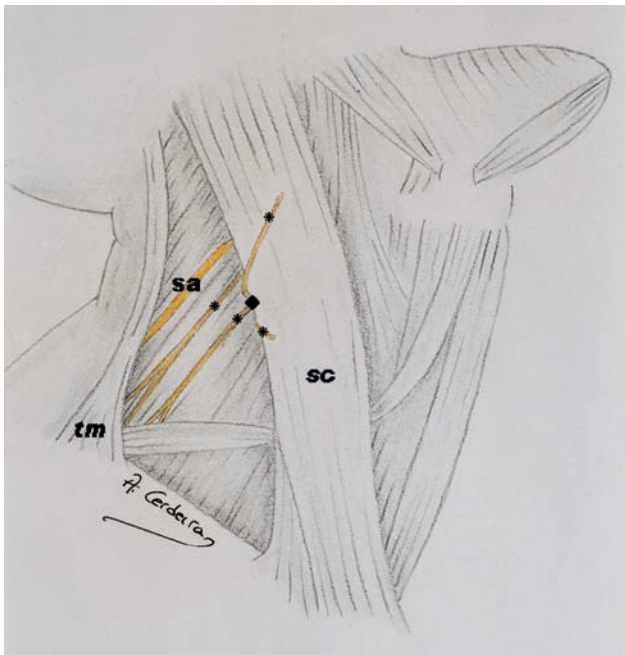


Figure 5-17 Relations between the spinal accessory nerve and the branches of the cervical plexus within the posterior triangle of the neck. sa, spinal accessory nerve; sc, sternocleidomastoid muscle; tm, trapezius muscle; ◆, Erb's point; *, branches of the cervical plexus.

cervical plexus that follow a similar but more superficial course (Fig. 4-37). Although it is usually not necessary, the novice surgeon may find electric stimulation useful to confirm the location of the spinal accessory nerve in the posterior triangle.

THE SPINAL ACCESSORY MANEUVER

Osvaldo Suárez used the term *spinal accessory maneuver* to refer to the surgical step in which the fibrofatty tissue surrounding the spinal accessory nerve in the upper jugular region is passed beneath the nerve to be removed in continuity with the rest of the specimen (Fig. 5-18).

After the spinal accessory nerve has been completely isolated on its course from the sternocleidomastoid muscle to the internal jugular vein, the tissue lying posterior and superior to the nerve is dissected from the splenius capitis and levator scapulae muscles (Fig. 5-18A). Once dissected from the plane of the deep muscles, the tissue is passed underneath the nerve to be removed en bloc with the rest of the specimen (Fig. 5-18B).

At this moment, two more hints may help the forthcoming dissection.

1. The tissue that has been passed beneath the nerve should also be freed from the uppermost part of the internal jugular vein (Figs. 5-18B and 5-19). This facilitates the dissection of the carotid sheath in a later step of the operation.
2. After the spinal accessory maneuver has been completed, the dissection is continued anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle in a downward direction for a few more centimeters. Keeping the sternocleidomastoid muscle retracted posteriorly, a number 10 knife blade is used to cut the tissue located below the entrance of spinal accessory nerve, until the underlying levator scapulae muscle is noted (Figs. 5-19 and 5-20). This cut is taken inferiorly to the level of Erb's point, and helps in the dissection of the deep muscles that will be performed in a later step of the operation.

THE TRANSVERSE CERVICAL VESSELS

The transverse cervical artery and vein constitute important anatomical landmarks in the posterior triangle of the neck. The transverse cervical artery is one of the branches of the thyrocervical trunk. The variations in the branches and the exact manner of branching of the thyrocervical trunk are numerous (Fig. 4-39). However, the prevailing patterns usually show at least one branch that runs almost transversely across the neck, anterior to the anterior scalene muscle and the brachial plexus (Fig. 5-21).

The transverse cervical artery is usually accompanied by a vein. Both are found within the fibrofatty tissue of the supraclavicular fossa and often may be preserved during functional neck dissection. However, there is an inconstant ascending branch from the thyrocervical trunk that usually must be ligated and divided to allow a complete dissection of the supraclavicular fossa. This ascending cervical artery may arise from the inferior thyroid artery or from other arteries at the base of the neck, and it is frequently represented by more than one vessel.

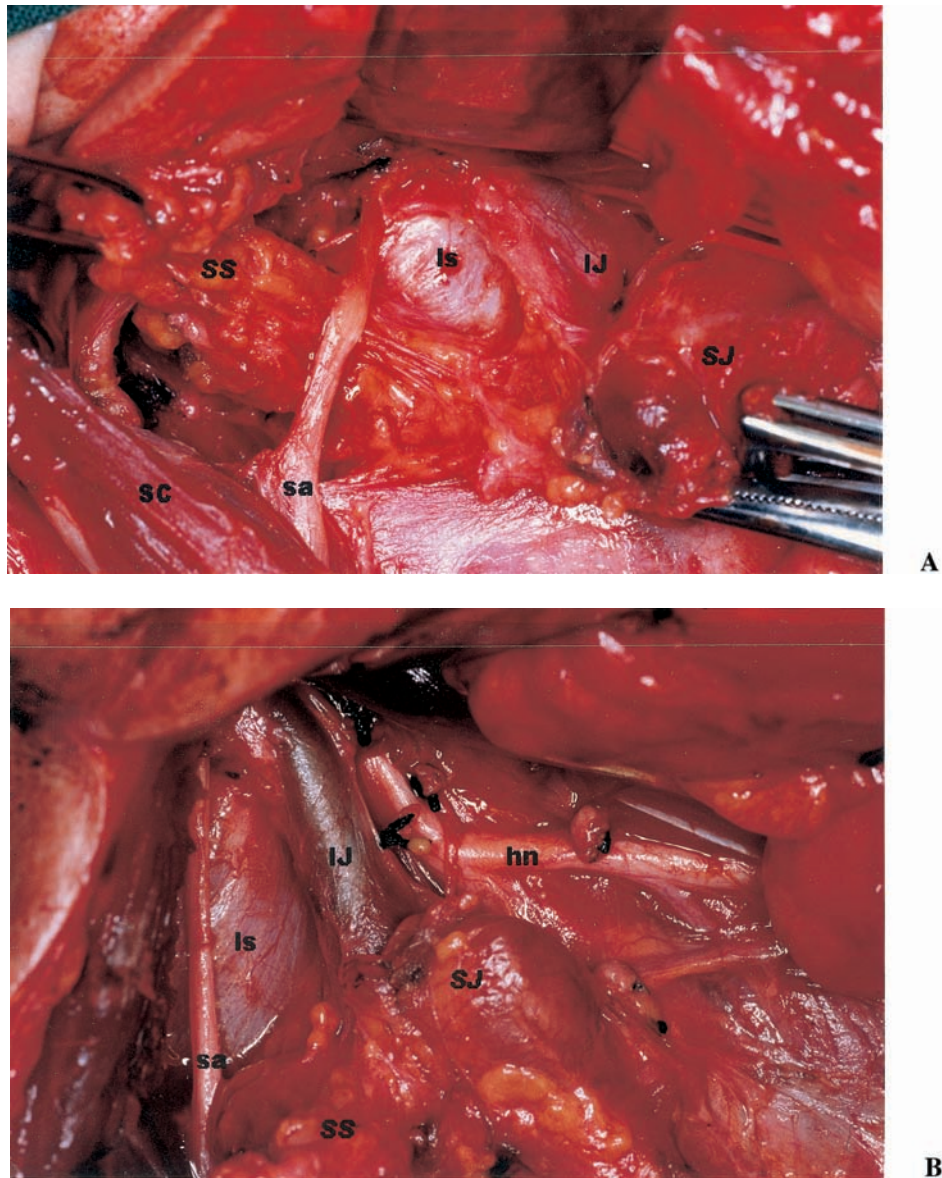


Figure 5-18 Spinal accessory maneuver on the right side. (A). The fibrofatty tissue of the upper spinal accessory region has been dissected from the deep muscular floor. (B). The dissected tissue has been passed beneath the nerve to join the specimen coming from the submandibular area. sa, spinal accessory nerve; Is, levator scapulae muscle; IJ, internal jugular vein; hn, hypoglossal nerve; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; SS, specimen from the upper spinal accessory region; SJ, specimen from the upper jugular and submandibular area.

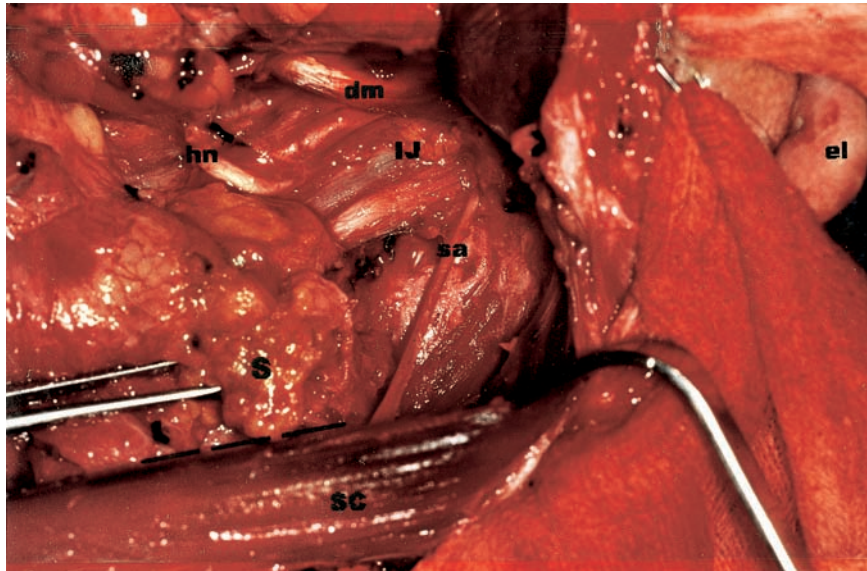


Figure 5-19 The spinal accessory maneuver is completed and the specimen has been dissected from the upper part of the internal jugular vein on the left side. A final cut is made below the spinal accessory nerve (-----). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; sa, spinal accessory nerve; IJ, internal jugular vein; hn, hypoglossal nerve; dm, digastric muscle; el, ear lobule; S, specimen from the upper jugular and spinal accessory area.

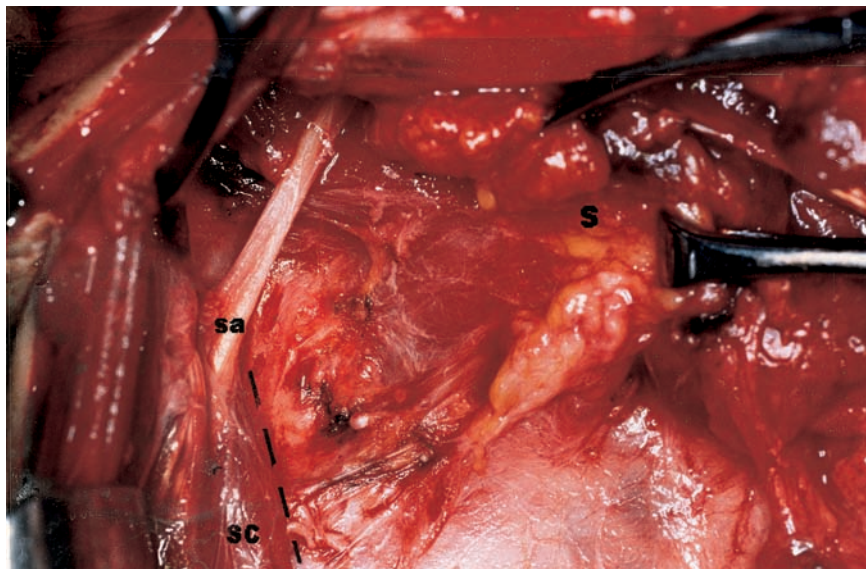


Figure 5-20 Before approaching the supraclavicular area, a final downward cut is made anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle (-----). This cut extends approximately 2 cm below the spinal accessory nerve and should be carried deep to the levator scapulae muscle (right side). SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; sa, spinal accessory nerve; S, specimen from the upper spinal accessory region.

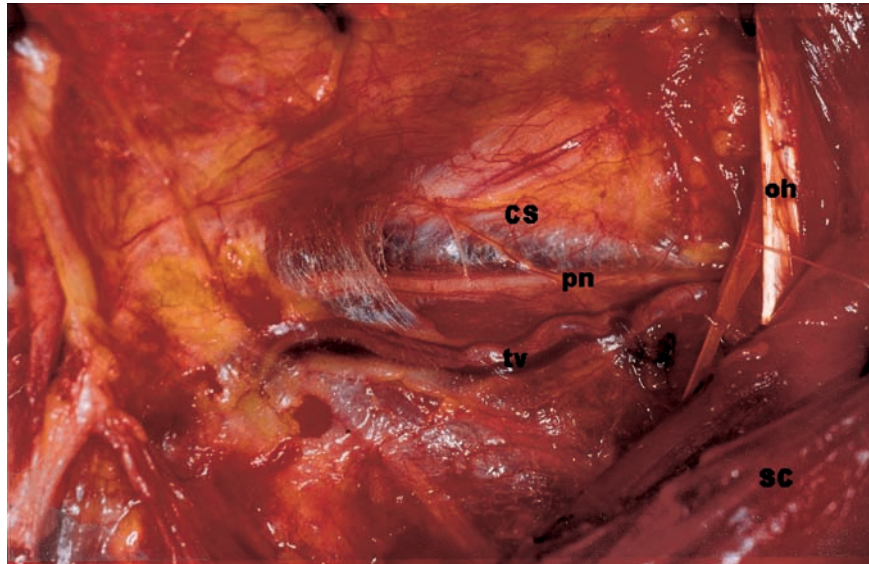


Figure 5-21 Right supraclavicular fossa after removal of its lymphatic contents. CS, carotid sheath; pn, phrenic nerve; tv, transverse cervical vessels; oh, omohyoid muscle; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle.

PRESERVING THE BRANCHES OF THE CERVICAL PLEXUS

As already mentioned, the cervical plexus has important connections to the spinal accessory nerve. A branch from the second cervical nerve typically joins the spinal accessory nerve before it enters the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Also, branches from the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves join the spinal accessory nerve (Fig. 5-22). Although the branches connecting the cervical plexus with the spinal accessory nerve are believed to be sensory, surgical evidence suggests that their preservation results in better shoulder function.

A thorough knowledge of the anatomy of the cervical plexus is necessary to preserve the connecting branches with the spinal accessory nerve. The cervical plexus is formed by the ventral rami of the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves, and also sometimes with a contribution from the first (Fig. 2-20). This neural network has two types of branches, superficial or cutaneous, and deep. The superficial branches arise from a series of loops between the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves. The most constant are the lesser occipital, the great auricular, the transverse cervical, and the supraclavicular nerves. Most of these sensory branches will be transected during the operation.

On the other hand, the deep branches are largely motor, except for the contribution to the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles, where controversy still remains. The deep branches include the ansa hypoglossi, or ansa cervicalis (Fig. 5-23), the phrenic nerve (Fig. 5-21), and the branches to the trapezius muscle (Fig. 5-22). Except for the ansa cervicalis, whose trajectory is different, the deep branches of the cervical plexus should be preserved by keeping the dissection superficial to their course. The anterior cervical nerves should be sectioned distal to the point where the deep branches leave the main root (Fig. 4-42). The motor supply to the levator scapulae muscle can also be preserved by staying superficial to the deep layer of the cervical fascia at the level of the midportion of the levator scapulae. This is where the neurovascular supply enters the muscle.

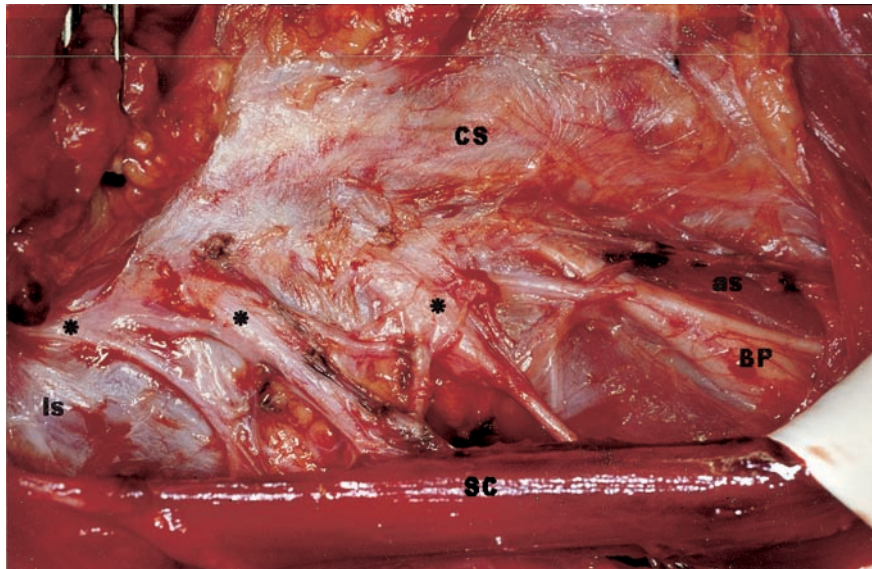


Figure 5-22 The deep branches of the cervical plexus have been preserved on the right side. SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; as, anterior scalene muscle; ls, levator scapulae muscle; BP, brachial plexus; CS, carotid sheath; *, deep branches of the cervical plexus.

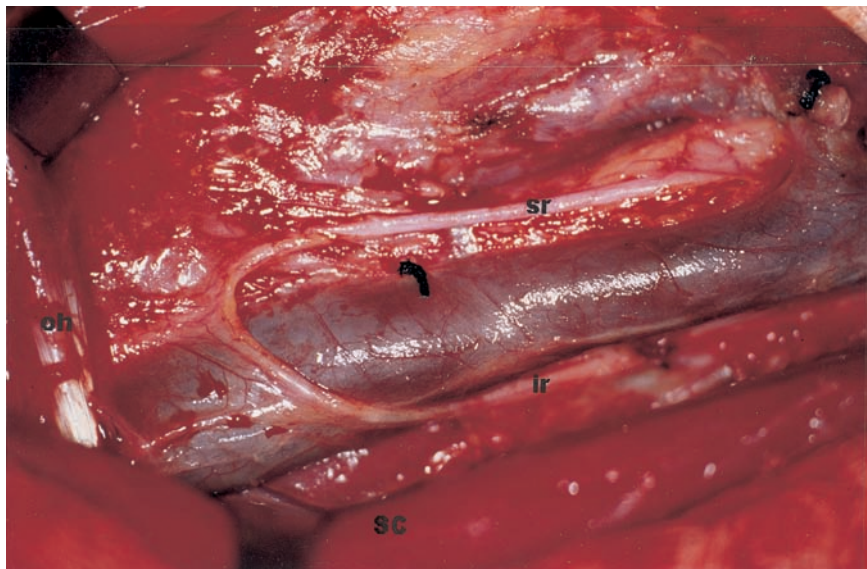


Figure 5-23 Ansa cervicalis on the left side of the neck. sr, superior root of the ansa cervicalis; ir, inferior root of the ansa cervicalis; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle.

PRESERVING THE PHRENIC NERVE

The phrenic nerve is a deep branch of the cervical plexus with neural contribution from the brachial plexus. It usually arises from the third, fourth, and fifth cervical nerves (Fig. 2-20). The nerve courses downward with a slight medial inclination over the anterior face of the anterior scalene muscle. It runs directly on the anterior surface of the muscle fibers, between them and the overlying fascia, which is the prevertebral layer of the cervical fascia (Figs. 5-21 and 4-40). The phrenic nerve provides motor function to the ipsilateral diaphragm.

The easiest way to avoid injuring the phrenic nerve is to stay superficial to the prevertebral layer of the cervical fascia at the level of the anterior scalene muscle. This will keep the phrenic nerve protected by the fascial layer. When approaching the carotid sheath, the anterior superficial branches of the cervical plexus must be transected distal to the exit of the phrenic roots to preserve the deep cervical contributions and maintain the anatomical and functional integrity of the phrenic nerve.

THE SYMPATHETIC TRUNK

The cervical sympathetic chain consists of several ganglia, between two and four, and the trunk connecting them. The sympathetic trunk lies medial to the phrenic nerve and posterior to the carotid sheath. It may be found during the dissection of the carotid sheath, when the surgeon carries the dissection too far medially over the deep muscles (Figs. 5-24 and 5-25). In these cases it may be mistaken for the vagus nerve when, in reality, the vagus nerve runs more anteriorly within the carotid sheath, not posterior to it, between the carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. Precise knowledge of the anatomy of this area is important to prevent injury to the sympathetic trunk.

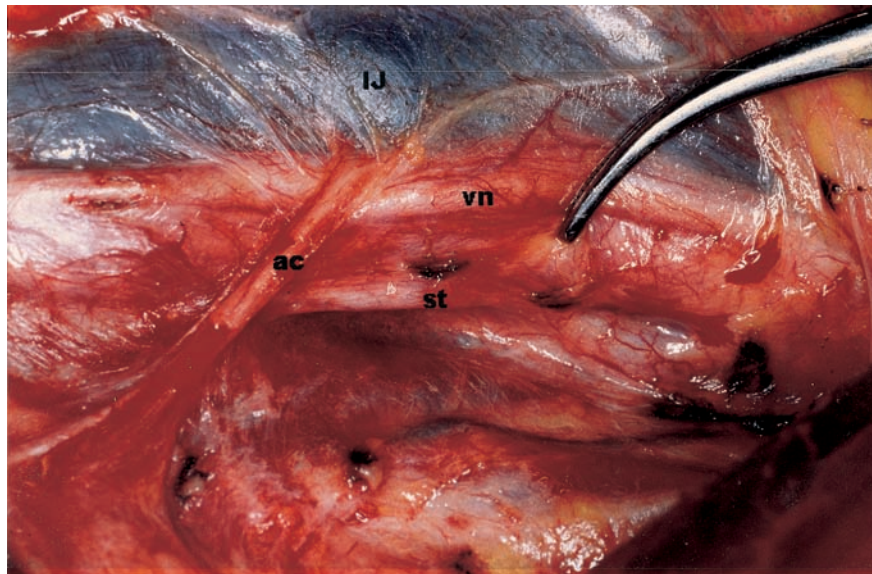


Figure 5-24 Lateral view of the contents of the carotid sheath on the right side. IJ, internal jugular vein; vn, vagus nerve; st, sympathetic trunk; ac, ansa cervicalis.

The basic references for identifying the sympathetic trunk are its close relation to the posterior wall of the carotid artery and its medial situation with respect to other neural neck structures. Unlike the phrenic nerve, the sympathetic trunk does not lie upon the anterior scalene muscle, but medial to it.

DANGER POINTS IN THE DISSECTION OF THE INTERNAL JUGULAR VEIN

Preservation of the internal jugular vein is one of the main advantages of functional neck dissection. Under normal conditions this is not a difficult step of the operation. However, some particular details may contribute to a successful dissection of this important structure.

We prefer the scalpel for this part of the operation, which is usually striking given its apparent “danger.” However, it is our experience that, if properly performed, knife dissection of the carotid sheath is the most effective, clean, and safe way to dissect the lymphatic tissue in this area.

The general rules for safe knife dissection that have been previously described in this chapter must be carefully followed. Adequate tension must be applied to all tissues. Gentle movements must be performed by the surgeon and surrounding personnel. The knife blade must be directed obliquely against the wall of the internal jugular vein (Fig. 5-26). And, finally, the entire length of the vein must be dissected in a continuous fashion, from the clavicle to the mastoid.

In spite of all these measures, two danger points are usually found at the beginning of every dissection of the carotid sheath. They correspond to both ends of the dissected internal jugular vein. We refer to these points as the “two initial folds” because here the vein wall folds as a consequence of the traction exerted by the dissected tissue (Figs. 5-27 and 5-28). Before further dissection of the carotid sheath is accomplished, these two folds should be carefully removed

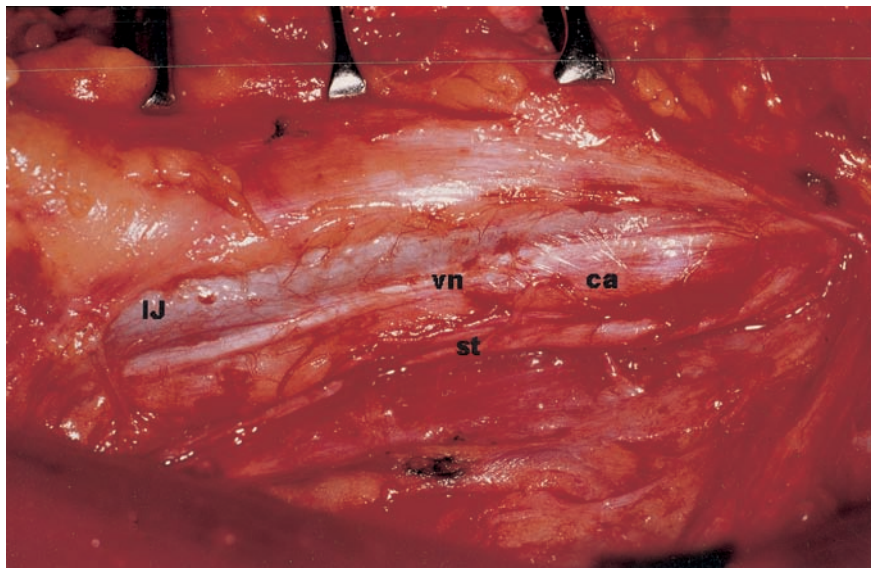


Figure 5-25 The sympathetic trunk lies posterior to the carotid sheath, whereas the vagus nerve runs between the internal jugular vein and the carotid artery (right side). IJ, internal jugular vein; ca, carotid artery; vn, vagus nerve; st, sympathetic trunk.

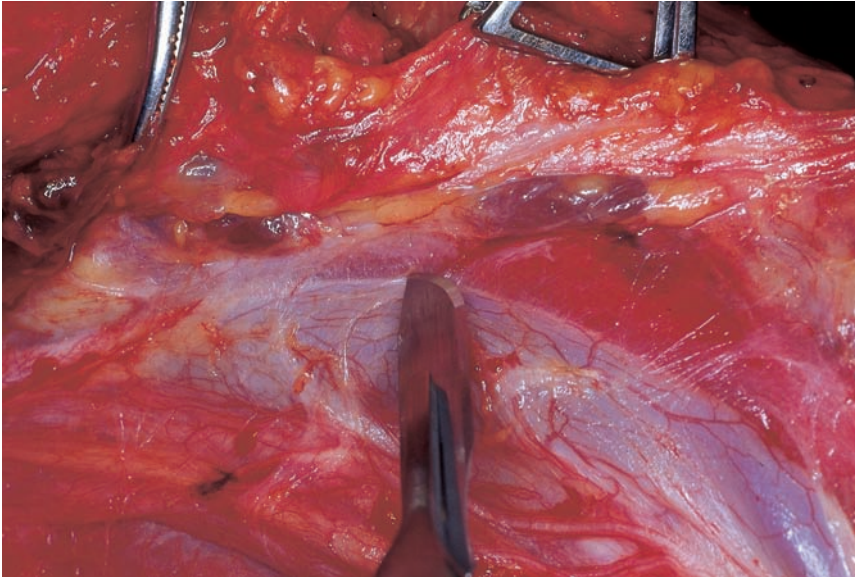


Figure 5-26
Adequate positioning of the scalpel is crucial for a safe dissection over the internal jugular vein.

without injuring the internal jugular vein. It is important to know that the folded wall of the vein is especially sensible to the cutting edge of sharp instruments (scissors, scalpel). Thus, extreme care must be taken when working in these areas.

The upper fold may be less marked if the tissue from the upper spinal accessory nerve region was previously dissected off the wall of the internal jugular vein as described during the spinal accessory maneuver (Figs. 5-18B, 5-19, and 5-27). The lower fold is usually located at the level of the crossing between the omohyoid muscle and the internal jugular vein (Fig. 5-28A). In fact, the

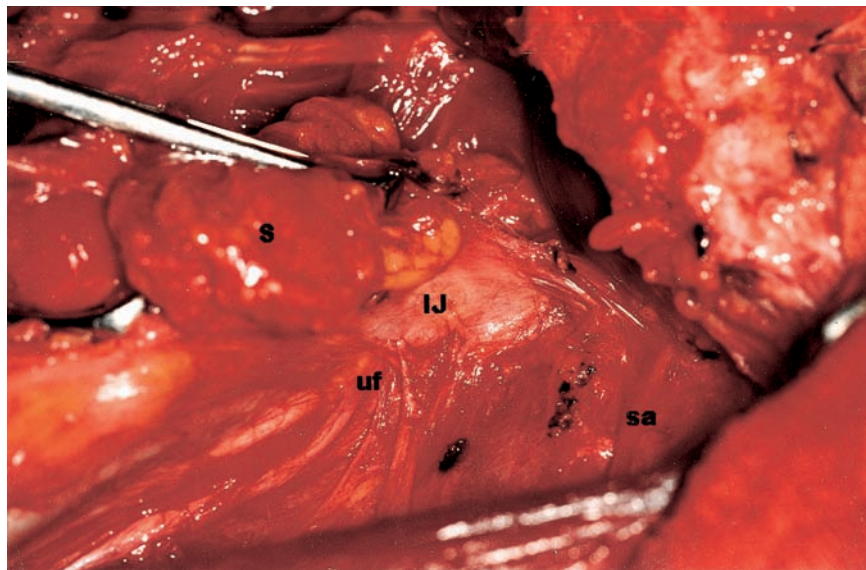


Figure 5-27 Upper fold of the carotid sheath at the internal jugular vein on the left side of the neck. To facilitate the dissection at this level, the tissue was dissected off the upper part of the internal jugular vein at the end of the spinal accessory maneuver. uf, upper fold; IJ, internal jugular vein; sa, spinal accessory nerve; S, specimen from the upper spinal accessory region.

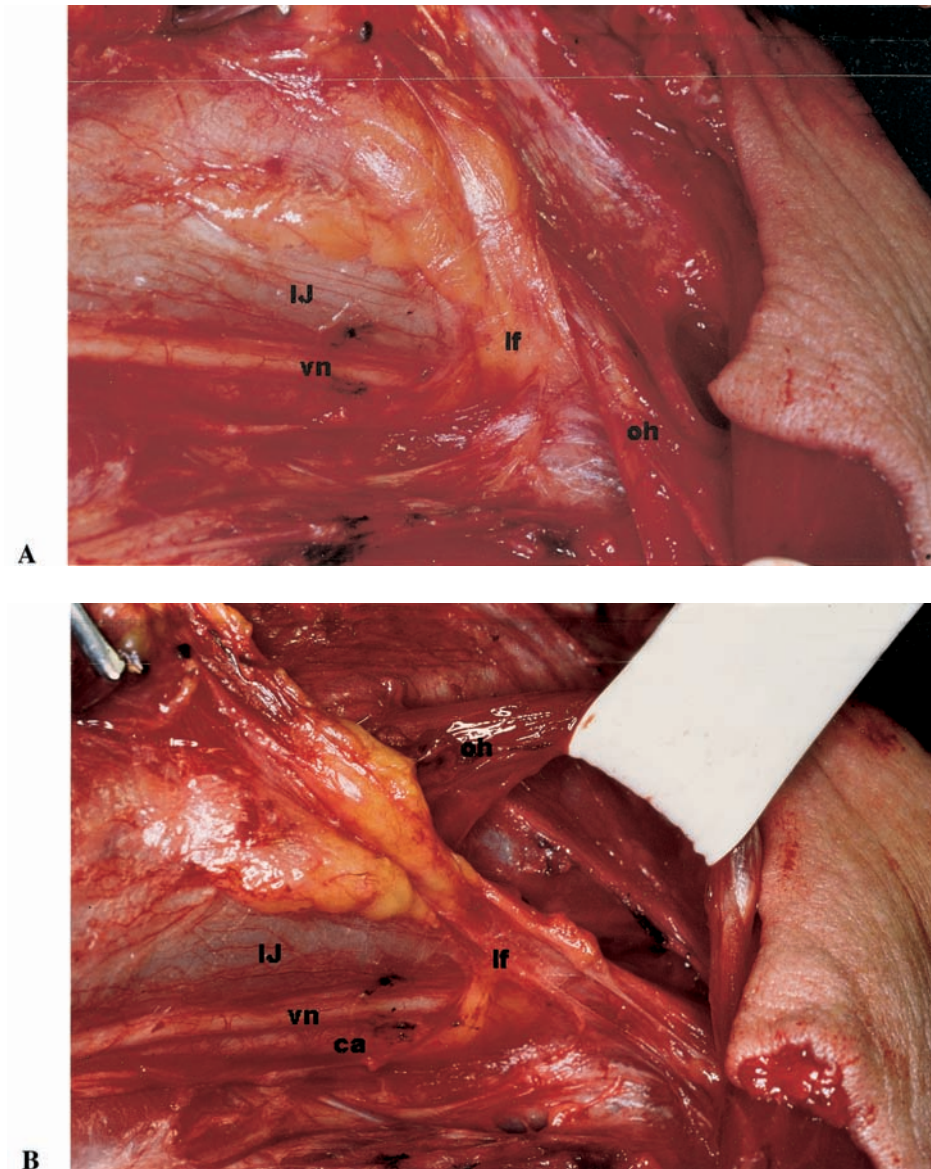


Figure 5-28 Danger points in the dissection of the carotid sheath. Lower fold over the internal jugular vein on the right side of the neck. (A) The lower fold develops at the crossing of the omohyoid muscle and the internal jugular vein. (B) Retraction of the omohyoid muscle facilitates the dissection of the lower fold. lf, lower fold; IJ, internal jugular vein; ca, carotid artery; vn, vagus nerve; oh, omohyoid muscle.

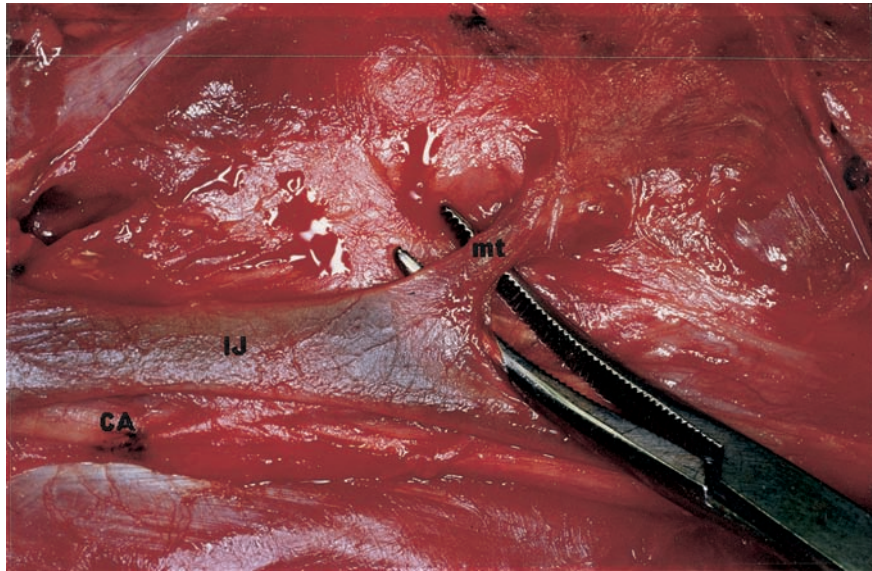


Figure 5-29 A middle thyroid vein drains into the internal jugular vein on the right side. IJ, internal jugular vein; CA, carotid artery; mt, middle thyroid vein draining into the internal jugular vein.

omohyoid muscle greatly contributes to this fold. Thus, if the omohyoid muscle is to be removed with the primary tumor, it can be transected at this moment to help the dissection of the lower part of the carotid sheath. On the other hand, when the omohyoid muscle is to be preserved, inferior retraction of the muscle allows better exposure of the lower part of the internal jugular vein and facilitates the dissection of the lower fold (Fig. 5-28B).

After both ends of the internal jugular vein have been freed, the dissection must be carried along the entire length of the vein, cutting obliquely with the scalpel over the tense wall of the vein. As the medial aspect of the vein is approached, several tributaries may be identified. The smaller veins can be cauterized, taking care not to injure the wall of the internal jugular vein, whereas the larger trunks need to be ligated and divided (Fig. 5-29).

THE THORACIC DUCT

The large lymphatic channels that terminate at the base of the neck are the thoracic duct on the left and the right lymphatic duct on the right. The right lymphatic duct is not a common source of problems during neck dissection. However, injuring the thoracic duct during the operation results in persistent chylous leak that may be extremely difficult to solve in patients with a functional approach. Preservation of the sternocleidomastoid muscle in these patients decreases the efficacy of the usual compressive maneuvers that are used to stop chylous leak. Thus, early recognition of lymphatic leakage during the operation is crucial in order to repair the injury before closure. Precise knowledge of the cervical course of the thoracic duct is fundamental to avoid postoperative problems.

The exact end point of the thoracic duct is variable because it may open into the internal jugular vein, the subclavian vein, or the angle of junction between them. Also, the termination of the duct

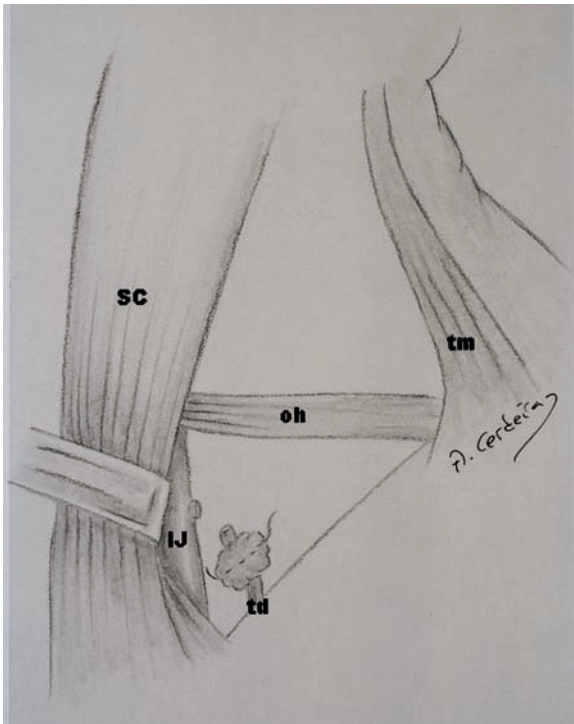


Figure 5-30 Repair of an injured thoracic duct requires the use of muscle, fascia, or adipose tissue to surround the fragile wall of this major lymph duct. td, thoracic duct; IJ, internal jugular vein; SC, sternocleidomastoid muscle; tm, trapezius muscle; oh, omohyoid muscle.

may be doubled, tripled, or even quadrupled. All these variations, along with the frail thin walls of the duct, facilitate its injury at surgery.

The best way to avoid injuring the thoracic duct is by not approaching the base of the neck on the left side unless it is absolutely necessary. When the operation must proceed to the lowest part of the left side of the neck, the surgeon must be aware of the variable anatomy of the thoracic duct when approaching the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins. If the duct is to be ligated to include in the dissection the tissue at the level of the final portion of the internal jugular vein, additional tissue must be included in the ligature to avoid sectioning the thin wall of the thoracic duct with the suture. Thus, the area of the duct is surrounded by muscle, fascia, or adipose tissue before being sutured with 3-0 atraumatic silk (Fig. 5-30).

When the duct is inadvertently sectioned, the lymph drains overtly at the base of the neck. This situation must be recognized and repaired during the operation. The typical transparent, slightly yellow liquid with particles of fat positively identifies the presence of lymphorrhea from a cut thoracic duct. In such instances the ruptured opening of the duct must be identified and repaired, including additional tissue in the ligature, as mentioned before. It is not uncommon after involuntary section of the thoracic duct that the open end of the vessel cannot be identified. In these cases the area where the lymph appears at the base of the neck must be sutured, including enough tissue to stop the leak. Attentive examination of the area must be performed after repair to assure the cessation of the leak. Asking the anesthetist to momentarily increase the thoracic pressure may help in the identification of the cut end of the duct and to assess the resolution of the lymphorrhea.

Although the right lymphatic duct is seldom a problem, the same principles must be applied in case of a right chylous leak.

Complications

Postoperative complications after neck surgery have a significant impact on morbidity and health care cost, leading to prolonged hospitalizations, further operations, permanent sequelae, and sometimes, fatal outcome. Aging, poor nutritional status, and chronic diseases of the respiratory, cardiovascular, and other systems (due to alcohol and tobacco abuse) are common factors in most patients with tumors of the upper aerodigestive tract. Salvage surgery after radiation therapy has also been related to higher incidence of complications.

Concerning neck dissection, it is difficult to identify the complications directly related to the procedure and separate them from those associated with removal of the primary tumor because both surgeries are usually performed at the same time. Tables 6-1 and 6-2 summarize the complications that can be more specifically related to neck dissection and will be addressed in this chapter.

CERVICAL COMPLICATIONS

Local Complications

Infection and Serohematoma

Infection following functional and selective neck dissection is unusual, around 3%, and frequently related to hematoma. Infection is more frequent when the neck dissection is associated with surgical procedures that include opening of the aerodigestive tract. The majority of wound infections are related to pharyngocutaneous fistula after laryngectomy. Infection is best prevented by meticulous sterile surgical technique, gentle handling of the tissue, irrigation, and adequate placing of suction catheters. Necrotic tissue, in the form of residue after either ligation or coagulation, is a focus for bacterial growth. Suction catheter minimizes the incidence of hematoma and seroma, which are frequently associated with wound infection by constituting an ideal media for bacterial growth.

Hematoma and seroma are usually due to inadequate hemostasis at the time of surgery, coagulation disorders, drain obstruction, or incorrect placement of drains. Any effective measure that prevents dead space and hematoma is also useful in minimizing infection. We usually place one suction catheter on each side of the neck after neck dissection. Correct functioning of the drain should be checked immediately after surgery and periodically during the early postoperative

TABLE 6.1. Cervical Complications Associated with Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

Local Complications
Infection
Serohematoma
Wound dehiscence
Chylous fistula
Vascular Complications
Hemorrhage
Vascular blowout
Neural Complications
Spinal accessory nerve
Phrenic nerve
Hypoglossal nerve
Vagus nerve
Sympathetic trunk
Mandibular branch of CN VII
Brachial plexus

TABLE 6.2. General Complications Associated with Functional and Selective Neck Dissection

Pulmonary Complications
Pneumonia
Pulmonary embolism
Stress ulcer
Sepsis
Other

period. Inadequate suture of the trachea to the skin in patients requiring tracheostomy results in a cervical opening that prevents vacuum, leading to blood collection and eventually infection, when suction drains are used. The drain is removed on the second or third postoperative day, depending on the output. If seroma develops in spite of these maneuvers, it can be evacuated by needle aspiration, drained through the wound, or observed for gradual absorption. However, prompt drainage will decrease the chances of bacterial contamination.

In procedures not requiring opening of the aerodigestive tract, functional neck dissection is considered a clean surgical procedure, and perioperative antibiotics are not beneficial in preventing infection. Antibiotic prophylaxis is important to decrease the infection rate in some surgical procedures, although it is not the key to the problem in isolated neck dissection. Different antibiotic combinations that cover aerobic and anaerobic bacteria are reported depending on the individual preferences. Dose, time of administration, and type of antibiotic depend on personal preferences and are different at each institution.

Infection should be suspected in a patient with spiking fever, chills, malaise, odor, and swelling or edema of the skin flaps. A small separate incision, or the opening of a limited window in the skin incision, is usually sufficient to drain a serohematoma and prevent further elevation of the flaps with the risk of necrosis and exposure of the great vessels.

Wound Dehiscence

Wound dehiscence is related to inadequate planning of the incision or to infection. Proper placement of the incision should be planned with the patient sitting in the upright position. The location of the incision and its length should be sufficient to allow adequate exposure to minimize the need for vigorous wound retraction intraoperatively. The skin flaps should be carefully protected from retractors or cautery. We usually fix wet towels to the skin flaps to protect the skin throughout the operation and to avoid direct traction over the skin edge. Crosshatch marks should be avoided to improve the cosmetic results and to avoid additional scarring. Methylene blue or surgical pen marks allow proper realignment of long incisions during skin closure without the risk of additional scars.

In previously irradiated patients, careful skin realignment and subcutaneous suture are important to avoid wound dehiscence facilitated by radiation-induced devascularization. When the patient has been heavily radiated and the skin is atrophic, it is better to use mattress sutures,

placing a rubber catheter between the suture and the skin to decrease tension with subsequent ischemia and skin necrosis.

Chylous Fistula

Chylous leakage is an uncommon complication, with a reported incidence of 1 to 2.5%. It is much more frequent on the left side of the neck. When the thoracic duct is to be ligated during surgery, it should be surrounded by muscle, fascia, or adipose tissue to avoid sectioning its thin wall with the ligature. After ligation, the lower part of the left side of the neck must be carefully inspected for chyle pooling. Asking the anesthesiologist to increase the intrathoracic pressure and placing the patient in the Trendelenburg position are helpful in the intraoperative identification of chyle leak in the area of the thoracic duct. It is important to note that in most patients developing postoperative chyle fistula, this was previously identified and apparently controlled intraoperatively.

In the postoperative period, chylous fistula is recognized by the appearance of a milky fluid in the drains. This is usually evident within the first 5 days after surgery. The chylous origin of the fluid can be confirmed by measuring the content of triglycerides, usually over 100 mg/dL. When chylous leak is suspected, dietary modifications can be prescribed. Low fat diet, either enteral or parenteral, is usually recommended because medium-chain triglycerides are absorbed directly into the portal venous circulation, avoiding the thoracic duct. Elevation of the head, repeated aspiration, and pressure dressing are also recommended. However, it is important to note that preservation of the sternocleidomastoid muscle in functional and selective neck dissection constitutes an important obstacle for successful compression. Insertion of a pressure packing impregnated with irritant solution, like Betadine, into the area of the thoracic duct has also been recommended as a nonsurgical method to stop chylous leak. The daily volume of the leak has been reported to range from 80 to 4500 mL. When more than 500 mL of chyle drain per day, nonsurgical stop is unlikely.

If no response is found upon conservative treatment, the lower part of the neck should be surgically explored. Before surgery is attempted it may be helpful to put the patient on a high lipid enteral diet to give chyle a thick and milky consistency, which will improve the intraoperative identification of the leak.

Vascular Complications

Bleeding

Bleeding is not a frequent complication after neck dissection, but when it happens, it is important to determine whether the hemorrhage is due to a small superficial vessel or to a more important deep vessel. Superficial bleeding is usually bright red, it does not bulge the skin flaps, and it tends to stop with gentle external compression or by placing a stitch around the bleeding point. Generalized oozing of blood can produce up to 500 mL in a few hours. On the other hand, ballooning of the skin flaps or filling the drain system containers with more than 250 mL of blood in less than 30 minutes indicates a more serious hemorrhage.

In our experience, the most frequent sources of venous bleeding after functional and selective neck dissection are the retromandibular vein at the tail of the parotid gland, the branches of the transverse cervical vein in the supraclavicular fossa, and small affluents to the internal jugular vein. When the tail of the parotid gland is included in the resection, the retromandibular vein should be identified and ligated. Dissection of area IV and the lower part of area V may result in inadvertent sectioning of small branches of the transverse cervical vein. When the patient's blood pressure is low, the inferior stump of the transected vein may retract caudally without bleeding during the operation. Then, when the patient wakes up from the anesthesia, cough and increased abdominal pressure may induce bleeding. The same may happen when small branches of the

internal jugular vein are sectioned during the dissection of the carotid sheath, especially those located on the posterior aspect of the vein.

To identify any possible source of venous bleeding not detected during the operation, it is important to wash the surgical field with saline at the end of the operation and ask the anesthetist to increase the venous pressure to force bleeding from unnoticed opened veins. When hemoclips are used during the operation, care must be taken while cleaning to avoid unintentional displacement of the clips, leaving a collapsed vessel that can eventually bleed with a sudden increase in venous pressure. On the other hand, the small veins that branch directly from the internal jugular vein are better ligated than cauterized, especially when they are to be sectioned close to the wall of the internal jugular vein because necrosis induced by the cautery may produce hemorrhage in the late postoperative period. Special attention should be paid to electrocautery in previously irradiated patients.

Arterial bleeding is more evident at surgery than venous bleeding. It is usually secondary to malposition or displacement of a ligature. The most frequent sources of arterial bleeding in our experience are the superior laryngeal pedicle and the inferior thyroid artery.

When hemorrhage is suspected in the immediate postoperative period, adequate blood replacement and airway maintenance should be ensured as first priority. Then, the patient should be taken to the operating room where the neck should be explored under aseptic conditions with good illumination and adequate material. Evacuation of blood clots and hematoma, along with washing the surgical field, helps in identifying the bleeding vessels and reduces the risk of infection. The use of compressive dressing is not recommended because, although it may reduce postoperative edema, it does not stop the development of hematoma, and may in fact delay its recognition.

Vascular Blowout

In most cases, this dramatic complication is not related to neck dissection but to other problems associated with surgery for the primary tumor, especially pharyngocutaneous fistula. This is a frequent complication in patients surgically treated for laryngeal and hypopharyngeal carcinomas. Continuous leakage of saliva into the wound may produce secondary infection and necrosis, which eventually may lead to a blowout of any of the major vessels in the neck. Other factors such as malnutrition, diabetes, and previous radiation therapy increase the risk of vascular blowout by increasing the risk of local infection and fistula formation. Any bleeding from the wound should be considered an alert sign. If bleeding persists and a pharyngocutaneous fistula is present surgical exploration of the neck is recommended.

Vascular blowout is especially serious when it affects the carotid artery. This is an often fatal complication and a terrible experience for the patient, the family, and the treatment team. On the other hand, the internal jugular vein blowout, although serious, seldom has a fatal outcome. Rupture of the internal jugular vein is often preceded by previous hemorrhage of lower intensity. No attempt should be made to control the hemorrhage at bedside by placing hemostats because this maneuver usually produces further rupture of the vessel, mainly in those cases associated with infection secondary to pharyngocutaneous fistula. The airway must be ensured, a good intravenous fluid line should be used, and blood samples for cross-matching should be obtained while pressure is maintained over the vessel. Control of massive bleeding from the carotid artery or the internal jugular vein should be attempted in the operating room with adequate personnel, monitoring, and surgical material.

The carotid artery should be explored caudal first, until a normal artery is found. The risk of neurological sequelae from ligation of the common carotid artery must be accepted because its repair is seldom possible due to the lack of normal walls in the proximity of the ruptured area. On the other hand, ligation of the internal jugular vein on one side has no important side effects, even after bilateral procedures, because the patency of the contralateral vein ensures acceptable blood

drainage. The situation changes when both veins are ligated simultaneously. Facial and cerebral edema can dramatically appear within a few hours after surgery and must be combated by positioning the patient at 45 degrees, avoiding pressure dressing, checking fluid and electrolyte balance, and monitoring central venous pressure. Cerebral edema is a serious complication, producing progressive neurological deficit that may lead to coma. It requires careful management by taking the patient to the intensive care unit until normal circulation is regained. Long-lasting facial edema may be alleviated by frequent massage that contributes to the development of collateral circulation. This maneuver is especially important in previously irradiated patients in whom normal circulation is further impaired as a result of radiotherapy.

Neural Complications

Spinal Accessory Nerve

Dysfunction of the spinal accessory nerve and subsequent shoulder pain after radical neck dissection is one of the reasons that led the search for less aggressive techniques for the management of neck metastasis in head and neck cancer patients. Unfortunately, preservation of the nerve does not always mean nerve function preservation. Every effort should be made to avoid unnecessary trauma to the nerve, especially stretching or using electrocautery in its vicinity. Damage of the spinal accessory nerve produces denervation of the trapezius muscle, one of the main shoulder adductor muscles. This results in the so-called shoulder syndrome characterized by pain, weakness, deformity of the shoulder girdle, and inability to abduct the shoulder above 90 degrees.

The shoulder syndrome can appear not only after trauma to the nerve, but also when its anastomosis with the cervical plexus is severed. The role of the neural connections between the spinal accessory nerve and some deep branches of the cervical plexus has been widely debated in the literature. Although most anatomy textbooks insist on the sensory nature of this connection, surgical evidence suggests a motor participation of the cervical plexus on shoulder function. The branch of Maubrac, though not always present, may contribute to the motor supply of the shoulder. This nerve is sometimes present as a dominant branch with two or three additional smaller branches that join the spinal accessory nerve. When these nerves are visible, every effort should be made to preserve them as long as it is oncologically safe. The spinal accessory nerve frequently divides before entering the muscle, and all branches must be preserved to obtain the best shoulder function.

A study specifically focused on quality of life issues and pain after neck dissection with preservation or transection of the spinal accessory nerve found that patients in whom the nerve was preserved had less pain and less need for medication. Thus, although preservation of the nerve at surgery does not guarantee normal function, fewer sequelae and better results are obtained in nerve sparing procedures.

Surgical preservation of the spinal accessory nerve is best accomplished if the nerve is located before further manipulation is carried in the area. This is a general policy that should be carefully followed in every surgical procedure. As in a war, the key to surgical success is "finding the 'enemy' before he finds us." The first place to look for the nerve is at its entrance into the sternocleidomastoid muscle. This usually happens on the medial surface of the upper third of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, close to its posterior border. A number of small vessels usually accompany the nerve at this point. It is important to avoid blind placement of hemostats and careless monopolar cautery in the vicinity of the nerve. Bipolar coagulation may be used in this area to decrease the risk of nerve damage.

Sometimes the anatomical features of the neck or special tumor conditions may obstruct the identification of the spinal accessory nerve at its entrance into the sternocleidomastoid muscle. On these occasions the search must be taken medially to identify the nerve where it crosses the internal jugular vein. This usually happens with the nerve running superficial to the vein at the level of the

lateral process of the atlas. However, it is not unusual to see the nerve crossing posterior to the vein or even across it (Figs. 4-28, and 5-16). This eventuality has been reported in 18 to 30% of cases and should be kept in mind to avoid unintentional damage to the spinal accessory nerve or to the internal jugular vein.

Identification is not the only goal of a nerve sparing procedure. Gentle manipulation of the nerve is of the utmost importance if nerve function is to be preserved. Muscle retraction in the area of entrance of the spinal accessory nerve should be gentle to prevent nerve stretching leading to neurapraxia. It is also important not to retract the nerve along with the muscle during the dissection because this will also result in direct trauma with function impairment.

The novice surgeon is usually concerned about nerve identification at the upper part of the surgical field as previously exposed. However, this is not the easiest place to damage the nerve during functional and selective neck dissection. The most dangerous area for injuring the spinal accessory nerve in a complete neck dissection, including area V, is the vicinity of Erb's point, where the nerve leaves the sternocleidomastoid muscle toward the trapezius muscle. In this region the spinal accessory nerve is located directly underneath the skin and surrounded by fibrofatty tissue. The spinal accessory nerve leaves the sternocleidomastoid muscle approximately 1 cm deep to Erb's point and follows an imaginary line connecting the angle of the mandible with the acromion. The position of the patient's head along with the traction exerted by the surgeon during the dissection may displace the nerve from its original course, creating a slight anterior curvature where the nerve may be inadvertently damaged. This displacement is due to the nerve connections with the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves. Precise knowledge of neck anatomy is crucial to avoid injuring the spinal accessory nerve in this area.

Phrenic Nerve

Injury of the phrenic nerve results in paralysis of the ipsilateral diaphragm because this nerve is the only motor supply to the muscle that is responsible for 70% of respiratory movement. There are two maneuvers during which the phrenic nerve may be injured: (1) at the dissection of the fibrofatty tissue over the scalene fascia and (2) while sectioning the anterior branches of the cervical plexus.

The phrenic nerve runs under the fascia covering the anterior and medial surface of the anterior scalene muscle. A useful anatomical landmark for the identification of the phrenic nerve is the transverse cervical artery and vein that always cross anterior to the nerve. A frequent mistake of the novice surgeon is to include the fascia of the anterior scalene muscle in the dissection, enclosing the phrenic nerve with the specimen. To avoid this, the phrenic nerve must be identified before further dissection is performed on the area. The surgeon must remain superficial to the scalene fascia while following the transverse cervical vessels anteriorly until the phrenic nerve comes into view. Once identified, the nerve should be followed upward before transecting the anterior branches of the cervical plexus. This helps to preserve the nerve roots of the phrenic nerve coming from the third, fourth, and fifth cervical nerves.

Hypoglossal Nerve

The hypoglossal nerve can be found in the upper part of the surgical field (area II) close to the jugulodigastric node, which is one of the most frequent areas of regional metastases in head and neck cancer. The nerve is usually identified during the dissection of the submandibular gland where it can be seen underneath the lingual veins. These should be handled carefully because of their fragile wall. If bleeding from the lingual veins occurs near the hypoglossal nerve, blind placement of hemostats and monopolar coagulation should be avoided to prevent injury to the nerve. It is also recommended that the hypoglossal nerve be identified prior to ligation of the facial artery in the submandibular triangle.

Vagus Nerve

The vagus nerve is widely exposed during the dissection of the carotid sheath and should be considered an important “allied” during this step of the operation. The dissection of the carotid sheath begins with a longitudinal incision over the vagus nerve that herein lies between the carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. This maneuver should be gently performed to avoid injury to the nerve. Deep incision into the carotid sheath may damage its neurovascular contents, and the fascial plane for the dissection will be lost.

Another risk area for the vagus nerve during functional and selective neck dissection is the lower part of the neck in the vicinity of the thoracic duct. When the operation requires ligation of the thoracic duct the vagus nerve must be identified before the duct is surrounded by tissue and ligated to prevent its inclusion within the ligature.

Sympathetic Trunk

The sympathetic trunk lies deep and medial to the carotid artery. When the dissection over the deep cervical muscles is taken too far medially behind the carotid sheath the sympathetic trunk is at risk. To avoid damaging this important neural structure, the dissection must proceed anteriorly as soon as the carotid sheath comes into view. Then, a longitudinal incision is made over the vagus nerve, along the entire length of the carotid sheath, leaving the sympathetic trunk between the prevertebral fascia and the carotid artery.

Mandibular Branch of the Facial Nerve

The mandibular branch of the facial nerve runs on the undersurface of the platysma muscle, superficial to the facial vein. It is particularly vulnerable during the elevation of the flaps as well as at the dissection of the submandibular gland. Damage to this nerve results in altered motion of the corner of the mouth as a consequence of paralysis of the orbicularis oris muscle.

As with any other nerve, the best way to avoid its damage is by precise identification before further resection is performed. However, this task is tedious and may expose the nerve to unnecessary risk. There is a surgical maneuver that uses the facial vein as a landmark to protect the nerve and retract it from the surgical field (see Chapters 4 and 5) (Figs. 4-19 and 5-8). Shortly, the facial vein is identified at the lower part of the submandibular gland, where it is ligated and divided. The superior stump of the vein is retracted superiorly and attached to the upper skin flap. This reflects the marginal branch away from the field of dissection. With this approach it is possible to ensure the preservation of the marginal nerve with a quick and easy maneuver that reduces the risk of damage associated with a direct identification of this thin neural structure.

GENERAL COMPLICATIONS

As already mentioned, poor general condition is frequently found in patients with malignant tumors of the upper aerodigestive tract undergoing functional and selective neck dissection. The incidence of associated diseases in this group of patients increases the potential for medical complications in the early postoperative period. Again, it is difficult to identify which complications can be attributed to the treatment of the primary tumor and which are the consequence of neck dissection, when both procedures are simultaneously performed. In general, neck dissection alone, although a major head and neck surgical procedure, should not be regarded as a high-risk surgery, and it is not usually associated with a significant complication rate. Identification of preoperative factors that may lead to postoperative complications in this patient population not only has a predictive value but also may guide proactive interventions whenever possible.

Table 6-2 shows the most common general complications in patients undergoing functional and selective neck dissection.

Pulmonary Complications

Pulmonary complications, which are frequent after head and neck surgery, are probably associated with toxic habits in this group of patients. Some studies suggest increased risk of pulmonary complications with increasing exposure to smoking and drinking. Most head and neck cancer patients have a moderate risk of pulmonary embolism, and if not contraindication for anticoagulation is present, low molecular weight heparin can be used. However, no significant difference has been reported in the rate of pulmonary complications in patients with neck dissection. This is logical because this type of postoperative complication is very closely related to disturbance of the upper airway, which does not happen when neck dissection is performed as the sole surgical procedure.

Pneumonia and pulmonary insufficiency are the most frequent pulmonary complications after head and neck surgery. However, they are more closely related to the symptoms and management of the primary tumor than to neck dissection.

Pulmonary embolism is a significant cause of postoperative morbidity in general and orthopedic surgery, but it is usually not a major problem after head and neck surgery. Pathophysiological effects vary from small pulmonary infarcts to life-threatening cardiogenic shock. Radiological examination is required to confirm the diagnosis and to assess the extent of the problem in order to institute the most appropriate treatment. This ranges from heparin therapy to surgical embolectomy. Care of the patient with pulmonary embolism requires vigilant nursing, not only because of the risk of further embolic episodes, but also to diagnose the potential complications of treatment. Prevention of venous thromboembolism can be pharmacological or mechanical. Pulmonary embolism can occur in almost any clinical setting, but it appears most frequently in elderly, immobilized patients. Embolization rarely occurs in healthy young patients. Heart disease is the major risk factor in patients developing pulmonary embolism, with deep venous thrombosis of the legs, especially the iliac and femoral veins, as the most common precursor. Only thrombi developing in large veins are big enough to produce emboli with major clinical significance.

Pulmonary embolism usually presents with a vague clinical picture. Symptoms may be similar to those of many other cardiorespiratory disorders. Only 20% of patients show the typical symptoms—hemoptysis, pleural friction rub, gallop rhythm, cyanosis, and chest splinting. The most common physical findings are tachypnea and tachycardia, which are often transient. Arterial blood gases showing hypoxemia is nonspecific, but if arterial hypoxemia is not present, pulmonary embolism is very unlikely. There is no pathognomonic radiological sign of pulmonary embolism on the plain chest film, although cardiomegaly is the most common chest radiographic abnormality associated with acute pulmonary embolism. Reliable diagnosis depends on pulmonary arteriography, radioactive perfusion scan, or computed tomographic scan.

Stress Ulcer

The term *stress ulcer* refers to a heterogeneous group of acute gastric or duodenal ulcers that develop following physiologically stressful illness.

Hemorrhage is the major clinical problem, although perforation occurs in about 10% of patients. Pain rarely occurs. Physical examination is not contributory except to reveal gross or occult fecal blood or signs of shock. Medication to control gastric acidity is recommended. Treatment with H₂ histamine receptor antagonist (cimetidine or ranitidine) is recommended for patients without previous history of gastritis or ulcer. Inhibitors of H⁺, K⁺-ATPase (omeprazole, lansoprazole) are indicated in patients with previous history of gastritis or ulcer.

Frequently Asked Questions

Every time that we lecture about functional neck dissection, there are a number of questions that systematically appear in the discussion. In this chapter we would like to answer these questions following the basic guidelines presented in the previous pages.

DOES THE SITE OF THE PRIMARY TUMOR INFLUENCE THE TYPE OF DISSECTION (I.E., FUNCTIONAL VS. RADICAL)?

This question was frequently asked in the early days of functional neck dissection when the operation was not considered safe from the oncological standpoint. At that time, more aggressive neck treatment was advised for tumor sites behaving more aggressively (floor of the mouth, tongue, hypopharynx). Thus, radical neck dissection was preferred to a functional approach as a means to improve the outcome.

Nowadays we have learned to separate primary and neck. We are aware that some tumor locations do more poorly than others. Hypopharynx cancer has a worse prognosis than tumors of the larynx, but this will not be modified by using a more aggressive neck treatment than is required by the clinical scenario. In other words, for an N0 neck on a patient with a piriform sinus tumor, radical neck dissection is not safer than functional neck dissection.

In head and neck cancer patients the neck must be treated according to its own status. The primary should not be used as a criterion for deciding the approach to the neck. The decision whether to use radical or functional neck dissection should be based only on the characteristics of the neck. However, once a functional approach has been selected, the type and extent of the dissection (complete or selective) should be determined by the location of the primary and the experience of the surgeon, as we have repeatedly emphasized in the previous pages.

DOES THE NUMBER OF NODES DICTATE THE TYPE OF DISSECTION?

This is another controversial issue concerning functional neck dissection. Again, most doubts in this respect come from the early days when functional neck dissection was considered insufficient.

Although not unanimously recognized, the number of positive nodes in the neck dissection specimen may harbor prognostic information. However, the exact number of nodes defining the chances for a poor outcome vary in different studies. On the other hand, in some series, the number of nodes is not considered to be important from the prognostic standpoint. In any case, selection of the surgical approach to the neck should not be indicated by the number of nodes, but by the characteristics of every single node that has been detected in the patient's neck.

Functional neck dissection can be performed in patients with nonpalpable and small palpable mobile nodes (usually smaller than 2.5 cm), the size being just a merely orientating factor. The operation is totally safe in patients with multiple nodes, as long as all nodes fulfill these criteria. In these cases, radical neck dissection will not be safer than a functional approach. Thus, it is not the number of nodes that is important, but their clinical characteristics.

DO YOU ALWAYS USE POSTOPERATIVE RADIATION THERAPY AFTER FUNCTIONAL NECK DISSECTION IN PN⁺ PATIENTS?

We would very much like to have a conclusive answer to the question of postoperative radiotherapy for positive nodes, but unfortunately this is not the case. In fact, nobody has the answer to this question.

Postoperative radiotherapy has been recommended in a large variety of situations: for all patients with positive nodes; only for patients with more than a certain number of positive nodes—the number being as variable as the authors that propose this approach; only for patients with positive nodes showing extracapsular extension; and also, for some combinations of the above.

In our experience, postoperative radiotherapy does not improve regional control or survival in previously untreated patients with cancer of the larynx undergoing surgical treatment—all patients in this series had functional neck dissection as part of the initial treatment. Several aspects of the previous statement should be emphasized: (1) This series includes only patients with cancer of the larynx, a special subset of head and neck cancer patients with particular characteristics. Extension of this statement to other tumor locations requires further studies. (2) Patients included in this study were N0 patients with occult disease and patients with palpable mobile nodes smaller than 2.5 cm. (3) All patients in our series were treated with the same functional approach, removing all lymph node regions except level I. (4) The study was performed retrospectively with a historical control from the same institution. Although this may be considered a weak point of the study, it must be remembered that the great majority of studies trying to assess the usefulness of postoperative radiotherapy are retrospective studies, and, up till now, no prospective trial has yet demonstrated a survival benefit derived from postoperative radiotherapy in head and neck cancer patients.

With this in mind, we can affirm that postoperative radiotherapy did not improve the outcome of our patients (survival and regional control) in any situation. Patients with positive nodes fared worse than those without nodes; and patients with extracapsular spread had an especially bad prognosis. However, this was not improved or modified by the addition of postoperative radiotherapy.

In conclusion, we do not use postoperative radiotherapy on a routine basis in pN⁺ patients with cancer of the larynx treated with functional neck dissection. Postoperative irradiation is reserved

for large nodes requiring radical neck dissection and factors related to other clinical and surgical characteristics such as positive margins.

IS FUNCTIONAL NECK DISSECTION STILL POSSIBLE IN PREVIOUSLY IRRADIATED PATIENTS?

This is a philosophical rather than a technical issue. Functional neck dissection is based on fascial compartmentalization of the neck. The fascial spaces of the neck separate the lymphatic tissue from the remaining neck structures. As a consequence of this definition, functional neck dissection is not possible in a previously irradiated patient because destruction of the fascial spaces within the neck is one of the unavoidable consequences of radiation therapy. Thus, fascial neck dissection is not possible after radiation to the neck.

According to the clinical scenario, some type of nonradical neck dissection may be possible in previously irradiated patients. However, these operations are not true functional neck dissections but technical modifications to radical neck dissection in which emphasis is placed on preserving selected neck structures not involved by the tumor. These are “modified radical neck dissections,” operations based on the principles described by Crile, in which some preservation is attempted.

This situation clearly illustrates the conceptual difference between the *functional* and the *classic* approach to neck dissection.

MAY FUNCTIONAL NECK DISSECTION BE USED AS A SALVAGE OPERATION FOR TREATMENT FAILURES?

The same answer can be given to this question.

Previous surgery modifies the fascial planes of the neck, thus making functional neck dissection seldom possible. Again, some structures not involved by the tumor may be preserved at surgery. However, this will not be a true functional approach but a modified radical neck dissection.

IS FUNCTIONAL NECK DISSECTION STILL POSSIBLE AFTER OPEN NODAL BIOPSY?

In most cases, no functional approach is possible after a previous open biopsy of the neck. An open nodal biopsy usually impedes a functional approach to the neck.

The discussion about the drawbacks of open nodal biopsy started more than 50 years ago, during the time of Hayes Martin. Later studies supported that open neck biopsy was harmful in terms of increased wound necrosis, cervical recurrence, and distant metastasis. However, subsequent studies suggested that there is no detriment to survival or recurrence if definitive treatment follows the biopsy without significant delay. A significant detriment to the patient after open neck biopsy is that more structures need to be sacrificed at the time of definitive neck surgery, because a functional approach will not be possible after open nodal biopsy. At present, this is one of the most important arguments against open neck biopsy.

HOW DO YOU APPROACH A PATIENT WITH SMALL BILATERAL NODES SUITABLE FOR BILATERAL FUNCTIONAL NECK DISSECTION?

A frequent concern in bilateral neck dissection when both sides of the neck are clinically positive is whether it will be possible to preserve at least one internal jugular vein.

In some instances this may be solved by starting the dissection on the “good” side—the one with smaller nodes. This will probably ensure the preservation of the internal jugular vein on the first side, allowing a more aggressive approach on the “bad” side. However, this approach may prove impractical if the internal jugular vein is injured or must be sacrificed on the good side. In such instances the dissection of the opposite, or bad, side may be delayed approximately 3 weeks, or may be performed, accepting the risk associated with the simultaneous removal of both internal jugular veins.

WHEN BILATERAL FUNCTIONAL NECK DISSECTION IS INDICATED AND THE INTERNAL JUGULAR VEIN IS DAMAGED DURING THE DISSECTION OF THE FIRST SIDE, WILL YOU CONTINUE THE OPERATION, OR DO YOU PREFER TO STAGE THE SECOND SIDE?

The easier answer is: do not damage the internal jugular vein during surgery. However, this is not always possible and accidents do happen. On the other hand, sometimes the vein must be sacrificed on one side for oncological reasons. In such circumstances we will probably continue the operation and dissect the opposite side if the clinical situation suggests a reasonable chance of preserving the contralateral vein. The chances of accidental damage to the opposite internal jugular vein are low and there is a high probability that the operation can be completed in a single surgical time without problems.

The situation is different if radical neck dissection is planned on the opposite side or the chances to preserve the opposite internal jugular vein are low. Here the decision is more difficult. Staging the operation means not operating the side with the higher stage of disease and waiting approximately 3 weeks before definitive treatment may be accomplished. This should be regarded as potentially harmful for the patient. The alternative is to continue the operation, trying to preserve as much superficial venous drainage as possible, keeping in mind that oncological safety is much more important than venous preservation. When no superficial drainage can be preserved and both internal jugular veins are removed in the same operation, the patient must be carefully managed in the intensive care unit, and appropriate hydroelectrolytic balance should be maintained. In spite of these maneuvers, there is a high risk of severe complications. Thus, the final decision should be taken according to the patient status and clinical scenario.

WHICH IS YOUR APPROACH TO BORDERLINE INDICATIONS: FUNCTIONAL OR RADICAL?

Dealing with borderline indications requires clear concepts to avoid faulty decisions. There are two basic oncological premises that must guide the surgeon’s mind when facing a borderline case:

1. Life is more important than function.
2. The first treatment is the most likely to succeed.

With this in mind the surgeon must decide the most appropriate approach for every single case. Most of the time this will probably be a more aggressive approach than desired. It must be clear to every head and neck surgeon that cancer cells cannot be “chased” with a knife, and technical demonstrations of surgical expertise are not good for the patient and should be limited to the dissection room.

In conclusion, when in doubt, choose the procedure that, in your own personal experience, offers the patient the highest chance for cure. Establishing priorities is one of the first things that every surgeon must learn, and for head and neck cancer surgery life is the first priority to consider.

WHAT WILL YOU DO WITH A LYMPH NODE CONTACTING THE INTERNAL JUGULAR VEIN?

The situation is similar to that presented in the previous question. Thus, the answer should be the same.

There is no need to look for—or even worse, create—a cleavage plane between the internal jugular vein and an adjacent lymph node in order to separate the node from the vein and preserve the latter. After all, the internal jugular vein is just “a vein with a name.” There is almost no morbidity associated with the removal of one internal jugular vein, and there may be important disadvantages from an oncological standpoint if the limits are pushed too far. Thus, in case of doubt we strongly recommend the removal of the internal jugular vein, or any other removable structure adjacent to a metastatic lymph node, if this may increase the chances for cure.

The situation is more difficult when the internal jugular vein has been sacrificed, or must also be removed, on the opposite side. In these cases the advantages and disadvantages of preserving the vein on the “good” side and performing a one-stage operation must be weighed against those associated with a two-stage procedure in which the second side is operated approximately 3 weeks later, and also against those derived from a simultaneous bilateral removal of the internal jugular vein. Here, the clinical scenario and the surgeon’s experience are crucial to selecting the most appropriate decision for every patient.

This page intentionally left blank.

Suggested Readings

- Acar A, Dursun G, Aydin O, Akbas Y. J incision in neck dissections. *J Laryngol Otol* 1998;112:55–60.
- Al-Sarraf M, Pajak TF, Byhard RW, Beitler JJ, Salter MM, Cooper JS. Postoperative radiotherapy with concurrent cisplatin appears to improve locoregional control of advanced resectable head and neck cancers. RTOG 88-24. *Inter J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1997;37:777–782.
- Andersen P, Cambroner E, Spiro R, Shah JP. The role of comprehensive neck dissection with preservation of the spinal accessory nerve in the clinically positive neck. *Am J Surg* 1994;168:499–502.
- Andersen PE, Cambroner E, Shaha AR, Shah JP. The extent of neck disease after regional failure during observation of the N0 neck. *Am J Surg* 1996;172:689–691.
- Ariyan S. Functional radical neck dissection. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1980;65:768–776.
- Armstrong J, Pfister D, Strong E, Heimann R, Krause D, Polishook A, Zelefsky M, Bosl G, Shah J, Spiro R, Harrison L. The management of the clinically positive neck as part of larynx preservation approach. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1993;26:759–765.
- Arriaga MA, Kanel KT, Johnson JT, Myers EN. Medical complications in total laryngectomy: incidence and risk factors. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1990;99:611–615.
- Avalos E, Beltran M, Martín A, Pérez Requena J, Porrás E, Córdoba J, Carrillo de Albornoz F. Factores de predicción de la invasión ganglionar en el carcinoma de laringe. *Acta Otorrinolaringol Esp* 1998;49:452–454.
- Bailey BJ. Selective neck dissection: the challenge of occult metastases. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:353.
- Ballantyne AJ, Jackson GL. Synchronous bilateral neck dissection. *Am J Surg* 1982;144:452–455.
- Banerjee AR, Alun-Jones T. Neck dissection. *Clin Otolaryngol* 1995;20:286–290.
- Bartelink H, Breur K, Hart G, Annyas B, van Slooten E, Snow G. The value of postoperative radiotherapy as an adjuvant to radical neck dissection. *Cancer* 1983;52:1008–1013.
- Barzan L, Talamini R. Analysis of prognostic factors for recurrence after neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1996;122:1299–1302.
- Beenken SW, Krontiras H, Maddox WA, Peters GE, Soong S, Urist MM. T1 and T2 squamous cell carcinoma of the oral tongue: prognostic factors and the role of elective lymph node dissection. *Head Neck* 1999;21:124–130.
- Betka J, Mrzena L, Astl J, Nemeč J, Vlček P, Taudy M, Skriván J. Surgical treatment strategy for thyroid gland carcinoma nodal metastases. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 1997;1(suppl):169–174.
- Bhattacharyya N. The effects of more conservative neck dissections and radiotherapy on nodal yields from the neck. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:412–416.
- Bocca E. Conservative neck dissection. *Laryngoscope* 1975;85:1511–1515.
- Bocca E. Functional problems connected with bilateral radical neck dissection. *J Laryngol Otol* 1953;67:567–577.
- Bocca E. Supraglottic laryngectomy and functional neck dissection. *J Laryngol Otol* 1966;80:831–836.
- Bocca E, Pignataro O. A conservation technique in radical neck dissection. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1967;76:975–987.
- Bocca E, Pignataro O, Oldini C, Cappa C. Functional neck dissection: an evaluation and review of 843 cases. *Laryngoscope* 1984;94:942–945.
- Bocca E, Pignataro O, Sasaki C. Functional neck dissection: a description of operative technique. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1980;106:524–527.
- Breau RL, Suen JY. The management of the N0 neck. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:657–669.

- Brown DH, Mulholland S, Yoo JH, Gullane PJ, Irish JC, Neligan P, Keller A. Internal jugular vein thrombosis following modified neck dissection: implications for head and neck flap reconstruction. *Head Neck* 1998;20:169–174.
- Brown JJ, Fee WE Jr. Management of the neck in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:785–802.
- Byers RM. Modified neck dissection: a study of 967 cases from 1970–1980. *Am J Surg* 1985;150:414–421.
- Byers RM. Neck dissection: concepts, controversies, and technique. *Semin Surg Oncol* 1991;7:9–13.
- Byers RM, Clayman GL, McGill D, Andrews T, Kare RP, Roberts DB, Goepfert H. Selective neck dissections for squamous carcinoma of the upper aerodigestive tract: patterns of regional failure. *Head Neck* 1999;21:499–505.
- Byers RM, El Naggar AK, Lee YY, Rao B, Fornage B, Terry NH, Sample D, Hankins P, Smith TL, Wolf PJ. Can we detect or predict the presence of occult nodal metastases in patients with squamous carcinoma of the oral tongue? *Head Neck* 1998;20:138–144.
- Byers RM, Wolf PF, Ballantyne AJ. Rationale for modified neck dissection. *Head Neck Surg* 1988;10:160–167.
- Cabra J, Herranz J, Moñux A, Gavilán J. Postoperative complications after functional neck dissection. *Operative Techniques Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1993;4:318–321.
- Calearo CV, Teatini G. Functional neck dissection: anatomical grounds, surgical technique, clinical observations. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1983;92:215–222.
- Califano J, Westra WH, Koch W, Meininger G, Reed A, Yip L, Boyle JO, Lonardo F, Sidransky D. Unknown primary head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: molecular identification of the site of origin. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999;91:599–604.
- Califano J, Zupi A, Mangone GM, Longo F, Coscia G, Piombino P. Surgical management of the neck in squamous cell carcinoma of the tongue. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 1999;37:320–323.
- Candela FC, Kothari K, Shah JP. Patterns of cervical node metastases from squamous carcinoma of the oropharynx and hypopharynx. *Head Neck* 1990;12:197–203.
- Carter RL. The pathologist's appraisal of neck dissections. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 1993;250:429–431.
- Cheng PT, Hao SP, Lin YH, Yeh AR. Objective comparison of shoulder dysfunction after three neck dissection techniques. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 2000;109:761–766.
- Chu W, Strawitz JG. Results in suprahyoid, modified radical, and standard radical neck dissections for metastatic squamous cell carcinoma: recurrences and survival. *Am J Surg* 1978;136:512–515.
- Clark JR, Busse PM, Norris CM, Andersen JW, Dreyfuss AI, Rossi RM, Poulin MD, Colevas AD, Tishler RB, Costello R, Lucarini JW, Lucarini D, Thornhill L, Lackey M, Peters E, Posner MR. Induction chemotherapy with cisplatin, fluorouracil and high dose leukovorin for squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck: long-term results. *J Clin Oncol* 1997;15:3100–3110.
- Clayman GL, Eicher SA, Sicard MW, Razmpa E, Goepfert H. Surgical outcomes in head and neck cancer in patients 80 years old and older. *Head Neck* 1998;20:216–223.
- Clayman GL, Frank DK. Selective neck dissection of anatomically appropriate levels is as efficacious as modified radical neck dissection for elective treatment of the clinically negative neck in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:348–352.
- Close LG, Burns DK, Reisch J, Schaefer SD. Microvascular invasion in cancer of the oral cavity and oropharynx. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1987;113:1191–1195.
- Cohen L. Theoretical "iso survival" formulae for fractionated radiation therapy. *Br J Radiol* 1968;41:522–528.
- Conley J. The management of metastatic cancer in the region of the head and neck. *Minn Med* 1967;50:992.
- Cousins V, Milton C, Bickerton R. Hospital morbidity and mortality following total laryngectomy. *J Laryngol Otol* 1987;101:1159–1164.
- Coutard H. Roentgentherapy of epitheliomas of the tonsillar region, hypopharynx and larynx from 1920 to 1926. *Am J Roent* 1932;28:313–343.
- Crile G. Excision of cancer of the head and neck with special reference to the plan of dissection based on 132 operations. *JAMA* 1906;47:1780–1785.
- Danninger R, Posawetz W, Humer U, Stammberger H, Jakse R. Ultrasound investigation of cervical lymph node metastases: conception and results of a histopathological exploration. *Laryngorhinootologie* 1999;78:144–149.
- Davidson BJ, Kulkarny V, Delacure MD, Shah JP. Posterior triangle metastases of squamous cell carcinoma of the upper aerodigestive tract. *Am J Surg* 1993;166:395–398.
- Davidson J, Khan Y, Gilbert R, Birt BD, Balogh J, MacKenzie R. Is selective neck dissection sufficient treatment for the N0/Np+ neck? *J Otolaryngol* 1997;26:229–231.
- de Campora E, Radici M, Camaioni A, Pianelli C. Clinical experiences with surgical therapy of cervical metastases from head and neck cancer. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 1994;251:335–341.
- de Gier HH, Balm AJ, Bruning PF, Gregor RT, Hilgers FJ. Systematic approach to the treatment of chylous leakage after neck dissection. *Head Neck* 1996;18:347–351.

- Del Sel JA, Agra A. Cancer of the larynx: laryngectomy with systemic extirpation of the connective tissue and cervical lymph nodes as a routine procedure. *Trans Am Acad Ophthalmol Otolaryngol* 1947;51:653-655.
- Department of Veterans Affairs Laryngeal Cancer Study Group. Induction chemotherapy plus radiation compared to surgery plus radiation in patients with advanced laryngeal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 1991;324:1685-1690.
- DeSanto LW, Beahrs OH. Modified and complete neck dissection in the treatment of squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1988;167:259-269.
- DeSanto LW, Beahrs OH, Holt JJ, O'Fallon WM. Neck dissection and combined therapy: study of effectiveness. *Arch Otolaryngol* 1985;111:366-370.
- DeSanto LW, Holt JJ, Beahrs OH. Neck dissection: is it worthwhile? *Laryngoscope* 1982;92:502-509.
- Dulguerov P, Soulier C, Maurice J, Faidutti B, Allal AS, Lehmann W. Bilateral radical neck dissection with unilateral internal jugular vein reconstruction. *Laryngoscope* 1998;108:1692-1696.
- Elliott CG, Goldhaber SZ, Visani L, DeRosa M. Chest radiographs in acute pulmonary embolism: results from the international cooperative pulmonary embolism registry. *Chest* 2000;118:33-38.
- Enepekides DJ, Sultanem K, Nguyen C, Shenouda G, Black MJ, Rochon L. Occult cervical metastases: immunoperoxidase analysis of the pathologically negative neck. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1999;120:713-717.
- Fagan JJ, Collins B, Barnes L, D'Amico F, Myers EN, Johnson JT. Perineural invasion in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:637-640.
- Farrar WB, Finkelmeier WR, McCabe DP, Young DC, O'Dwyer PJ, James AG. Radical neck dissection: is it enough? *Am J Surg* 1988;156:173-176.
- Feinmesser R, Freeman JL, Noyek AM, Birt BD. Metastatic neck disease: a clinical/radiographic/pathologic correlative study. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1987;113:1307-1310.
- Ferlito A, Rinaldo A. Level I dissection for laryngeal and hypopharyngeal cancer: is it indicated? *J Laryngol Otol* 1998;112:438-440.
- Ferlito A, Rinaldo A. Selective lateral neck dissection for laryngeal cancer in the clinically negative neck: is it justified? *J Laryngol Otol* 1998;112:921-924.
- Ferlito A, Rinaldo A. Selective lateral neck dissection for laryngeal cancer with limited metastatic disease: is it indicated? *J Laryngol Otol* 1998;112:1031-1033.
- Ferlito A, Silver CE, Rinaldo A, Smith RV. Surgical treatment of the neck in cancer of the larynx. *ORL* 2000;62:217-225.
- Ferlito A, Som PM, Rinaldo A, Mondin V. Classification and terminology of neck dissections. *ORL* 2000;62:212-216.
- Fisch U, Sigel M. Cervical lymphatic system as visualized by lymphography. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1964;74:869-883.
- Fletcher GH. Clinical dose-response curves in human malignant epithelial tumors. *Br J Radiol* 1973;46:1-12.
- Fletcher GH. Elective irradiation of subclinical disease in cancers of the head and neck. *Cancer* 1972;29:1450-1454.
- Fletcher GH, Shukovsky LJ. The interplay of radiocurability and tolerance in the irradiation of human cancers. *J Radiol Electrol* 1975;56:383-400.
- Friedman M, Lim JW, Dickey W, Tanyeri H, Kirshenbaum GL, Phadke DM, Caldarelli D. Quantification of lymph nodes in selective neck dissection. *Laryngoscope* 1999;109:368-370.
- Friedman M, Mafee MF, Pacella BL Jr, Strorigl TL, Dew LL, Toriumi DM. Rationale for elective neck dissection in 1990. *Laryngoscope* 1990;100:54-59.
- Fulciniti F, Califano L, Zupi A, Ventrani A. Accuracy of fine needle aspiration biopsy in head and neck tumors. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 1997;55:1094-1097.
- Gavilán Alonso C, Blanco Galdín A, Suárez Nieto C. El vaciamiento funcional-radical cérvico ganglionar: anatomía quirúrgica, técnica y resultados. *Acta Oto-Rino-Laringol Ibero-Americana* 1972;23:703-817.
- Gavilán J, Gavilán C. Five-years results of functional neck dissection for cancer of the larynx. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1989;115:1193-1196.
- Gavilán J, Gavilán C, Herranz J. Functional neck dissection: three decades of controversy. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1992;101:339-341.
- Gavilán J, Gavilán C, Mañós-Pujol M, Herranz J. Discriminant analysis in predicting survival of patients with cancer of the larynx or hypopharynx. *Clin Otolaryngol* 1987;12:331-335.
- Gavilán J, Moñux A, Herranz J, Gavilán C. Functional neck dissection: surgical technique. . . *Operative Techniques Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1993;4:258-265.
- Gavilán J, Prim MP, De Diego JI, Hardisson D, Pozuelo A. Postoperative radiotherapy in patients with positive nodes after functional neck dissection. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 2000;109:844-848.
- Giacomarra V, Tirelli G, Papanikolla L, Bussani R. Predictive factors of nodal metastases in oral cavity and oropharynx carcinomas. *Laryngoscope* 1999;109:795-799.
- Gillies EM, Luna MA. Histologic evaluation of neck dissection specimens. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:759-771.

- Goepfert H, Jesse RH, Ballantyne AJ. Posterolateral neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol* 1980;106:618–620.
- Goodwin WJ Jr, Chandler JR. Indications for radical neck dissection following radiation therapy. *Arch Otolaryngol* 1978;104:367–370.
- Grandi C, Alloisio M, Moglia D, Podrecca S, Sala L, Salvarori P, Molinari R. Prognostic significance of lymphatic spread in head and neck carcinomas: therapeutic implications. *Head Neck Surg* 1985;8:67–73.
- Grupo de trabajo TEP de la SEPAR. Estrategia terapéutica en la enfermedad tromboembólica venosa (ETV). *Arch Bronconeumol* 1994;30:498–505.
- Guney E, Yigitbasi OG. Management of N0 neck in T1 T2 unilateral supraglottic cancer. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1999;108:998–1003.
- Guney E, Yigitbasi OG, Canoz K, Ozturk M, Ersoy A. Functional neck dissection: cure and functional results. *J Laryngol Otol* 1998;112:1176–1178.
- Haddadin KJ, Soutar DS, Oliver RJ, Webster MH, Robertson AG, MacDonald DG. Improved survival for patients with clinically T1/T2, N0 tongue tumors undergoing a prophylactic neck dissection. *Head Neck* 1999;21:517–525.
- Haller JR, Mountain RE, Schuller DE, Nag S. Mortality and morbidity with interoperative radiotherapy for head and neck cancer. *Am J Otolaryngol* 1996;17:308–310.
- Henick DH, Silver CE, Heller KS, Shaha AR, El GH, Wolk DP. Supraomohyoid neck dissection as a staging procedure for squamous cell carcinomas of the oral cavity and oropharynx. *Head Neck* 1995;17:119–123.
- Herranz J, Sarandeses A, Fernández M, Vázquez Barro C, Martínez Vidal J, Gavilán J. Complications after total laryngectomy in nonradiated laryngeal and hypopharyngeal carcinomas. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2000;122:892–898.
- Hillel AD. Disability resulting from radical and modified neck dissections. *Head Neck Surg* 1986;9:127–129.
- Hollinshead WH. *Anatomy for Surgeons: The Head and Neck*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1982.
- Jesse RH, Ballantyne AJ, Larson D. Radical or modified neck dissection: a therapeutic dilemma. *Am J Surg* 1978;136:516–519.
- Jesse RH, Barkley HT, Lindberg RD, Fletcher GH. Cancer of the oral cavity: is elective neck dissection beneficial? *Am J Surg* 1970;120:505–508.
- Jesse RH, Fletcher GH. Treatment of the neck in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. *Cancer* 1977;39:868–872.
- Jesse RH, Lindberg RD. The efficacy of combined therapy with surgical procedure in patients with cervical metastasis from squamous cancer of the oropharynx and hypopharynx. *Cancer* 1975;35:1163–1166.
- Johnson CR, Silverman LN, Clay LB, Schmidt Ullrich R. Radiotherapeutic management of bulky cervical lymphadenopathy in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck: is postradiotherapy neck dissection necessary? *Radiat Oncol Investig* 1998;6:52–57.
- Johnson JT. Selective neck dissection in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts: a lack of adequate data. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:353.
- Johnson JT, Barnes EL, Myers EN, Schram VL. The extracapsular spread of tumors in cervical metastasis. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1981;107:725–729.
- Johnson JT, Kachman K, Wagner RL, Myers EN. Comparison of ampicillin/sulbactam versus clindamycin in the preservation of infection in patients undergoing head and neck surgery. *Head Neck* 1997;19:367–371.
- Johnson JT, Myers EN, Bedetti CD, Barnes EL, Schramm VL Jr, Thearle PB. Cervical lymph node metastasis: incidence and implications of extracapsular carcinoma. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1985;111:534–537.
- Jones TA, Stell PM. The preservation of shoulder function after radical neck dissection. *Clin Otolaryngol* 1985;10:89–92.
- Joseph CA, Gregor RT, Davidge-Pitts KJ. The role of functional neck dissection in the management of advanced tumors of the upper aerodigestive tract. *S Afr J Surg* 1985; 23:83–87.
- Kaufman R, Strauss M. Conservation surgery of the neck: modified neck dissection. *Trans Pa Acad Ophthalmol Otolaryngol* 1982;35:43–47.
- Kerrebijn JDF, Freeman JL, Irish JC, Witterick IJ, Brown DH, Rotstein LE, Gullane PJ. Supraomohyoid neck dissection: is it diagnostic or therapeutic? *Head Neck* 1999;21:39–42.
- Koch WM, Choti MA, Civelek AC, Eisele DW, Saunders JR. Gamma probe directed biopsy of the sentinel node in oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:455–459.
- Kowalski LP, Bagietto R, Lara JR, Santos RL, Tagawa EK, Santos IR. Factors influencing contralateral lymph node metastasis from oral carcinoma. *Head Neck* 1999;21:104–110.
- Kowalski LP, Magrin J, Waksman G, Santo GF, Lopes ME, de Paula RP, Pereira RN, Torloni H. Supraomohyoid neck dissection in the treatment of head and neck tumors: survival results in 212 cases. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1993;119:958–963.
- Kowalski LP, Medina JE. Nodal metastases: predictive factors. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:621–637.

- Köybaşıoğlu A, Tokcaer AB, Uslu SS, Ileri F, Beder L, Özbilen S. Accessory nerve function after modified radical and lateral neck dissections. *Laryngoscope* 2000;110:73–77.
- Kramer S, Gelber RD, Snow JB, Marcial VA, Lowry LD, Davis LW, Chandler R. Combined radiation therapy and surgery in the management of advanced head and neck cancer: final report of study 73-03 of Radiation Therapy Oncology Group. *Head Neck Surg* 1987;10:19–30.
- Kraus DH, Carew JF, Harrison LB. Regional lymph node metastasis from cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:582–587.
- Kuntz AL, Weymuller EA Jr. Impact of neck dissection on quality of life. *Laryngoscope* 1999;109:1334–1338.
- Lawrence W Jr, Terz JJ, Rogers C, King RE. Preoperative irradiation for head and neck cancer: a prospective study. *Cancer* 1974;33:318–323.
- Leemans CR, Snow GB. Is selective neck dissection really as efficacious as modified radical neck dissection for elective treatment of the clinically negative neck in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts? *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:1042–1044.
- Leemans CR, Tiwari R, van der Waal I, Karim ABMF, Nauta JJP, Snow GB. The efficacy of comprehensive neck dissection with or without postoperative radiotherapy in nodal metastases of squamous cell carcinoma of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts. *Laryngoscope* 1990;100:1194–1198.
- Lefebvre JL, Chevalier D, Luboinski B, Kirkpatrick A, Collette L, Sahnoud T. Larynx preservation in pyriform sinus cancer: preliminary report of a European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer phase III trial. EORTC Head and Neck Cooperative Group. . . . *Natl Cancer Inst* 1996;88:890–899.
- Leipzig B, Suen JY, English JL, Barnes J, Hooper M. Functional evaluation of the spinal accessory nerve. *Am J Surg* 1983;146:526–530.
- Leipzig B, Sue JY, English JL, Barnes J, Hooper M. Functional evaluation of the spinal accessory nerve after neck dissection. *Am J Surg* 1983;146:526–530.
- Levandaaq P, Sessions R, Vikram B, Strong EW, Shah JP, Spiro R, Gerold F. The problem of neck relapse in early stage supraglottic larynx cancer. *Cancer* 1989;63:345–348.
- Levertu P, Adelstein DJ, Saxton JP, Secic M, Wanamaker JR, Eliachar I, Wood BG, Strome M. Management of the neck in a randomized trial comparing concurrent chemotherapy and radiation with radiotherapy alone in resectable stage III and IV squamous cell carcinoma. *Head Neck Surg* 1997;19:559–566.
- Levertu P, Bonafed JP, Adelstein DJ, Saxton JP, Strome M, Wanamaker JR, Eliachar I, Wood BG. Comparison of surgical complications after organ preservation therapy in patients with stage III and IV squamous cell head and neck cancer. *Surgery* 1998;124:401–406.
- Lindberg R. Distribution of cervical lymph node metastases from squamous cell carcinoma of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts. *Cancer* 1972;29:1446–1448.
- Lingeman RE, Helmus C, Stephens R, Ulm J. Neck dissection: radical or conservative. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1977;86:737–744.
- Lundahl RE, Foote RL, Bonner JA, Suman VJ, Lewis JE, Kasperbauer JL, McCaffrey TV, Olsen KD. Combined neck dissection and postoperative radiation therapy in the management of the high risk neck: a matched pair analysis. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1999;40:529–534.
- Lydiatt DD, Karrer FW, Lydiatt WM, Johnson PJ. The evaluation, indications, and contraindications of selective neck dissections. *Nebr Med J* 1994;79:140–144.
- Lyons AJ, Mills CC. Anatomical variants of the cervical sympathetic chain to be considered during neck dissection. *Br J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 1998;36:180–182.
- Mabanta SR, Mendenhall WM, Stringer SP, Cassisi NJ. Salvage treatment for neck recurrence after irradiation alone for head and neck squamous cell carcinoma with clinically positive neck nodes. *Head Neck* 1999;21:591–594.
- MacComb WS, Fletcher GH. Planned combination of surgery and radiation in treatment of advanced primary head and neck cancer. *Am J Roentgenol* 1957;77:397–415.
- Magnano M, De Stefani A, Lerda W, Usai A, Ragona R, Bussi M, Cortesina G. Prognostic factors of cervical lymph node metastasis in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. *Tumori* 1997;83:922–926.
- Mahasin ZZ, Saleem M, Gangopadhyay K. Transverse sinus thrombosis and venous infarction of the brain following unilateral radical neck dissection. *J Laryngol Otol* 1998;112:88–91.
- Majoufre C, Faucher A, Laroche C, De Bonfils C, Siberchicot F, Renaud Salis JL, Pinsolle J. Supraomohyoid neck dissection in cancer of the oral cavity. *Am J Surg* 1999;178:73–77.
- Mamelle G, Pampurik J, Luboinski B, Lancar R, Lusinchi A, Bosq J. Lymph node prognostic factors in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. *Am J Surg* 1994;168:494–498.
- Mann W, Wolfensberger M, Fuller U, Beck C. Radical versus modified neck dissection: cancer-related and functional viewpoints. *Laryngorhinootologie* 1991;70:32–35.

- Manni JJ, van den Hoogen FJA. Supraomohyoid neck dissection with frozen section biopsy as a staging procedure in the clinically node-negative neck in carcinoma of the oral cavity. *Am J Surg* 1991;162:373–376.
- Manning M, Stell PM. The shoulder after radical neck dissection (editorial). *Clin Otolaryngol* 1989;14:381–384.
- American Joint Committee of Cancer. *Manual of Staging of Cancer*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1997.
- Martin H, del Valle B, Ehrlich J, Cahan W. Neck dissection. *Cancer* 1951;4:441–499.
- Matsumoto M, Komiyama K, Okaue M, Shimoyama Y, Iwakami K, Namaki S, Tanaka H, Moro I, Sato H. Predicting tumor metastasis in patients with oral cancer by means of the proliferation marker Ki67. *J Oral Sci* 1999;41:53–56.
- McCulloch TM, Jensen NF, Girod DA, Tsue TT, Weymuller EA Jr. Risk factors for pulmonary complications in the postoperative head and neck surgery patient. *Head Neck* 1997;19:372–377.
- McEwan L, Gandhi M, Andersen J, Manthey K. Can CT pulmonary angiography replace ventilation-perfusion scans as a firstline investigation for pulmonary emboli? *Australas Radiol* 1999;43:311–314.
- McGuirt WF, Johnson JT, Myers EN, Rothfield R, Wagner R. Floor of mouth carcinoma: the management of the clinically negative neck. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1995;121:278–282.
- McQuarrie DG, Mayberg M, Ferguson M, Shons AR. A physiologic approach to the problems of simultaneous bilateral neck dissection. *Am J Surg* 1977;134:455–460.
- Medina JE. A rational classification of neck dissection. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1989;100:169–176.
- Medina JE. Neck dissection in the treatment of cancer of major salivary glands. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:815–822.
- Medina JE, Byers RM. Supraomohyoid neck dissection: rationale, indications, and surgical technique. *Head Neck Surg* 1989;11:111–122.
- Montgomery RL. *Head and Neck Anatomy with Clinical Correlations*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1981.
- Moore KL. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*. 3rd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1992.
- Moreau A, Goffart Y, Collington J. Computed tomography of metastatic lymph nodes. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1990;116:1190–1193.
- Myers EN, Fagan JF. Management of the neck in cancer of the larynx. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1999;108:828–832.
- Myers EN, Fagan JJ. Treatment of the N+ neck in squamous cell carcinoma of the upper aerodigestive tract. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:671–686.
- Myers LL, Wax MK. Positron emission tomography in the evaluation of the negative neck in patients with oral cavity cancer. *J Otolaryngol* 1998;27:342–347.
- Nahum AM, Mullally W, Marmor L. A syndrome resulting from radical neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol* 1961;74:82–86.
- Narayan K, Crane CH, Kleid S, Hughes PG, Peters LJ. Planned neck dissection as an adjunct to the management of patients with advanced neck disease treated with definitive radiotherapy: for some or for all? *Head Neck* 1999;21:606–613.
- Nishijima W, Takooda S, Usui H, Negishi T. Simultaneous bilateral neck dissections. *Nippon Jibiinkoka Gakkai Kaiho* 1991;94:1104–1112.
- Nowaczyk MT. Lymphorrhea after neck dissection. *Otolaryngol Pol* 1999;53:271–213.
- O'Brien CJ, Smith RH, Soong SJ, Urist MM, Maddox WA. Neck dissection with and without radiotherapy: prognostic factors, patterns of recurrence and survival. *Am J Surg* 1986;152:456–463.
- O'Brien CJ, Urist MM, Maddox WA. Modified radical neck dissection: terminology, technique, and indications. *Am J Surg* 1987;153:310–316.
- Ogura JH, Biller HF, Wette R. Elective neck dissection for pharyngeal and laryngeal cancers. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1971;80:646–653.
- Ohtawa T, Katagiri M, Harada T. A study of sternocleidomastoid muscular atrophy after modified neck dissection. *Surg Today* 1998;28:46–58.
- Olofsson J, Tylor M. Complications in neck dissection. *J Otorhinolaryngol Relat Spec* 1985;47:123–130.
- Olsen KD, Caruso M, Foote RL, Satanley RJ, Lewis JE, Buskirk SJ, Frassica DA, DeSanto LW, O'Fallon WM, Hoverman VR. Primary head and neck cancer: histopathologic predictors of recurrence after neck dissection in patients with lymph node involvement. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1994;120:1370–1374.
- Pazos GA, Leonard DW, Blice J, Thompson DH. Blindness after bilateral neck dissection: case report and review. *Am J Otolaryngol* 1999;20:340–345.
- Pearlman NW, Meyers AD, Sullivan WG. Modified radical neck dissection for squamous carcinoma of the head and neck. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1982;154:214–216.
- Pellitteri PK, Robbins KT, Neuman T. Expanded application of the selective neck dissection with regard to nodal status. *Head Neck* 1997;19:260–265.
- Pendjer I, Mikic A, Golubicic I, Vucicevic S. Neck dissection in the management of regional metastases in patients with undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinomas. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 1999;256:356–360.
- Pernkopf FE. *Topografische Anatomie des Menschen*, vol 3. Wien: Urban & Schwarzenburg; 1952.

- Persky MS, Lagmay VM. Treatment of the clinically negative neck in oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Laryngoscope* 1999;109:1160–1164.
- Peters LJ. The efficacy of postoperative radiotherapy for advanced head and neck cancer. *Int J Radiat Oncology Biol Phys* 1998;40:527–528.
- Piccirillo J. Importance of comorbidity in head and neck cancer. *Laryngoscope* 2000;110:593–602.
- Pillsbury HC, Clark M. A rationale for therapy of the N0 neck. *Laryngoscope* 1997;107:1294–1315.
- Pittman KT, Johnson JJ, Myers EN. Effectiveness of selective neck dissection for management of the clinically negative neck. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1997;123:917–922.
- Prim MP, de Diego JI, Fernández-Zubillaga A, García-Raya P, Madero R, Gavilán J. Patency and flow of the internal jugular vein after functional neck dissection. *Laryngoscope* 2000;110:47–50.
- Prim MP, de Diego JI, Hardisson D, Madero R, Nistal M, Gavilán J. Extracapsular spread and desmoplastic pattern in neck lymph nodes: two prognostic factors of laryngeal cancer. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1999;108:672–676.
- Redaelli de Zinis LO, Piccioni LO, Ghizzardi D, Mantini G, Antonelli AR. Indications for elective neck dissection in malignant epithelial parotid tumors. *Acta Otorhinolaryngol Ital* 1998;18:11–15.
- Remmler D, Byers R, Scheetz J, Shell B, White G, Zimmerman S, Goepfert H. A prospective study of shoulder disability resulting from radical and modified neck dissections. . . . *Head Neck Surg* 1986;8:280–286.
- Righi M, Manfredi R, Farneti G, Pasquini E, Cenacchi V. Short-term versus long-term antimicrobial prophylaxis in oncologic head and neck surgery. *Head Neck* 1996;18:399–404.
- Righi PD, Kopecky KK, Caldemeyer KS, Ball VA. Comparison of ultrasound-fine needle aspiration and computed tomography in patients undergoing elective neck dissection. *Head Neck* 1997;19:604–610.
- Robbins KT. Classification of neck dissection: current concepts and future considerations. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:639–655.
- Robbins KT, Favrot S, Hanna D, Cole R. Risk of wound infection in patients with head and neck cancer. *Head Neck* 1990;12:143–148.
- Robbins KT, Medina JE, Wolfe GT, Levine PA, Sessions RB, Pruet CW. Standardizing neck dissection terminology: official report of the Academy's Committee for Head and Neck Surgery and Oncology. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1991;117:601–605.
- Rodrigo JP, Alvarez JC, Gómez JR, Suárez C, Fernández JA, Martínez JA. Comparison of three prophylactic antibiotic regimen in clean-contaminated head and neck surgery. *Head Neck* 1997;188–193.
- Roy PH, Beahrs OH. Spinal accessory nerve in radical neck dissection. *Am J Surg* 1969; 118:800–804.
- Saffold SH, Wax MK, Nguyen A, Caro JE, Andersen PE, Everts EC, Cohen JI. Sensory changes associated with selective neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2000;126:425–428.
- Saunders JR, Hirata RM, Jaques DA. Considering the spinal accessory nerve in head and neck surgery. *Am J Surg* 1985;150:401–494.
- Schuller DE, Platz CE, Krause CJ. Spinal accessory lymph nodes: a prospective study of metastatic involvement. *Laryngoscope* 1978;88:439–450.
- Schuller DE, Reiches NA, Hamaker RC, Lingeman RE, Weisberger EC, Suen JY, Conley JJ, Kelly DR, Miglets AW. Analysis of disability resulting from treatment including radical neck dissection or modified neck dissection. *Head Neck Surg* 1983;6:551–558.
- Schultes G, Gaggi A, Karcher H. Reconstruction of accessory nerve defects with vascularized long thoracic vs. nonvascularized thoracodorsal nerve. *J Reconstr Microsurg* 1999;15:265–270.
- Shah JP. Cervical lymph node metastases: diagnostic, therapeutic, and prognostic implications. *Oncology* 1990;4:264–272.
- Shah JP. Patterns of cervical lymph node metastases from squamous carcinomas of the upper aerodigestive tract. *Am J Surg* 1990;160:405–409.
- Shah JP, Andersen PE. The impact of patterns of neck metastasis on modifications of neck dissection. *Ann Surg Oncol* 1994;1:521–532.
- Shah JP, Medina JE, Shaha AR, Schantz SP, Marti JR. Cervical lymph node metastasis. *Curr Probl Surg* 1993;30:278–334.
- Shaha AR. Management of the neck in thyroid cancer. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998; 31:823–831.
- Sheppard IJ, Watkinson JC, Glaholm J. Conservation surgery in head and neck cancer. *Clin Otolaryngol* 1998;23:385–387.
- Shingaki S, Nomura T, Takada M, Kobayashi T, Suzuki I, Nakajima T. The impact of extranodal spread of lymph node metastases in patients with oral cancer. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 1999;28:279–284.
- Short SO, Kaplan JN, Laramore GE, Cummings CW. Shoulder pain and function after neck dissection with or without preservation of the accessory nerve. *Am J Surg* 1984;148:478–482.
- Sist T, Miner M, Lema M. Characteristics of postradical neck pain syndrome: a report of 25 cases. *J Pain Symptom Manage* 1999;18:95–102.
- Skolnik EM, Deutsch EC. Conservative neck dissection. *J Laryngol Otol* 1983; 8(suppl):105.

- Skolnik EM, Katz AH, Becker SP, Mantravadi R, Stal S. Evolution of the clinically negative neck. *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 1980;89:551–555.
- Skolnik EM, Tenta LT, Wineinger DM, Tardy ME Jr. Preservation of XI cranial nerve in neck dissection. *Laryngoscope* 1967;77:1304–1314.
- Smullen JL, Lejeune FE Jr. Complications of neck dissection. *J La State Med Soc* 1999; 151:544–547.
- Snow GB, Patel P, Leemans CR, Tiwari R. Management of cervical lymph nodes in patients with head and neck cancer. *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 1992;249:187–194.
- Sobel S, Jensen C, Sawyer W, Costiloe P, Thong N. Objective comparison of physical dysfunction after neck dissection. *Am J Surg* 1985;150:503–509.
- Som PM. The present controversy over imaging method of choice for evaluating the soft tissues of the neck. *Am J Neuroradiology* 1997;18:1869–1872.
- Som PM, Curtin HD, Mancuso AA. An imaging-based classification for the cervical nodes designed as an adjunct to recent clinically based nodal classifications. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1999;125:388–396.
- Soo KC, Guiloff RJ, Querci della Rovere G, Westbury G. Innervation of the trapezius muscle: a study in patients undergoing neck dissections. *Head Neck* 1990;12:488–495.
- Spiro J, Spiro R, Strong E. The management of chyle fistula. *Laryngoscope* 1990;100:771–774.
- Spiro RH, Strong EW, Shah JP. Classification of neck dissection: variations on a new theme. *Am J Surg* 1994;168:415–418.
- Steinkamp HJ, van der Hoeck E, Bock JC, Felix R. The extracapsular spread of cervical lymph node metastases: the diagnostic value of computed tomography. *Rofo Fortschr Geb Rontgenstr Neuen Bildgeb Verfahr* 1999;170:457–462.
- Stell PM. Adjuvant chemotherapy in head and neck cancer. *Semin Radiat Oncol* 1993;2:195–205.
- Stell PM. The management of cervical lymph nodes in head and neck cancer. *Proc R Soc Med* 1975;68:83–85.
- Stenson KM, Haraf DJ, Pelzer H, Recant W, Kies MS, Weichselbaum RR, Vokes EE. The role of cervical lymphadenectomy after aggressive concomitant chemoradiotherapy: the feasibility of selective neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2000;126:950–956.
- Strong MS, Vaughn C, Kayne HL, Aral IM, Ucmakli A, Feldman M, Healy GB. A randomized trial of preoperative radiotherapy in cancer of the oropharynx and hypopharynx. *Am J Surg* 1978;136:494–500.
- Suárez C, Llorente JL, Núñez F, Díaz C, Gómez J. Neck dissection with or without postoperative radiotherapy in supraglottic carcinomas. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1993;109:3–9.
- Suárez O. El problema de las metástasis linfáticas y alejadas del cáncer de laringe e hipofaringe. *Revista de Otorrinolaringología* (Santiago de Chile) 1963;23:83–99.
- Silvestre-Benis C. Consideraciones sobre el problema del tratamiento quirúrgico de los ganglios en los cánceres de la laringe. *Actas II Congreso Sudamericano ORL*. Montevideo, Uruguay, 1944.
- Talmi YP. Minimizing complications in neck dissection. *J Laryngol Otol* 1999;113:101–113.
- Talmi YP, Horowitz Z, Pfeffer MR, Stolik-Dollberg OC, Shoshani Y, Peleg M, Kronenberg J. Pain in the neck after neck dissection. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2000;123:302–306.
- Terrell JE, Welsh DE, Bradford CR, Chepeha DB, Esclamado RM, Hogikyan ND, Wolf GT. Pain, quality of life, and spinal accessory nerve status after neck dissection. *Laryngoscope* 2000;110:620–626.
- Terz JJ, Lawrence W Jr. Ineffectiveness of combined therapy (radiation and surgery) in the management of malignancies of the oral cavity, larynx, and pharynx. In: Kagan AR, Miles JW, eds. *Head and Neck Oncology: Controversies in Cancer Treatment*. Boston: GK Hall Medical Publishers; 1981:110–125.
- Thomas GR, Greenberg J, Wu KT, Moe K, Esclamado R, Bradford C, Carroll W, Eisbruch A, Urba S, Wolf GT. Planned early neck dissection before radiation for persistent neck nodes after induction chemotherapy. *Laryngoscope* 1997;107:1129–1137.
- Timon CVI, Brown D, Gullane P. Internal jugular vein blowout complicating head and neck surgery. *J Laryngol Otol* 1994;108:423–425.
- Traynor SJ, Cohen JI, Gray J, Andersen PE, Everts EC. Selective neck dissection and the management of the node-positive neck. *Am J Surg* 1996;172:654–657.
- Truffert P. *Le cou: anatomie topographique: Les aponévroses, les loges*. Paris: Librairie Arnette; 1922.
- Tschammler A, Ott G, Schang T, Seelbach Goebel B, Schwager K, Hahn D. Lymphadenopathy: differentiation of benign from malignant disease color Doppler US assessment of intranodal angioarchitecture. *Radiology* 1998;208:117–123.
- Tu GY. Upper neck (level II) dissection for N0 neck supraglottic carcinoma. *Laryngoscope* 1999;109:467–470.
- Umeda M, Nishimatsu N, Teranobu O, Shimada K. Criteria for diagnosing lymph node metastasis from squamous cell carcinoma of the oral cavity: a study of the relationship between computed tomographic and histologic findings and outcome. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 1998;56:585–593.

- Valdes Olmos RA, Koops W, Loftus BM, Liem IH, Gregor RT, Hoefnagel CA, Hilgers FJ, Balm AJ. Correlative 201TI SPECT, MRI and ex vivo 201TI uptake in detecting and characterizing cervical lymphadenopathy in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. *J Nucl Med* 1999;40:1414–1419.
- Vallejo Valdezate LA, Díaz Suárez I, de las Heras P, Cuetos M, Gil-Carcedo García LM. Consideraciones anatómicas sobre la importancia de la rama externa del nervio espinal en la cirugía del triángulo posterior del cuello. *Acta Otorrinolaringol Esp* 1999;50:630–634.
- van Bokhorst-de van der Schueren MA, van Leeuwen PA, Sauerwein HP, Kuik DJ, Snow GB, Quak JJ. Assessment of malnutrition parameters in head and neck cancer and their relation to postoperative complications. *Head Neck* 1997;19:419–425.
- van den Brekel MW, Castelijns JA, Reitsma LC, Leemans CR, van der Waal I, Snow GB. Outcome of observing the N0 neck using ultrasonographic guided cytology for follow up. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1999;125:153–156.
- van den Brekel MWM, van der Waal I, Meijer CJ, Freeman JL, Castelijns JA, Snow GB. The incidence of micrometastases in neck dissection specimens obtained from elective neck dissections. *Laryngoscope* 1996;106:987–991.
- Vandenbrouck G, Sancho-Garnier H, Chassagne D, Saravane D, Cachin Y, Micheau C. Elective versus therapeutic radical neck dissection in epidermoid carcinoma of the oral cavity. *Cancer* 1980;46:386–390.
- Vikram B. Selective neck dissection. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1998;124:1044–1045.
- Vikram B, Strong EW, Shah JP, Spiro R. Failure in the neck following multimodality treatment in advanced head and neck cancer. *Head Neck Surg* 1984;6:724–729.
- Vokes EE. Combined-modality therapy of head and neck cancer. *Oncology* 1997;11 (suppl):27–30.
- Vokes EE, Weichselbaum RR, Lippman SM, Hong WK. Head and neck cancer. *N Engl J Med* 1993;328:184–194.
- Ward GE, Robbins JO. A composite operation for radical neck dissection and removal of cancer of the mouth. *Cancer* 1951;1:98–109.
- Weber PC, Johnson JT, Myers EN. Impact of bilateral neck dissection on recovery following supraglottic laryngectomy. *Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 1993;119:61–64.
- Weber RS, Hankins P, Rosenbaum B, Raad I. Nonwound infections following head and neck oncologic surgery. *Laryngoscope* 1993;103:22–27.
- Weisman RA, Robbins KT. Management of the neck in patients with head and neck cancer treated by concurrent chemotherapy and radiation. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 1998;31:773–784.
- Weitz JW, Weitz SL, McElhinney AJ. A technique for preservation of spinal accessory nerve function in radical neck dissection. *Head Neck Surg* 1982;5:75–78.
- Werner JA. Aktueller Stand der Versorgung des Lymphabflusses maligner Kopf-Hals-Tumoren. In: *Deutsche Gesellschaft für Hals-Nasen-Ohrenheilkunde, Kopf- und Hals-Chirurgie*. Springer-Verlag; 1997.
- Weymuller EA Jr. Rationale for elective modified neck dissection: a word of caution. *Head Neck* 1989;11:93–94.
- Wide JM, White DW, Woolgar JA, Brown JS, Vaughan ED, Lewis Jones HG. Magnetic resonance imaging in the assessment of cervical nodal metastasis in oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Clin Radiol* 1999;54:90–94.
- Withers HR, Peters LJ, Taylor JMG. Dose-response relationship for radiation therapy of subclinical disease. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1995;31:353–359.
- Wolf GT, Fisher SG. Effectiveness of salvage neck dissection for advanced regional metastasis when induction chemotherapy is used for organ preservation. *Laryngoscope* 1992;102:934–937.
- Woods JE, Yugueros P. A safe and rapid technique for modified neck dissection. *Ann Plast Surg* 1999;43:90–95.
- Wustrow TP. Personal experiences: on the nomenclature of various forms of neck dissection. *Laryngorhinootologie* 1989;68:529–530.
- Yang CY, Andersen PE, Everts EC, Cohen JI. Nodal disease in purely glottic carcinoma: is elective neck treatment worthwhile? *Laryngoscope* 1998;108:1006–1008.
- Yii NW, Patel SG, Rhys Evans PH, Breach NM. Management of the N0 neck in early cancer of the oral tongue. *Clin Otolaryngol* 1999;24:75–79.
- Yii NW, Patel SG, Williamson P, Breach NM. Use of apron flap incision for neck dissection. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1999;103:1655–1660.
- Yuen AP, Lam KY, Chan AC, Wei WI, Lam LK, Ho WK, Ho CM. Clinicopathological analysis of elective neck dissection for N0 neck of early oral tongue carcinoma. *Am J Surg* 1999;177:90–92.
- Yuen AP, Wei WI, Wong YM, Tang KC. Elective neck dissection versus observation in the treatment of early oral tongue carcinoma. *Head Neck* 1997;19:583–588.
- Zupi A, Califano L, Mangone GM, Longo F, Piombino P. Surgical management of the neck in squamous cell carcinoma of the floor of the mouth. *Oral Oncol* 1998;34:472–475.

This page intentionally left blank.

Index

A

- American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery, 5
- American approach to neck dissection, 1
- American Society for Head and Neck Surgery, 5
- Anatomy
 - ansa cervicalis, 40
 - anterior jugular nodes, 26
 - anterior jugular vein, 36
 - anterior triangle, 33
 - ascending pharyngeal artery, 52
 - brachial plexus, 44
 - brachiocephalic trunk, 50
 - carotid artery, 50
 - carotid sheath, 24, 49
 - carotid sinus, 50
 - carotid triangle, 35
 - cervical fascia, 23
 - deep, 24
 - superficial, 24
 - cervical plexus, 39
 - chorda tympani nerve, 47
 - cricothyroid artery, 52
 - deep cervical fascia
 - deep layer, 24
 - superficial layer, 24
 - Delphian node, 28
 - digastric muscle, 45
 - external carotid artery, 51
 - external jugular nodes, 26
 - external jugular vein, 36, 110
 - facial artery, 52
 - facial vein, 48, 49
 - geniohyoid muscle, 45
 - great auricular nerve, 40
 - hypoglossal nerve, 46, 48
 - inferior petrosal sinus, 49
 - infrahyoid artery, 52
 - internal carotid artery, 50
 - internal jugular vein, 49
 - Küttner's node, 28
 - lesser occipital nerve, 40
 - levator scapulae muscle, 42
 - lingual artery, 47, 52
 - lingual nerve, 46
 - lingual vein, 47, 49
 - lymphatics, 26
 - deep, 26
 - deep anterior chain, 28
 - internal jugular chain, 26
 - jugular trunk, 28
 - left thoracic duct, 28
 - right lymphatic duct, 28
 - spinal accessory chain, 28
 - superficial, 26
 - transverse cervical chain, 28
 - marginal nerve, 40, 48
 - mastoid nodes, 26
 - maxillary artery, 52
 - middle thyroid vein, 49
 - muscular triangle, 35
 - mylohyoid muscle, 45
 - nodal groups, 28
 - disadvantages, 31
 - subzones, 30
 - occipital artery, 52
 - occipital nodes, 26
 - occipital triangle, 35
 - omoclavicular triangle, 35
 - omohyoid muscle, 39
 - parotid nodes, 26
 - phrenic nerve, 44
 - platysma muscle, 35
 - Poirier's node, 28
 - posterior auricular artery, 52
 - posterior triangle, 35, 41
 - recurrent laryngeal nerve, 54
 - retropharyngeal nodes, 28
 - scalene muscles, 42
 - skin
 - vascular supply, 35
 - spinal accessory nerve, 43
 - splenius capitis muscle, 41
 - sternocleidomastoid artery, 52
 - sternocleidomastoid muscle, 41, 49
 - sternohyoid muscle, 39
 - sternothyroid muscle, 39
 - strap muscles, 37
 - stylohyoid muscle, 45
 - stylomandibular ligament, 48
 - sublingual artery, 47
 - submandibular ganglion, 48
 - submandibular gland, 47
 - submandibular nodes, 26
 - submandibular triangle, 33, 45
 - submental nodes, 26
 - submental triangle, 33
 - superficial temporal artery, 52
 - superior laryngeal artery, 52
 - superior thyroid artery, 52
 - superior thyroid veins, 49
 - supraclavicular nerve, 40
 - surgical, 35
 - sympathetic trunk, 54
 - thyrohyoid muscle, 39
 - thyrolinguofacial trunk, 49
 - topographic, 33
 - vagus nerve, 50, 53
- Anesthesia, 64
- Ansa cervicalis, 39, 123
 - surgical anatomy, 40
- Ansa hypoglossi. *See Ansa cervicalis*
- Anterior jugular nodes, 26
- Anterior jugular vein
 - division, 100
 - ligation, 77
 - surgical anatomy, 36
- Anterior neck dissection, 56
- Anterior scalene muscle
 - surgical anatomy, 42
- Anterior triangle
 - topographic anatomy, 33
- Apron flap, 68
- Area VI
 - surgical limits, 102
- Artery
 - ascending cervical
 - surgery, 120
 - ascending pharyngeal
 - surgical anatomy, 52

- Artery (*cont.*)
- carotid
 - surgical anatomy, 50
 - cricothyroid
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - external carotid
 - surgical anatomy, 51
 - facial
 - surgery, 79–80
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - infrahyoid
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - internal carotid
 - surgical anatomy, 50
 - lingual
 - surgical anatomy, 47, 52
 - maxillary
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - occipital
 - surgery, 86
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - posterior auricular
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - sternocleidomastoid
 - surgery, 86
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - sublingual
 - surgical anatomy, 47
 - superficial temporal
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - superior laryngeal
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - superior thyroid
 - surgery, 100
 - surgical anatomy, 52
 - transverse cervical
 - surgery, 92, 120
- Ascending cervical artery
 - surgery, 120
- Ascending pharyngeal artery
 - surgical anatomy, 52
- Atlas
 - transverse process
 - surgical landmark, 77
- B**
- Bleeding, 133
- Blunt dissection
 - supraclavicular fossa, 90
 - surgical steps, 107
- Brachial plexus
 - surgery, 92
 - surgical anatomy, 44
- Brachiocephalic trunk
 - surgical anatomy, 50
- C**
- Carotid artery
 - surgical anatomy, 50
- Carotid sheath
 - dissection, 94
 - surgical anatomy, 49
- Carotid sinus
 - surgical anatomy, 50
- Carotid triangle
 - topographic anatomy, 35
- Central compartment
 - dissection, 101
 - surgical limits, 102
- Cerebral edema
 - complications, 135
- Cervical fascia
 - carotid sheath, 24
 - deep, 24
 - deep layer, 24
 - prevertebral layer, 24
 - superficial layer, 24
 - surgery, 92
 - superficial, 24
- Cervical plexus
 - connections to spinal accessory
 - nerve, 77, 123
 - deep branches, 94
 - superficial branches, 39
 - surgery, 90, 94, 123
 - surgical anatomy, 123
- Chorda tympany nerve
 - surgical anatomy, 47
- Chylous leak, 129, 133
 - conservative management, 133
- Classification
 - American Academy, 7
 - other, 7
 - personal approach, 60
- Clinical evaluation
 - imaging techniques, 9
 - negative neck, 8
- Complications
 - general, 137
 - pneumonia, 138
 - pulmonary, 138
 - pulmonary embolism, 138
 - pulmonary insufficiency, 138
 - stress ulcer, 138
 - local, 131
 - chylous leak, 133
 - hematoma, 131
 - infection, 131, 132
 - pharyngocutaneous fistula, 131, 134
 - serohematoma, 131
 - seroma, 131
 - wound dehiscence, 132
 - neural, 135
 - hypoglossal nerve, 136
 - marginal nerve, 137
 - phrenic nerve, 136
 - spinal accessory nerve, 135
 - sympathetic trunk, 137
 - vagus nerve, 137
 - vascular, 133
 - bleeding, 133
 - blowout, 134
 - cerebral edema, 135
 - hemorrhage, 133
- Conley
 - skin incision, 69
- Cricothyroid artery
 - surgical anatomy, 52
- Crile, George, 1
- D**
- Deep anterior chain, 28
- Deep cervical fascia, 24
- Deep lymphatics, 26
 - anterior chain, 28
 - internal jugular chain, 26
 - retropharyngeal nodes, 28
 - spinal accessory chain, 28
 - transverse cervical chain, 28
- Delphian node, 28
- Digastric muscle
 - surgery, 115
 - surgical anatomy, 45
- Dissection
 - blunt
 - supraclavicular fossa, 90
 - sharp, 107
- Duct
 - right lymphatic
 - chylous leak, 130
 - surgery, 98
 - submandibular
 - surgery, 80
 - thoracic
 - ligation, 130
 - surgery, 98, 129
 - surgical repair, 130, 133
- Wharton's
 - surgery, 80
- E**
- Economic factors
 - and neck dissection in the US, 6, 10
- Elective neck dissection, 8
- Erb's point, 39, 43, 75, 86, 90, 92, 110, 118, 120, 136
- Extended neck dissection, 57
- External carotid artery
 - surgical anatomy, 51
- External jugular nodes, 26
- External jugular vein
 - division, 82, 110, 113
 - ligation, 90
 - surgical anatomy, 36, 110
- F**
- Facial artery
 - division, 79–80
 - surgery, 79
 - surgical anatomy, 52
- Facial vein
 - division, 113
 - surgery, 98, 101
 - surgical anatomy, 48–49

- Fascia**
 carotid sheath, 24, 49
 deep cervical, 24
 deep layer, 24
 superficial layer, 24
 prevertebral layer, 24
 superficial cervical, 24
- Fascial anatomy, 23**
- Fascial system, 57**
- Functional neck dissection**
 after radiotherapy, 141
 bilateral, 142
 borderline cases, 142
 conceptual approach, 57
 evolution, 20
 indications, 61
 internal jugular vein
 bilateral resection, 142–143
 contacting nodes, 143
 limitations, 62
 open biopsy, 141
 origins, 17
 rationale, 17, 23
 relation to selective neck dissection, 58
 salvage procedure, 141
 staging the operation, 142–143
 surgical technique, 19, 63
- G**
- Ganglion**
 inferior sympathetic cervical
 surgical anatomy, 54
 middle sympathetic cervical
 surgical anatomy, 54
 submandibular
 surgical anatomy, 48
 superior sympathetic cervical
 surgical anatomy, 54
- General complications, 137**
- Geniohyoid muscle**
 surgical anatomy, 45
- Gland**
 submandibular
 preservation, 113
 surgical anatomy, 47
 surgical approach, 77
- Glands**
 parathyroid
 surgery, 104
- Gluck**
 skin incision, 68
- Great auricular nerve**
 surgery, 110
 surgical anatomy, 40
- H**
- H**
 skin incision, 69
- Hayes Martin**
 skin incision, 68
- Hematoma, 131**
- Hemorrhage, 133**
 postoperative
 identification, 134
 management, 134
 sources, 133
- Hypoglossal nerve**
 complications, 136
 relations to lingual veins, 116
 surgery, 80, 83, 115
 surgical anatomy, 46, 48
- I**
- Imaging techniques, 9**
- Incision**
 apron flap, 68
 Conley, 69
 double-Y, 68
 Gluck, 68
 H incision, 69
 Hayes Martin, 68
 Mac Fee, 69
 Schobinger, 69
 single-Y, 69
 skin, 67
 tracheostomy, 68
 Y, 69
- Infection, 131**
 symptoms, 132
- Inferior petrosal sinus**
 surgical anatomy, 49
- Infrahyoid artery**
 surgical anatomy, 52
- Innervation**
 shoulder, 116
- Internal carotid artery**
 surgical anatomy, 50
- Internal jugular lymphatic chain, 26**
- Internal jugular vein**
 initial folds, 98, 126
 knife dissection, 126
 lower fold, 127
 relations to spinal accessory nerve, 84, 118, 136
 surgery
 danger points, 98, 126
 surgical anatomy, 49
 upper fold, 127
- J**
- Jugular lymphatic trunk, 28**
- K**
- Knife dissection, 72, 107**
 basic principles, 107
 surgical steps, 107
- Kocher's vein**
 surgery, 101
- Küttner's node, 28**
- L**
- La Paz Hospital, 16**
- Lateral neck dissection, 56**
- Latin approach**
 to neck dissection, 15
- Left thoracic duct, 28**
- Lesser occipital nerve**
 surgical anatomy, 40
- Levator scapulae muscle**
 innervation, 42
 surgery, 86
 innervation, 123
 surgical anatomy, 42
- Level I, 28**
 removal, 77
- Level II, 30**
 surgery
 relation to level V, 85
- Level III, 30**
- Level IV, 30**
- Level V, 30**
 surgery
 relation to level II, 85
- Level VI, 30**
 dissection, 101
 surgical limits, 102
- Level VII, 30**
- Ligament**
 stylomandibular
 surgery, 82
 surgical anatomy, 48
- Lingual artery**
 surgical anatomy, 47, 52
- Lingual nerve**
 surgery, 79
 surgical anatomy, 46
- Lingual vein**
 surgery, 98
 surgical anatomy, 47, 49
- Lingual veins**
 relations to hypoglossal nerve, 116
 surgery, 83
 surgical management, 136
- Local complications, 131**
- Lymph node groups, 10**
- Lymphatic chains, 26**
- Lymphatic drainage**
 normal, 55
- Lymphatics**
 deep, 26
 anterior chain, 28
 internal jugular chain, 26
 retropharyngeal nodes, 28
 spinal accessory chain, 28
 transverse cervical chain, 28
 major ducts, 28
 jugular trunk, 28
 right lymphatic duct, 28
 thoracic duct, 28
 superficial, 26
 anterior jugular nodes, 26
 external jugular nodes, 26
 mastoid nodes, 26

- Lymphatics (*cont.*)
 occipital nodes, 26
 parotid nodes, 26
 submandibular nodes, 26
 submental nodes, 26
- M**
- Mac Fee
 skin incision, 69
- Maneuver
 marginal nerve, 113, 137
 spinal accessory, 86, 120
- Marginal nerve
 complications, 137
 maneuver, 77, 113, 137
 preservation, 77
 surgery, 112
 surgical anatomy, 40, 48
- Martin, Hayes, 2
- Mastoid nodes, 26
- Maxillary artery
 surgical anatomy, 52
- Mayo Clinic, 4
- Mayo stand, 63
- MD Anderson Cancer Center, 4, 9, 10
- Medial scalene muscle
 surgical anatomy, 42
- Memorial Hospital, 2, 9, 10
- Metastatic pattern, 55
- Middle thyroid vein
 surgical anatomy, 49
- Modified radical neck dissection
 after radiotherapy, 141
 classification, 8
 indications, 7
- Muscle
 anterior scalene, 42
 digastric
 surgery, 115
 surgical anatomy, 45
 geniohyoid
 surgical anatomy, 45
 levator scapulae, 42
 innervation, 42
 surgery, 86
 medial scalene, 42
 mylohyoid
 surgery, 78
 surgical anatomy, 45
 omohyoid, 39
 dissection, 92
 platysma, 35
 posterior scalene, 42
 splenius capitis, 41
 sternocleidomastoid, 41
 dissection, 112
 fascial incision, 72
 innervation, 41
 surgery, 89
 surgical anatomy, 49
- sternohyoid, 39
 sternothyroid, 39
 stylohyoid
 surgery, 115
 surgical anatomy, 45
 thyrohyoid, 39
- Muscles
 scalene, 42
 strap, 37
 surgery, 100
- Muscular triangle
 topographic anatomy, 35
- Mylohyoid muscle
 surgery, 78
 surgical anatomy, 45
- N**
- Neck dissection
 American approach, 1, 55
 classification, 7
 American Academy, 7
 other, 7
 personal approach, 60
 elective, 3, 8
 extended, 57
 functional
 after radiotherapy, 141
 bilateral, 142
 borderline cases, 142
 conceptual approach, 57
 evolution, 20
 indications, 61
 limitations, 62
 open biopsy, 141
 origins, 17
 rationale, 17, 23
 removal of both internal jugular veins, 142, 143
 removal of internal jugular vein, 142
 salvage procedure, 141
 staging the operation, 142, 143
 surgical technique, 19, 63
- Latin approach, 15, 57
 modifications, 6
 modified radical, 8
 after radiotherapy, 141
 indications, 7–8
 number of nodes, 140
 origins of functional neck dissection, 17
 postoperative radiotherapy, 140
 primary tumor, 139
 prophylactic, 3
 radiation and chemotherapy, 11
 radical, 7
 selective, 9–10
 anterior, 56
 conceptual approach, 55, 58
 disadvantages, 60
 functional approach, 60
- lateral, 56
 oncological safety, 59
 personal experience, 59
 posterolateral, 56
 practical considerations, 10
 supraomohyoid, 56
- type
 number of nodes, 140
 primary tumor, 139
- Negative neck
 evaluation, 8
- Nerve
 ansa cervicalis, 39–40
 surgery, 123
 chorda tympani
 surgical anatomy, 47
 great auricular, 40
 surgery, 110
 hypoglossal
 complications, 136
 surgery, 80, 83, 115–116
 surgical anatomy, 46, 48
 lesser occipital, 40
 lingual
 surgery, 79
 surgical anatomy, 46
 marginal, 40
 complications, 137
 maneuver, 113, 137
 preservation, 77
 surgery, 112
 surgical anatomy, 48
 phrenic
 complications, 136
 identification, 136
 surgery, 92, 94, 123, 125
 surgical anatomy, 44
 recurrent laryngeal
 surgery, 103
 surgical anatomy, 54
 spinal accessory
 complications, 135
 entrance into sternocleidomastoid muscle, 74
 identification, 77
 posterior triangle, 90, 136
 shoulder innervation, 116
 surgery, 84, 116
 surgical anatomy, 43
 supraclavicular, 40
 sympathetic trunk
 surgical anatomy, 54
 transverse cervical, 40
 vagus
 complications, 137
 relations to thoracic duct, 137
 surgery, 96
 surgical anatomy, 50, 53
 surgical management, 137
- Neural complications, 135
- Nodal groups, 28
 disadvantages, 32

- Level I, 28
- Level II, 30
- Level III, 30
- Level IV, 30
- Level V, 30
- Level VI, 30
- Level VII, 30
- subzones, 30
- Node
 - Delphian, 28
 - Küttner, 28
 - Poirier, 28
- Nodes
 - anterior jugular, 26
 - external jugular, 26
 - mastoid, 26
 - occipital, 26
 - parotid, 26
 - retropharyngeal, 28
 - submandibular, 26
 - submental, 26
- O**
- Occipital artery
 - surgery, 86
 - surgical anatomy, 52
- Occipital nodes, 26
- Occipital triangle
 - topographic anatomy, 35
- Omoclavicular triangle
 - topographic anatomy, 35
- Omothyoid muscle
 - dissection, 92
 - surgical anatomy, 39
- Oncological premises, 142
- Operating room setup, 63
- P**
- Parathyroid glands
 - autotransplant, 105
 - surgery, 104
- Paratracheal nodes
 - dissection, 101
- Parotid nodes, 26
- Pharyngocutaneous fistula, 131, 134
- Phrenic nerve, 123
 - at surgery, 92
 - complications, 136
 - identification, 125, 136
 - surgery, 94, 125
 - surgical anatomy, 44
- Platysma muscle
 - innervation, 36
 - surgical anatomy, 35
- Plexus
 - brachial
 - surgery, 92
 - surgical anatomy, 44
 - cervical, 39
 - surgery, 90, 94, 123
 - surgical anatomy, 123
 - surgical identification, 77
- Pneumonia, 138
- Poirier's node, 28
- Position
 - surgical, 63
- Posterior auricular artery
 - surgical anatomy, 52
- Posterior auricular vein
 - division, 82
 - surgical anatomy, 36
- Posterior facial vein
 - surgical anatomy, 36
- Posterior scalene muscle
 - surgical anatomy, 42
- Posterior triangle, 41
 - dissection, 86
 - spinal accessory nerve, 89, 136
 - surgical anatomy, 41
 - surgical boundaries, 90
 - topographic anatomy, 35
- Posterolateral neck dissection, 56
- Postoperative hemorrhage
 - identification, 134
 - management, 134
 - sources, 133
- Postoperative radiotherapy, 140
- Preoperative preparation, 63
- Pretracheal nodes
 - dissection, 101
- Pulmonary complications, 138
- Pulmonary embolism, 138
 - symptoms, 138
- Pulmonary insufficiency, 138
- R**
- Radiation, chemotherapy, and neck
 - dissection, 11
- Radical neck dissection, 7
- Radiotherapy
 - postoperative
 - N⁺ patients, 140
- Raising the flaps, 108
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve
 - surgery, 103
 - surgical anatomy, 54
- Retromandibular vein
 - division, 82, 113
 - surgical anatomy, 36
- Retropharyngeal nodes, 28
- Right lymphatic duct, 28
 - chylous leak, 130
 - surgery, 98
- S**
- Scalene muscles
 - surgical anatomy, 42
- Schobinger
 - skin incision, 69
- Selective neck dissection, 9, 10
 - conceptual approach, 55, 58
- disadvantages, 60
- functional approach, 60
- oncological safety, 59
- personal experience, 59
- practical considerations, 10
- relation to functional neck
 - dissection, 58
- types
 - anterior, 56
 - lateral, 56
 - posterolateral, 56
 - supraomohyoid, 56
- Serohematoma, 131
- Seroma, 131
- Setup
 - operating room, 63
- Shoulder innervation, 116
- Shoulder syndrome, 9, 135
- Single-Y
 - skin incision, 69
- Skin
 - incision
 - apron flap, 68
 - Conley, 69
 - double-Y, 68
 - Gluck, 68
 - H incision, 69
 - Hayes Martin, 68
 - Mac Fee, 69
 - Schobinger, 69
 - single-Y, 69
 - tracheostomy, 68
 - Y, 69
 - surgical anatomy, 35
 - vascular supply, 35
- Skin flaps, 69
 - raising, 108
- Skin incision, 67
- Society
 - American Society for Head and Neck Surgery, 5
 - Head and Neck Surgeons, 4
- Spinal accessory chain, 28
- Spinal accessory maneuver, 86, 120
- Spinal accessory nerve
 - cervical plexus
 - anastomosis, 94
 - complications, 135
 - dissection, 84
 - entrance into sternocleidomastoid muscle, 74
 - posterior triangle, 90, 136
 - quality of life, 135
 - relations to internal jugular vein, 84, 118, 136
 - shoulder innervation, 116
 - surgery, 116
 - identification, 77
 - surgical anatomy, 43
 - surgical preservation, 135
 - Splenius capitis muscle
 - surgical anatomy, 41

- Sternocleidomastoid artery
surgery, 86
surgical anatomy, 52
- Sternocleidomastoid muscle
dissection, 70, 89, 112
fascial incision, 72
innervation, 41
surgical anatomy, 41, 49
surgical management, 75
vascularization, 74
- Sternohyoid muscle
surgical anatomy, 39
- Sternothyroid muscle
surgical anatomy, 39
- Strap muscles
dissection, 100
innervation, 39
surgical anatomy, 37
- Stress ulcer, 138
- Stylohyoid muscle
surgery, 115
surgical anatomy, 45
- Stylomandibular ligament
section, 82
surgical anatomy, 48
- Suárez, Osvaldo, 9, 16, 58, 86, 120
anecdotes, xv
- Sublingual artery
surgical anatomy, 47
- Submandibular duct
surgery, 80
- Submandibular fossa
surgical approach, 77
- Submandibular ganglion
surgical anatomy, 48
- Submandibular gland
preservation, 113
removal, 77
surgical anatomy, 47
- Submandibular nodes, 26
- Submandibular triangle, 33
surgical anatomy, 45
- Submental and submandibular nodes
removal, 77
- Submental nodes, 26
- Submental triangle, 33
- Superficial cervical fascia, 24
- Superficial lymphatics, 26
- Superficial temporal artery
surgical anatomy, 52
- Superior laryngeal artery
surgical anatomy, 52
- Superior thyroid artery
surgery, 100
surgical anatomy, 52
- Superior thyroid veins
surgical anatomy, 49
- Supraclavicular fossa
blunt dissection, 90
- Supraclavicular nerve
surgical anatomy, 40
- Supraomohyoid neck dissection, 56
- Surgery
anterior jugular vein, 100
area VI, 101
brachial plexus, 92
carotid sheath, 94
central compartment, 101
cervical plexus, 90, 94
 anastomosis with XI nerve, 77
closure of the wound, 105
deep layer of cervical fascia, 92
dissection of omohyoid muscle, 92
dissection of sternocleidomastoid muscle, 70
draping, 63
external jugular vein, 82, 90
 division, 70
facial artery, 79–80
facial vein, 98, 101
hypoglossal nerve, 80, 83
incision
 over the sternocleidomastoid muscle, 72
 skin, 67
instruments, 64
internal jugular vein, 74
knife dissection, 72
Kocher's vein, 101
Level VI, 101
limits, 70
lingual nerve, 79
lingual vein, 98
lingual veins, 83
marginal nerve, 77
Mayo stand, 63
mylohyoid muscle, 78
occipital artery, 86
parathyroid glands, 104
patient's position, 63
phrenic nerve, 92, 94
posterior auricular vein, 82
posterior triangle, 86, 90
protection of skin flaps, 70
recurrent laryngeal nerve, 103
retromandibular vein, 82
right lymphatic duct, 98
skin flaps, 69
spinal accessory maneuver, 86, 120
spinal accessory nerve, 84
 entrance into
 sternocleidomastoid muscle, 74
 identification, 77
sternocleidomastoid artery, 86
sternocleidomastoid muscle, 89
 vascularization, 74
strap muscles
 dissection, 100
stylomandibular ligament, 82
submandibular duct, 80
submandibular fossa, 77
superior thyroid artery, 100
- sympathetic trunk, 94
tail of parotid gland, 83
thoracic duct, 98
thyroid veins, 98
transverse cervical artery, 92, 120
 upper limit, 82
vagus nerve, 96
- Surgical anatomy, 35
- Surgical technique, 63
- Sympathetic cervical ganglion
 inferior
 surgical anatomy, 54
 middle
 surgical anatomy, 54
 superior
 surgical anatomy, 54
- Sympathetic trunk
 complications, 137
 surgery, 94, 125
 surgical anatomy, 54
- Syndrome
 shoulder, 135
- T**
- Thoracic duct
 ligation, 130
 surgery, 98
 surgical repair, 99, 130, 133
- Thyrohyoid muscle
 surgical anatomy, 39
- Thyroid veins
 surgery, 98
- Thyrolinguofacial trunk
 surgical anatomy, 49
- Topographic anatomy, 33
- Transverse cervical artery
 surgery, 120
- Transverse cervical lymphatic chain,
 28
- Transverse cervical nerve
 surgical anatomy, 40
- Transverse cervical vessels
 surgery, 120
- Transverse process of the atlas
 surgical landmark, 77
- Trunk
 brachiocephalic
 surgical anatomy, 50
 sympathetic
 surgery, 94
- V**
- Vagus nerve
 complications, 137
 relations to thoracic duct, 137
 surgery, 96
 surgical anatomy, 50, 53
 surgical management, 137
- Vascular blowout, 134
 carotid artery, 134
 internal jugular vein, 134
 management, 134

Vascular complications, 133

Vein

- anterior jugular, 36
 - division, 100
 - ligation, 77
- external jugular, 36
 - division, 70, 110, 113
 - ligation, 90
 - surgery, 82
 - surgical anatomy, 110
- facial
 - division, 113
 - surgery, 98, 101
 - surgical anatomy, 48, 49
- internal jugular
 - danger points, 98, 126
 - initial folds, 126
 - knife dissection, 126

lower fold, 127

- surgery, 74
- surgical anatomy, 49
- upper fold, 127

Kocher's

surgery, 101

lingual

- surgery, 98
- surgical anatomy, 47, 49

middle thyroid

surgical anatomy, 49

posterior auricular, 36

surgery, 82

posterior facial, 36

retromandibular, 36

division, 113

surgery, 82

Veins

lingual

surgery, 83, 116

surgical management, 136

superior thyroid

surgical anatomy, 49

thyroid

surgery, 98

W

Wash the field, 107

Wharton's duct

surgery, 80

Wound dehiscence, 132

Y

Y

skin incision, 69